© 2019 Zerto All rights reserved.
Information in this document is confidential and subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Zerto Ltd. Zerto Ltd. does not assume responsibility for any printing errors that may appear in this document. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or information storage and retrieval systems, for any purpose other than the purchaser's personal use, without the prior written permission of Zerto Ltd. All other marks and names mentioned herein may be trademarks of their respective companies.
The scripts are provided by example only and are not supported under any Zerto support program or service. All examples and scripts are provided "as-is" without warranty of any kind. The author and Zerto further disclaim all implied warranties including, without limitation, any implied warranties of merchantability or of fitness for a particular purpose.
In no event shall Zerto, its authors, or anyone else involved in the creation, production, or delivery of the scripts be liable for any damages whatsoever (including, without limitation, damages for loss of business profits, business interruption, loss of business information, or other pecuniary loss) arising out of the use of or inability to use the sample scripts or documentation, even if the author or Zerto has been advised of the possibility of such damages. The entire risk arising out of the use or performance of the sample scripts and documentation remains with you.

ZVR-ADVH-7.5
# Table of Contents

Introduction to the Zerto Solution ................................................................. 9
What is the Zerto Solution? ................................................................. 9
The Zerto Solution Architecture ...................................................... 10
How Zerto Recovery Works .......................................................... 12
Zerto Analytics - Overview .............................................................. 13
  Zerto Analytics Secure Architecture ........................................... 18
Zerto Cloud Control - Overview ...................................................... 26
  Before Getting Started with Zerto Cloud Control ....................... 27
  Accessing the Zerto Cloud Control .............................................. 27
  Using Upgrade Manager ............................................................. 27
  Using Tenants ........................................................................ 27
Benefits of Using the Zerto Solution ............................................ 28

Accessing the Zerto User Interface .................................................... 33
Using the Zerto Virtual Manager Web Client ..................................... 33
Adding a Security Certificate for the Zerto User Interface .................. 34
Working With the Zerto User Interface ............................................ 36

Initial Site Configuration ........................................................................ 39
Enabling Replication to the Same Site ........................................... 39
WAN Sizing .................................................................................. 40
  Collecting Data Characteristics for VMs .................................... 40
  Calculating the Estimated Bandwidth Requirement .................. 42

Overview of Recovery Flows ............................................................... 44

Introduction to Protecting Virtual Machines ...................................... 51

Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V ....................................... 58
Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site Hyper-V ........................................... 59
Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to the Same Site .......................................................... 88
Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site VMware vCenter Server .......................................................... 89
Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site VMware vCloud Director .......................................................... 120
Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site AWS .......................................................... 149
  Import Methods for AWS ........................................................... 150
  Creating a Virtual Protection Group to Recover in AWS ................ 154
Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site Microsoft Azure .......................................................... 163
  Requirements for Microsoft Azure Environments ......................... 163
  VPGs Recovering to Azure Managed Disks .................................. 164
Protecting From Hyper-V - To a Microsoft Azure Recovery Site ........................................ 164

Monitoring Zerto Virtual Manager .................................................................................. 172
  The DASHBOARD Tab .................................................................................................. 172
  Monitoring VPGs - The VPGs Tab .............................................................................. 174
    List View - GENERAL ............................................................................................... 175
    List View - PERFORMANCE .................................................................................... 175
    List View - Retention ............................................................................................... 176
    Additional Fields and Options .................................................................................. 177
  Monitoring a Single VPG ............................................................................................. 177
  Monitoring Tasks ......................................................................................................... 181
  Monitoring Protected Virtual Machines - The VMs Tab .............................................. 182
  Monitoring Peer Sites - The SITES Tab ...................................................................... 185
  Monitoring Virtual Replication Appliances .................................................................. 186
    Monitoring VRAs - The SETUP Tab - VRAs Tab ....................................................... 187
    Monitoring a Single VRA .......................................................................................... 187
    Monitoring Storage - The SETUP Tab - The STORAGE Tab ....................................... 194
  Zerto Performance Counters .......................................................................................... 196

Managing VPGs ............................................................................................................. 200
  Copy VPG Settings ...................................................................................................... 200
  Editing a VPG ............................................................................................................... 202
  Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - Overview .......................................................... 204
    How to Add Virtual Machines to an Existing VPG .................................................. 205
  Removing Virtual Machines from a VPG ...................................................................... 207
  Removing Protected Virtual Machines from the Hypervisor Inventory ...................... 207
  Modifying Protected Virtual Machine Volumes ............................................................ 208
    Changing the Recovery Storage for a Protected Virtual Machine ........................... 208
  Pausing the Protection of a VPG ................................................................................... 208
  Forcing the Synchronization of a VPG ....................................................................... 209
  Handling a VPG within an Error State ....................................................................... 210
  Deleting a VPG ............................................................................................................ 211
  Ensuring Application Consistency - Checkpoints ....................................................... 211
    Adding a Checkpoint to Identify a Key Point ............................................................ 212
  Running Scripts Before or After Recovering a VPG .................................................... 214
    Creating a Script ........................................................................................................ 215
    Example Scripts ........................................................................................................ 217
  Exporting and Importing VPG Definitions .................................................................. 218
  VPG Statuses and Synchronization Triggers .................................................................. 220
    VPG Statuses ............................................................................................................. 220
    VPG Synchronization Triggers .................................................................................. 231

Managing VRAs ............................................................................................................... 232
  Installing a VRA ............................................................................................................ 233
  Upgrading VRAs ........................................................................................................... 237
Editing VRA Settings ................................................................. 238
Changing a Recovery VRA ....................................................... 240
Uninstalling VRAs ................................................................. 242
Handling a VRA in an Error State (Ghost VRA) ....................... 242
Managing Protection When Moving a Host to a Different Cluster ................................................................. 243

Managing a Zerto Virtual Manager .............................................. 244
Checking Connectivity Between Zerto Components .................. 244
Reconfiguring the Zerto Virtual Manager Setup ....................... 245
Reconfiguring the Microsoft SQL Server Database Used by the Zerto Virtual Manager ................................................................. 248
Replacing the SSL Certificate .................................................... 249
Pairing to Another Site and Unpairing Sites ............................... 249

Advanced Site Configuration ..................................................... 252
Site Settings .............................................................................. 252
  Editing Information About a Site ............................................. 254
  Defining Performance and Throttling ...................................... 256
  Defining Site Policies ............................................................. 259
  Configuring Email Settings ................................................... 261
  Defining Resource Report Sampling Period ............................ 262
  Reviewing Supported Host Versions ...................................... 262
Seeing What is Licensed ............................................................. 262
Submitting a Support Ticket ....................................................... 264
Submitting a Feature Request .................................................... 265
About Zerto ............................................................................... 266

Overview of Disaster Recovery Operations ............................... 268
The Failover Test Operation ....................................................... 268
The Move Operation ................................................................. 269
The Failover Operation ............................................................. 269
The Restore File Operation ....................................................... 270
The Clone Operation ............................................................... 270

Testing Recovery ..................................................................... 272
The Test Failover Process ......................................................... 272
Starting and Stopping Failover Tests ........................................ 273
  After Starting a Test, What Happens? .................................... 276
Viewing Test Results ............................................................... 279
Live Disaster Recovery Testing ................................................ 279
  Basic Verification - User Traffic Is Not Run against the Recovered VMs ................................................................. 280
  Run User Traffic Against the Recovered VMs ......................... 283

Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site ................................ .......... 286
The Move Process ................................................................. 286
Moving Protected Virtual Machines to a Remote Site ................. 288
Reverse Protection For a Moved VPG ................................................................................ 294

Managing Failover Live ......................................................................................... 296
The Failover Live Process ...................................................................................... 296
Initiating Failover Live .......................................................................................... 298
Reverse Protection for a Failed Over VPG .............................................................. 307
  Reverse Protection With One-to-Many ............................................................... 307
What Happens When the Protected Site is Down ................................................... 308
Initiating Failover Live During a Test .................................................................... 308

Cloning a VPG to the Recovery Site ....................................................................... 309
The Clone Process .................................................................................................. 309
Cloning Protected Virtual Machines to the Remote Site ........................................ 309

Recovering Files and Folders ................................................................................. 314
The File and Folder Recovery Process .................................................................. 314
Recovering Files and Folders ................................................................................ 315
  Mounting the Virtual Machine that Contains the Required Files and Folders ........ 315
  Downloading the Files and Folders from the Virtual Machine ......................... 317
Searching for Files/Folders and Restoring their VMs or VPGs ............................ 319
  Configuring File System Indexing ..................................................................... 320
  Running Search and Restore Operations ............................................................ 322

Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention ..................................................................... 332
Long Term Retention - Overview ......................................................................... 332
Workflow: Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention ...................................................... 333
Creating a New Repository for Retention .............................................................. 334
Editing an Existing Repository for Retention ......................................................... 337
Deleting an Existing Repository for Retention ....................................................... 337
Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs ......................................................... 338
  Manually Running the Retention Process .......................................................... 342
Monitoring Your Long Term Retention Status ..................................................... 343
  Monitoring Retention Status via the SETUP Tab ............................................... 343
  Monitoring Retention Status via the RETENTION STATUS Tab .................... 344
Restoring VMs or VPGs from a Repository ............................................................ 348
Storing Retention Sets ......................................................................................... 353

Troubleshooting .................................................................................................... 355
Ensuring the Zerto Virtual Manager is Running .................................................... 355
Troubleshooting Needs Configuration Problems .................................................. 355
Troubleshooting GUI Problems .......................................................................... 356
Troubleshooting VRA Problems .......................................................................... 356
Handling Lack of Storage Space for Recovered Virtual Machines ....................... 357
Zerto Diagnostics Utility ..................................................................................... 357
Collecting Zerto Logs ......................................................................................... 357
Restore - Edit Selected Volumes Dialog ........................................................................425
Site Settings Dialog .......................................................................................................426
  Site Information Dialog .................................................................................................426
  Performance and Throttling Dialog ................................................................................428
  Policies Dialog ..............................................................................................................431
  Email Settings Dialog ....................................................................................................432
  Reports Dialog ..............................................................................................................433
  Compatibility Dialog ....................................................................................................433
  LTR Settings Dialog ......................................................................................................434
Stop Failover Test Dialog .................................................................................................434
TASKS ............................................................................................................................434

Glossary ...........................................................................................................................436

Index ...............................................................................................................................452
Introduction to the Zerto Solution

Disaster recovery is the process of preparing for recovery or continuation of IT processing tasks that support critical business processes in the event of a threat to the IT infrastructure. Zerto’s Long Term Retention is the additional process of enabling recovery of IT processing tasks after an extended period. This section describes Zerto general concepts to enable replication and recovery in a virtual environment.

The following topics are described in this section:

- What is the Zerto Solution? on page 9
- The Zerto Solution Architecture on page 10
- How Zerto Recovery Works on page 12
- Zerto Analytics - Overview on page 13
- Zerto Cloud Control - Overview on page 26
- Benefits of Using the Zerto Solution on page 28

What is the Zerto Solution?

IT Resilience Platform™

Zerto’s IT Resilience Platform™ converges disaster recovery, backup, and workload mobility whether on-premises or to, from and between hybrid and multi-cloud platforms. The platform is built on a foundation of continuous data protection (CDP) with built-in orchestration and automation providing IT leaders with simplicity, enterprise scale and agile data protection to save time, resources and costs. Analytics, with intelligent dashboards and live reports, provides complete visibility across multi-site and multi-cloud environments, giving organizations confidence that business service levels and compliance needs are met.

Disaster Recovery

Zerto is built from the ground up to be the simplest, most powerful disaster recovery solution for virtualized infrastructures. By including all the replication, recovery orchestration and automation in one simple software platform, users can recover one, all or a subset of virtualized applications, from anywhere to anywhere, maximizing the benefits of virtualization and cloud.

Through native integration into all supported platforms, Zerto not only allows replication and recovery between any storage, but it also protects across and between multiple hypervisors and public cloud platforms. This market-leading technology delivers a best of breed Business Continuity/Disaster Recovery (BC/DR) solution irrespective of underlying hypervisor, public cloud or storage.

Zerto supports replication between VMware vSphere, Microsoft Hyper-V, Microsoft Azure, Amazon Web Services (AWS), and IBM Cloud. Zerto is the underpinning technology of hundreds of Cloud Service Providers (CSPs) globally who are leading the way in delivering Disaster Recovery as a Service (DRaaS) capabilities.

Backup

Elastic Journal
The Zerto Elastic Journal is a new concept in data protection bringing together both short-term retention and long-term retention capabilities. Using unified data protection workflows, powered by intelligent index and search, it enables quick recovery of data-regardless of whether it's from a few seconds ago or a few years ago. Data gets copied from the short-term retention storage into the long-term retention repositories. As the short-term retention is already stored on the target side, moving data to long-term retention has no impact on production, so copies can be taken as often as needed, eliminating the concept of "backup windows".

**Workload Mobility**

Workload mobility is the ability to move workloads to, from and between multiple platforms, on-premises or cloud, with minimal business impact and no traditional infrastructure constraints. With the recent rise of cloud computing, there is now a plethora of cloud platforms to choose from, with large players such as Microsoft Azure, AWS and IBM Cloud as well as plenty of Cloud Service Providers (CSPs). Each of these platforms have their own attributes which make them suited to certain workloads, whether through compliance, pricing or otherwise. Despite this, the cloud is not always the right option for all workloads, and because of this, the traditional on-premises deployments with VMware vSphere or Microsoft Hyper-V are still prevalent. Ultimately, having all of these options has led to increasing adoption of a multi-cloud and/or hybrid cloud strategy. Organizations are challenged to ensure that workloads, whether in the cloud or on-premises, are not locked into any one platform or vendor, and can be moved around based on where they fit best today, rather than yesterday. This is where workload mobility comes in, removing the traditional lock-in to these platforms and allowing workloads to be moved across platforms seamlessly, on-premises or in the cloud, including the ability to validate mobility prior to the live event without production impact.

Zerto supports any-to-any mobility between VMware vSphere, Microsoft Hyper-V, AWS, IBM Cloud, Microsoft Azure and any of our hundreds of Zerto-powered Cloud Service Providers (CSPs). For a full list of supported platforms and their versions please see our Interoperability Matrix.

**The Zerto Solution Architecture**

Zerto provides a business continuity (BC) and disaster recovery (DR) solution in a virtual environment, enabling the replication of mission-critical applications and data as quickly as possible, with minimal data loss. When devising a recovery plan, these two objectives, minimum time to recover and maximum data to recover, are assigned target values: the recovery time objective (RTO) and the recovery point objective (RPO). Zerto enables a virtual-aware recovery with low values for both the RTO and RPO. In addition, Zerto enables protecting virtual machines for extended, longer term recovery using a Long Term Retention process mechanism.

Zerto helps customers accelerate IT transformation by eliminating the risk and complexity of modernization and cloud adoption. By replacing multiple legacy solutions with a single IT Resilience Platform™, Zerto is changing the way disaster recovery, retention and cloud are managed. This is done by providing enterprise-class disaster recovery and business continuity software for virtualized infrastructure and cloud environments.

In **on-premise** environments, Zerto Virtual Replication (ZVR) is installed with virtual machines to be protected and recovered.

In **public cloud** environments, Zerto Cloud Appliance (ZCA) is installed in the public cloud site that is to be used for recovery.

The installation includes the following:
• **Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM):** The ZVM is a Windows service, running on a dedicated Windows VM, that manages everything required for the replication between the protection and recovery sites, except for the actual replication of data. The ZVM interacts with the hypervisor management user interface, such as vCenter Server or Microsoft SCVMM, to get the inventory of VMs, disks, networks, hosts, etc. It also monitors changes in the hypervisor environment and responds accordingly. For example, a VMware vMotion operation, or Microsoft Live Migration of a protected VM from one host to another is seen by the ZVM, and the Zerto User Interface is updated accordingly.

  • For the maximum number of virtual machines, either being protected or recovered to that site, see [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines.](#)

• **Virtual Replication Appliance** *(VRA):* A VRA is a virtual machine installed on each hypervisor host where VMs are to be protected from or to. The VRA manages the replication of data from protected virtual machines to the recovery site. The target VRAs are responsible for maintaining any protected VMs disks. VMware limits the number of SCSI Controllers (4 per VM) and targets per Controller (15 per controller), leaving a maximum of 60 SCSI targets per VM. When managing a larger quantity of virtual disks, Zerto utilizes Virtual Replication Appliance Helpers *(VRA-H), which act as a disk box with no IP and nearly no resources. VRA-Hs are spun up and down by Zerto automatically when nearing the 60-disk limit of the VRA or last VRA-H.

  • For the maximum number of volumes, either being protected or recovered to that site, see [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines.](#)

  **Note:** *In vSphere installations, OVF to enable installing Virtual Replication Appliances.*

• **Virtual Backup Appliance (VBA):** A Windows service that manages File-Level Recovery operations within the Zerto solution.

• **Zerto User Interface:** Recovery using the Zerto solution is managed in a browser or, in VMware vSphere Web Client or Client console.

When Zerto is installed to work with an on-premise hypervisor it also comprises the following component:

• **Data Streaming Service (DSS):** Installed on the VRA machine, and runs in the same process as the VRA. It is responsible for all the retention data path operations.

The following diagram shows how the main Zerto components are deployed across hypervisor-based enterprise sites to provide disaster recovery across these sites.

  **Note:** For the architecture diagrams when one of the sites is a cloud service provider, see [Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.](#)
When you plan to recover the enterprise site to a public cloud, Zerto is installed in the cloud environment. Zerto comprises the same components but the VRA runs as a service, so that the ZVM, VRA, and VBA all run as services on a single virtual machine instance in the public cloud.

**How Zerto Recovery Works**

Installing Zerto Virtual Replication installs the Zerto Virtual Manager, which sits in the hypervisor layer on the enterprise site. You manage the Zerto Virtual Manager, one on each of the protected and recovery sites, using the Zerto User Interface.

Zerto also provides a set of RESTful APIs and PowerShell cmdlets to enable incorporating some of the disaster recovery functionality within scripts or programs.

In the protected site you define the virtual machines that you want to replicate, either individually or together, as a virtual protection group (VPG). The virtual machines that you include in the VPG can come from one or more hypervisor hosts. In this way, you can protect applications that run on multiple virtual machines and disks as a single unit – a VPG. An example of an application that runs on multiple virtual machines includes software that requires a web server and database, both of which run on virtual machines different than the virtual machine where the application software runs.

A virtual machine can be included in several VPGs so that you can recover it to several sites, depending on the needs of the organization. For example the same workload can be protected to a local or a remote location as well as to the cloud. Using several recovery sites also enables migrating disaster recovery datacenters from one location to another.

**Note:** CD and DVD drives cannot be protected.

Every write is copied by Zerto and sent, asynchronously, to the recovery site, while the write continues to be processed on the protected site. For greater efficiency and performance, the write can be compressed before being sent to the recovery site with throttling techniques being used to prioritize network traffic.

On the recovery site the write is written to a journal managed by a Virtual Replication Appliance (VRA). Each protected virtual machine has its own journal. Every few seconds, a checkpoint is also written to each journal. These checkpoints ensure write order fidelity and crash-consistency to each checkpoint. During recovery you pick one of these crash-consistent checkpoints and recover to this point. Additionally,
checkpoints can be manually added by the administrator, with a description of the checkpoint. For example, when an event is going to take place that might result in the need to perform a recovery, you can pinpoint when this event occurs as a checkpoint written to each journal.

The VRA manages the journals for every virtual machine that will be recovered to the hypervisor hosting that VRA. It also manages images of the protected volumes for these virtual machines. During a failover, you can specify that you want to recover the virtual machines in the VPG using the last checkpoint or you can specify an earlier checkpoint, in which case the recovery of the mirror images under the VRA are synchronized to this checkpoint. Thus, you can recover the environment to the point before any corruption and ignore later writes in the journal that were corrupted, regardless of the cause of the corruption, such as a crash in the protected site or a virus attack.

To improve the RTO during recovery, the user is able to start working even before the virtual machine volumes on the recovery site have been fully synchronized. Every request is analyzed and the response returned either from the virtual machine directly or from the journal if the information in the journal is more up-to-date. This continues until the recovery site virtual environment is fully synchronized, up until the last checkpoint or an earlier checkpoint, when the integrity of the protected site was assured.

When recovery to a point is required that is further in the past than the time saved in the journal, you can restore from files created during the Retention process. Retention is an extension of disaster recovery, with the virtual machine files, such as the configuration and virtual disk files, saved to a repository for up to one year. These files are then used to restore the virtual machines to the point of the stored retention sets at the recovery site.

---

**Zerto Analytics - Overview**

*Insight-driven data analytics for a new era of data protection*

As IT infrastructures become more complex and demands for performance rise, companies require visibility and control over protected IT environments. Visibility of your entire IT infrastructure (both on-premises or cloud) is imperative to monitor, analyze and plan your environment and resource requirements to ensure zero interruptions. To have confidence that business Service level Agreements (SLAs) are met, you need not only visibility and insights to address existing issues, but also to be able to plan for your future data protection needs.

Zerto Analytics delivers these capabilities through a single interface and one user experience for a comprehensive overview of your entire multi-site, multi-cloud environment. Utilizing metrics such as average recovery point objective (RPO), network performance, and storage consumption, Zerto Analytics delivers real-time and historical insights on the health and protection status of your applications and data. Through Intelligent dashboards you can spot trends, identify anomalies, and troubleshoot issues in network, RPO, and other business SLAs. With these insights, you can eliminate inefficiencies and allocate resources effectively to mitigate data loss, reduce downtime and take control of your data.

*New Resource Planner*

With Resource Planner, you can ensure your data protection needs are met as your IT environment grows and diversifies. Use the Resource Planner to monitor and perform analysis of your protected environment to determine the required compute, storage and networking resources for any or all virtual machines (VMs) within your environment, both on-premises or in the cloud. Build out your data protection strategy with 'what-if' scenario modeling to plan for VM protection across clouds or on-premises, or to transition from on premises to cloud, or to protect additional VMs within your environment.
Zerto Analytics is developed with an API first approach, therefore, everything that is presented in the GUI, is also available with APIs. The APIs are delivered with Swagger open source that help you develop and test REST integration using standardized examples. This allows to easily populate custom portals with Zerto Analytic content.

See also:

Before Getting Started with Zerto Analytics on page 14
Accessing the Zerto Analytics Portal on page 14
Accessing Zerto Mobile on page 14
Accessing Zerto Analytics APIs on page 14
Using the Zerto Analytics Portal on page 15
End-User Analytics for Service Providers on page 17
Zerto Analytics Product Feature Matrix on page 17

Before Getting Started with Zerto Analytics

Verify the following:

- At least 1 ZVM running Zerto 5.0 or higher.
- **Enable Zerto SaaS applications including Zerto Analytics, Cloud Control, and Mobile App.** check box is selected. This is accessed in the ZVM application in **Settings > About.**
- Internet access.
- A myZerto account using your corporate email address.

Accessing the Zerto Analytics Portal

Zerto Analytics is accessed from one of the following locations:

- From a URL: [https://analytics.zerto.com](https://analytics.zerto.com)
- From myZerto: [www.zerto.com/myzerto](http://www.zerto.com/myzerto). Sign in using your credentials and select the **Analytics** tab.
- From the ZVM Application menu tab: Click the Analytics button, ![Analytics](https://example.com), to open Zerto Analytics in a new browser tab.

Accessing Zerto Mobile

The Zerto Mobile app is available for both iOS or Android operating systems.

Sign in using your myZerto credentials.

Accessing Zerto Analytics APIs

Zerto Analytics is developed with an API first approach, therefore, everything that is presented in the GUI, is also available with APIs. APIs are available the same version as their GUI counterparts.
• Zerto Analytics APIs are available in OpenAPI Specification.
• The documentation can be accessed via the link: https://docs.api.zerto.com/

Using the Zerto Analytics Portal

When accessing Zerto Analytics, the Dashboard tab opens by default. This tab displays a summary of the entire protected environment, including the average RPO and VPG health, site details and topology, active alerts, running tasks and events.

**Tip:** Use the What's New and Help widgets in Zerto Analytics to learn more about each of the features available in Zerto Analytics.

**Tips:**

• Use the sites topology to identify sites without remote protection, to identify network issues and to identify cloud issues.

• To handle any issues in the ZVM site, in the Dashboard tab > SITES area, click the icon Open ZVM in a new tab. This routes you to the specific ZVM site.

In the same Sites area, click the Menu button to navigate to the VPGs, Alerts or Tasks for the specified site.

In addition to the Dashboard, there are three additional views that provide details on the overall health of your environment.

See the following sections:

1. Monitoring Alerts, Events and Tasks in Zerto Analytics on page 15
2. Troubleshooting VPGs in Zerto Analytics on page 16
3. Reviewing Reports in Zerto Analytics on page 16

Monitoring Alerts, Events and Tasks in Zerto Analytics

From the Monitoring tab review the active alerts, alerts history, running events and tasks.
To see active alerts, events or tasks from a specific ZVM, use the filter in the top left of the screen.

Events are displayed for the last 24 hours by default. Use the date selector to filter the Events List by date.

To view a history of alerts, select the Events tab and Alert History in the sub menu. Inactive alerts are displayed for the selected time range.

Tip:
Click the Alert ID and Event ID to open the help and view the full details for that specific alert or event.

Troubleshooting VPGs in Zerto Analytics

From the VPGs tab, review the list of VPGs with Errors and Warnings. In the VPGs status area, click either VPGs with Warnings or VPGs with Errors to filter the VPGs list.

To review the status of a VPG, click in the column of the VPG you want to review to open the VPG Details page. From here you can view the details of the virtual machines associated with the VPG as well.

If you want to view the details of another VPG, select the VPG from the VPGs drop-down list.

Tip:
To further investigate about a selected VPG, click the VPG History button, and select to view either the RPO, Journal or Network Reports page. (See Reviewing Reports in Zerto Analytics on page 16 for more details about Reports).

Reviewing Reports in Zerto Analytics

The Zerto Analytics reports provide real-time and historical data analysis. ECE and CSP licenses can view up to 90 days of report history. Use the date controller to filter your reports. Statistics are displayed according to the selected time frame.
Tip:
Zoom in to view more granular data by selecting and dragging your mouse over the selected time frame.

From the **Reports** tab, review the RPO, Journal and Network performance history on the VPGs.

Use the **Network** reports for reviewing the network history for any VPG or Site. You can also view the network summary for a selected time frame, the network performance history and IOPs history.

Use the **RPO** reports for viewing a summary to see if RPO SLAs are being met, the RPO history and the RPO breach table for viewing when the specific time breach occurred and the duration of the SLA breach.

Use the **Journal** reports for understanding if resilience is at risk due to journal storage capacity and plan for storage growth.

**End-User Analytics for Service Providers**

Service providers can filter their customers in Zerto Analytics using the ZORG filter located at the top of the screen.

Using the ZORG filter, CSPs can see historical data and status for any individual customer.

Additionally, using the Zerto Analytics **APIs**, CSPs can create custom reports and automate reporting delivery of real-time content to their customers. The APIs can also be used to provide content for customer portals.

**Zerto Analytics Product Feature Matrix**

The following table lists the available features and from which ZVM version it's supported.

For further details about new features, access the Zerto Analytics portal and click "WHAT'S NEW".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Zerto 6.5</th>
<th>Zerto 7.0</th>
<th>Zerto 7.5</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dashboard</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPG Analytics</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Analytics</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Available from Zerto v6.5 Update 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring: Alerts, Tasks, Events</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature</td>
<td>Zerto 6.5</td>
<td>Zerto 7.0</td>
<td>Zerto 7.5</td>
<td>Comments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting: RPO, Journal, Network</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Planning</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Available from Zerto v7.0 Update 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZORG Filter (CSP end user)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>Not available for Storage tab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90 Days History</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>ECE and Cloud licenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Standard 30-day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REST API</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Zerto Analytics Secure Architecture**

Transmitted Zerto Analytics data is securely stored and can be securely viewed and exported by the user. The data is also used by the analytics engine to provide advanced guidance and analysis. The following section describes the secure architecture that provides the path to transmit, the datastore where the data is housed, and access of that data.

ZVM sends all the data over HTTPS TLS 1.2 only to https://zerto-mobile-data.zerto.com. The data is stored in the Samples Storage in the SaaS backend, located in the public cloud. All communication to and from the cloud are encrypted (HTTPS) using TLS 1.2. Furthermore, the data is isolated in the SaaS backend and accessible only within the backend itself and via VPN from Zerto. End users are authenticated using their myZerto credentials.

**Transmission and Storage of Site Status**

ZVM transmits current site status over secured HTTPS to the SaaS backend in short (~1 minute) intervals. The SaaS backend collects site status data from all transmitting sites and stores it in the “Samples Storage”. The “Samples Storage” is secured inside an internal protected network and is accessible only within the backend itself and via VPN from Zerto. The samples are kept in the “Samples Storage” of the Zerto Analytics cloud for 30 days to support 30 days of report history.
User Authentication and Authorization

Before sending any request to the backend, a client (browser/mobile/RESTful client) must obtain a security token which securely identifies the user. The security token is achieved by authenticating the user against the Identity Provider (IDP). Each client request contains the security token. For each request, the backend validates the security token and authorizes execution of the request according to the user’s identity which is part of the security token’s payload.

Reporting Historical Data

For each client request, the backend gets the latest data from the relevant samples as stored in the “Samples Storage”. The relevant data is sent to the client.

Zerto Analytics Collected Data

The Zerto Analytics dashboard utilizes several metrics to deliver detailed monitoring and reporting of your multi-site Multi-Cloud environment. The following table was created to address privacy and security issues surrounding data collection.

This table outlines each piece of information that is collected and sent from the ZVM for Zerto Analytics.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alerts</td>
<td>affectedZorgs</td>
<td>List of ZORGs affected by the alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>affectedZorgIds</td>
<td>List of ZORG IDs affected by the alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alertIdentifier</td>
<td>Internal alert identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>affectedVpgIds</td>
<td>List of VPG IDs affected by the alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alertType</td>
<td>Help identifier associated with the alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>createdDateinUTC</td>
<td>The time the alerts was created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>description</td>
<td>Alert description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>entityType</td>
<td>The entity for which the alert applies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>severity</td>
<td>Alert severity (Warning or Error).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>site</td>
<td>The site which is affected by the alert.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Components</td>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tasks</strong></td>
<td>taskName</td>
<td>The task type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>taskIdentifier</td>
<td>Unique identifier of the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>status</td>
<td>The status of the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>startedDateInUtc</td>
<td>The time the task started.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>completedDateInUtc</td>
<td>The time the task was completed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>progress</td>
<td>Progress of the task in percentage of completion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sitename</td>
<td>Name of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>protectedDataInMB</td>
<td>Total data protected in the ZVM site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>siteIdentifier</td>
<td>Internal site identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>transmitterCycleInSec</td>
<td>Number of seconds between two (2) data transmissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>type</td>
<td>Site environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>initiatedBy</td>
<td>Name of user who initiated task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information</td>
<td>Task details.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>relatedVpgsList</td>
<td>List of VPGs related to the task.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>relatedSitesList</td>
<td>List of sites related to the task.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>collectionTimeInUtc</td>
<td>Time the ZVM data was collected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hashedLicenseKey</td>
<td>ZVM license hashed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isTransmissionEnabled</td>
<td>Whether transmission of data was enabled by the user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitename</td>
<td>Name of the site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protectedDataInMB</td>
<td>Total data protected in the ZVM site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitelIdentifier</td>
<td>Internal site identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transmitterCycleInSec</td>
<td>Number of seconds between two (2) data transmissions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>Site environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utcOffsetInMinutes</td>
<td>Offset of the site time from UTC, in minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>version</td>
<td>Zerto Virtual Manager version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vpgsAlertsCount</td>
<td>Number of active alerts in ZVM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zorgsCount</td>
<td>Number of ZORGs in the ZVM site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zvmlp</td>
<td>IP of the ZVM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Components</td>
<td>Parameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPGs</td>
<td>actualJournalHistoryInSeconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>actualRpoSeconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configuredJournalHistoryInMinutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configuredRpoSeconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>earliestRecoveryPointLocalDateInUtc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>priority</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>protectedSite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>recoverySite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>subStatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vpgIdentifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vpgName</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|            | zorgName | Name of the Zerto organization set up in the Zerto Cloud Manager, which uses this VPG.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Components</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>VMS</strong></td>
<td>IOPS</td>
<td>IO per second between all the applications running on the virtual machine in the VPG and the VRA, that sends a copy to the remote site for replication.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>journalHardLimit</td>
<td>Maximum journal size in MBs, or in a percentage of the virtual machine volume size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>journalWarningThreshold</td>
<td>Journal size in MBs, or in a percentage of the virtual machine volume size, that generates a warning when the journal is nearing its hard limit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>outgoingBandWidthInMbps</td>
<td>Bandwidth throttling defined for the virtual machines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>provisionedStorageMb</td>
<td>The storage provisioned for the virtual machine in the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>throughputInMB</td>
<td>MBs of all the applications running on the virtual machine being protected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>usedJournalStorageMb</td>
<td>Storage used by the virtual machine at the recovery site for Journals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>usedStorageMb</td>
<td>Storage used by the virtual machine at the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vpgName</td>
<td>The name of the VPG, of which the VM is associated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vmIdentifier</td>
<td>ID of the VM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vmName</td>
<td>Name of the VM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VRAs</strong></td>
<td>vraName</td>
<td>Name of the VRA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vraVersion</td>
<td>Version of the VRA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Components</td>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Events</strong></td>
<td>eventIdentifier</td>
<td>The identifier of the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eventCategory</td>
<td>Category of the event. (Possible values: VPG, VRA, Site).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eventType</td>
<td>The type of event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>siteIdentifier</td>
<td>The internal site identifier related to the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zorgIdentifier</td>
<td>The identifier of the Zerto organization (ZORG), defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zorgName</td>
<td>The name of the Zerto organization (ZORG) set up in the Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>description</td>
<td>The event description.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>occurredOnInUTC</td>
<td>The date the event occurred.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eventCode</td>
<td>The event code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>eventCompletedSuccessfully</td>
<td>Whether the event completed successfully or not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ZORGs</strong></td>
<td>zorgIdentifier</td>
<td>The identifier of the Zerto organization (ZORG), defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>zorgName</td>
<td>The name of the Zerto organization (ZORG) set up in the Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Datastores</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>datastoreIdentifier</td>
<td>The datastore identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>datastoreName</td>
<td>The datastore name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>devices</td>
<td>The datastore device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>type</td>
<td>The datastore type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>capacityInBytes</td>
<td>The datastore capacity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>usedInBytes</td>
<td>The datastore usage. (Possible values: journal usage; scratch usage; protected usage; recovery usage; appliance usage; other non-Zerto usage)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volumes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>datastore</td>
<td>The owning datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>isThisProvisioned</td>
<td>Provision type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>owningVm</td>
<td>The virtual machine on which the volume is attached.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>path</td>
<td>The volume path.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>protectedVm</td>
<td>The protected virtual machine to which the volume is related.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>size</td>
<td>The volumes used storage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>volumeType</td>
<td>The volume type.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vpg</td>
<td>The VPG to which the volume is related.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Zerto Cloud Control - Overview

The Zerto Cloud Control includes the following features:

- **Upgrade Manager**
- **Tenants**

See also:

- **Before Getting Started with Zerto Cloud Control**
- **Accessing the Zerto Cloud Control**
Before Getting Started with Zerto Cloud Control

Verify the following:

- At least 1 ZVM running Zerto 5.0 or higher.
- Enable Zerto SaaS features check box is selected. This is accessed in the ZVM application in Settings > About.
- Internet access.
- A myZerto account using your corporate email address.

Accessing the Zerto Cloud Control

Zerto Cloud Control is accessed from one of the following locations:

- From a URL: https://cloudcontrol.zerto.com
- From myZerto: www.zerto.com/myzerto. Sign in using your credentials and select the Cloud Control tab.

Using Upgrade Manager

The Upgrade Manager feature allows Cloud Service Providers to remotely upgrade their end customer sites. This allows CSPs to keep their customers Zerto software always up to date. It also allows Cloud Service Providers an overall view of all their end customers’ ZVR version.

The remote upgrade functionality has the following pre-requisites:

- The customers ZVR instance is paired to a CSP-deployed ZCC and does not have a perpetual license applied.
- The end customer Zerto instance should be able to transmit over port 443.

Use the Help widgets in Upgrade Manager to learn more about each of the features available in the Upgrade Manager.

Using Tenants

The Tenants feature allows Cloud Service Providers to register new and existing enterprise customers to the respective ZORG for that customer. In the ZORG registration, the CSP selects the Product Type. The product type can include features such as One-To-Many and Long Term Retention.

Use the Help widgets in Tenants to learn more about each of the features available in the Upgrade Manager.
Benefits of Using the Zerto Solution

Datacenter optimization and virtualization technologies have matured and are now commonly used in IT infrastructure. As more applications are deployed in a virtualized infrastructure, there is a growing need for recovery mechanisms that support mission critical application deployments while providing complete BC and DR.

Traditional replication and disaster recovery solutions were not conceived to deal with the demands created by the virtualization paradigm. For example, most replication solutions are not managed in the hypervisor layer, considering the virtual machines and disks, but at the physical disk level. Hence they are not truly virtualization aware.

The lack of virtualization awareness creates a huge operational and administrative burden. It also results in operational inflexibility. The Zerto solution has been designed to resolve these issues by being fully virtualization aware.

See the following topics:

• (On-premise environments) Fully Virtual - Sits in the Hypervisor or Cloud on page 28
• Hardware Agnostic on page 29
• (On-premise environments) Hypervisor Agnostic on page 29
• Benefits to Using Zerto Enterprise Government Edition on page 29
• Focus is on the Application, Not the Physical Storage on page 29
• Compatibility Across Virtual Environments - Cross-Hypervisor Platform and Version Agnostic on page 29
• (On-premise environments) Fully Scalable on page 30
• Efficient Asynchronous Replication on page 30
• One-Click Failover and Control of the Recovery Process on page 30
• One-Click Migration on page 30
• File and Folder Recovery on page 30
• (On-premise environments) Long Term Retention on page 31
• Policy-based on page 31
• Minimal RPO on page 31
• WAN Optimization Between Protected and Recovery Sites on page 31
• WAN Resilience on Both the Protected and Recovery Sites on page 31
• DR Management Anywhere on page 32

(On-premise environments) Fully Virtual – Sits in the Hypervisor or Cloud

Zerto software sits in the hypervisor level. Protection groups are configured with virtual machines and virtual disks, without the need to consider the physical disks.
Hardware Agnostic

Because the Zerto solution manages recovery of virtual machines and virtual disks only, it does not matter what hardware is used in either the protected or recovery sites; it can be from the same vendor or different vendors. With the Zerto solution, the logical storage is separated from the physical storage so that the vendor and actual type of storage hardware do not need to be considered.

Zerto provides a workload mobility and protection layer providing seamless connectivity, portability, protection, orchestration, and application encapsulation of workloads across clouds without vendor lock-in. High scale, mission critical applications, and data are encapsulated, as well as features, specifications, and configurations, and can be seamlessly migrated across different servers, storage, hypervisors, and clouds without any disruption to business services.

With Zerto, IT managers can choose the right infrastructure for the right use case for the right price. One application can leverage several different environments for disaster recovery, bursting, production, retention, testing, and development. With Zerto there is no vendor lock-in to a cloud, technology, or vendor. Any choice, any cloud, any technology, any price, any service level is available in minutes for any workload.

(On-premise environments) Hypervisor Agnostic

Zerto runs both in VMware vCenter Server and Microsoft SCVMM. It is compatible with VMware hypervisor management features, such as vMotion and Microsoft hypervisor management features, such as Live Migration.

Benefits to Using Zerto Enterprise Government Edition

The Zerto Enterprise Government Edition (EGE) leverages vSphere APIs for IO (VAIO) framework. The key benefit of vSphere’s VAIO framework is certification of the Zerto VAIO VMware Installation Bundle (VIB). With the certified VAIO VIB, Secure Boot can be used for hosts with protected VMs without exposing root credentials. Additionally cluster level installation of the Zerto VRAs is provided.

**Note:** For Zerto Enterprise Government Edition (EGE) documentation, go to the guide Installing Zerto in On-Premise Environments, in the section [Deploying Zerto Enterprise Government Edition](#).

Focus is on the Application, Not the Physical Storage

By considering the physical disk level and not the virtual disk level, traditional replication is not truly application aware. Even virtual replication recovers block writes at the SCSI level and not at the application level. Zerto is truly application focused, replicating the writes from the application in a consistent manner.

Compatibility Across Virtual Environments – Cross-Hypervisor Platform and Version Agnostic

Zerto enables replication across multiple hypervisor managers, such as VMware vCenter Server and Microsoft SCVMM, and to public clouds such as Amazon Web Services (AWS) or Microsoft Azure. You can protect virtual machines in one hypervisor platform and recover to a different hypervisor platform. This feature can also be used to migrate virtual machines to a different hypervisor platform.
Also, virtual machines running in one version a hypervisor can be recovered in a different version of the same type of hypervisor, as long as Zerto supports the hypervisor versions, virtual machines can be protected across versions.

*(On-premise environments)* Fully Scalable

Zerto enables defining software-only Virtual Replication Appliances (VRAs) on each hypervisor host to manage the replication of virtual machines on that host. Increasing the number of hypervisor hosts is handled by defining a new VRA on each new host. There is no need to install additional software to the hypervisor management tool, such as VMware vCenter Server or Microsoft SCVMM, to handle additional hosts or virtual machines and no need to consider additional hardware acquisitions.

Efficient Asynchronous Replication

Writes are captured by the Zerto software in the hypervisor level, before they are written to the physical disk at the protected site. These writes are sent to the recovery site asynchronously, thus avoiding long distance replication latency for the production applications.

Also, because these writes are captured and sent to the recovery site, it is only the delta changes and not the whole file or disk that is sent to the recovery site, reducing the amount of network traffic, which reduces WAN requirements and significantly improves the ability to meet both RPO and RTO targets.

One-Click Failover and Control of the Recovery Process

ALL Platforms

When recovery is required, the administrator clicks on a button in the Zerto User Interface to initiate failover. This means that controlling the start of a recovery remains in the hands of the administrator, who can decide when to initiate the recovery and, by selecting a checkpoint, to what point-in-time to recover to.

One-Click Migration

Application migrations can be resource intensive projects that take weeks of planning, execution, and downtime. With Zerto migrations are greatly simplified and can be completed without extended outages or maintenance windows and across different types of hardware and even different hypervisors, such as VMware ESXi or Microsoft Hyper-V. Migrations across different versions within a type of hypervisor, such as from a VMware vCenter environment to a vCloud environment or even cross hypervisor migration, such as migration from a vCenter environment to a Hyper-V environment is as easy as a migration from one site to another using the same hypervisor infrastructure.

File and Folder Recovery

You can recover specific files and folders from the recovery site for virtual machines that are being protected by Zerto and running Windows or Linux operating systems. You can recover the files and folders from a specific point-in-time.

You can choose to recover one or several files or folders from the recovery site.
(On-premise environments) Long Term Retention

Zerto provides a Retention option that enables saving the protected virtual machines for up to one year in a state where they can be easily deployed. Because retention uses the same mechanism used for disaster recovery, there is no performance impact on the production site, since the processing is performed on the recovery site. The data copied for retention are fixed points saved daily, weekly or monthly.

**Note:** Zerto recommends weekly retention sets.

Policy-based

In the protected site you define the virtual machines that you want to recover, either individually or as groups, as a virtual protection group (VPG). The virtual machines that you include in the VPG can come from one or more hypervisor hosts. In this way, you can protect applications that run on multiple virtual machines and disks as a single unit, in a single VPG.

Minimal RPO

The Zerto solution utilizes continuous data protection, sending a record of every write in the virtual protection group to the recovery site. The transfer of this information is done over an optimized WAN asynchronously. If recovery is required, all the data that was transferred to the recovery site is available resulting in recovery within the requested RPO.

WAN Optimization Between Protected and Recovery Sites

ALL Platforms

Using compression to minimize bandwidth and other techniques such as throttling to prioritize network traffic to reduce the impact on day-to-day operations, you can make sure that the communication between the protected and recovery sites is fully optimized.

The Zerto solution also uses signature matching to reduce the amount of data sent across the WAN. During synchronization of the protected site and recovery site for every virtual machine in a VPG, Zerto maintains a map of disk sectors so that if there is a need to resynchronize sites, the map signatures can be used to ensure that only data where changes occurred are passed over the WAN.

WAN Resilience on Both the Protected and Recovery Sites

The Zerto solution is highly resilient to WAN interruptions. In order to reduce storage overhead used for replication purposes, on WAN failure or when the load over the WAN is too great for the WAN to handle, Zerto starts to maintain a smart bitmap in memory, in which it tracks and records the storage areas that changed. Since the bitmap is kept in memory, Zerto does not require any LUN or volume per VPG at the protected side. The bitmap is small and scales dynamically, but does not contain any actual IO data, just references to the areas of the protected disk that have changed. The bitmap is stored locally on the VRA within the available resources. Once the WAN connection resumes or the load returns to normal traffic, Zerto uses this bitmap to check whether there were updates to the protected disks and if there were updates to the disks, these updates are sent to the recovery site.
DR Management Anywhere

With the Zerto solution everything is managed from a standalone browser-base user interface, enabling disaster recovery management from anywhere using any device.
Accessing the Zerto User Interface

You manage the protection and replication of virtual machines in Microsoft System Center Virtual Machine Manager (SCVMM), between the protected and recovery sites, using the Zerto User Interface. On first access to the user interface, you might have to add a security certificate to set up secure communication. Zerto also provides a set of RESTful APIs and PowerShell cmdlets to enable incorporating some of the disaster recovery functionality within scripts or programs.

You manage the protection and replication of virtual machines between the protected and recovery sites using Zerto Virtual Manager Web Client.

**Notes:**
- For supported browsers, see [Zerto Interoperability Matrix](#).
- The **lowest** supported screen resolution is 1366x768.

**Note:** You must **exclude** the following folders from **antivirus scanning**:

- Zerto Virtual Replication
- `%ProgramData%\Zerto\Data\zvm_db.mdf`
- C:\Program Files\Zerto\Zerto Virtual Replication\Zerto.Zvm.Service.exe
- C:\Program Files\Zerto\Zerto Virtual Replication\Zerto.Vba.VbaService.exe
- C:\Program Files\Zerto\Zerto Virtual Replication\Zerto Online Services Connector\Zerto.Online.Services.Connector.exe
- C:\Program Files\Zerto\Zerto Virtual Replication\Embedded DB Manager Service\Zerto.LocalDbInstanceManagerService.exe

Failure to do so may lead to the Zerto Virtual Replication folder being incorrectly identified as a threat and in some circumstances corrupt the Zerto Virtual Replication folder.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:
- **Using the Zerto Virtual Manager Web Client** on page 33
- **Adding a Security Certificate for the Zerto User Interface** on page 34
- **Working With the Zerto User Interface** on page 36

**Using the Zerto Virtual Manager Web Client**

1. In a browser, enter the following URL:
   
   https://zvm_IP:9669
where \texttt{zvm\_IP} is the IP address of the Zerto Virtual Manager for the site you want to manage.

2. Login using the user name and password for the machine where you installed Zerto.

   \textbf{Username:} The user name for the user for the machine where the Zerto Virtual Manager is installed. If the user is part of a domain, you must also specify the domain, with the following format: \texttt{domain\:username}

   \textbf{Password:} A valid password for the given user name.

Adding a Security Certificate for the Zerto User Interface

Communication between the Zerto Virtual Manager and the user interface uses HTTPS. On the first login to the Zerto User Interface, you must install a security certificate in order to be able to continue working without each login requiring acceptance of the security.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{To install a security certificate for the Zerto User Interface:}
  \item On first access to the Zerto User Interface, if you haven't installed the security certificate, a security alert is issued.

  Note the following:
  \begin{itemize}
    \item To run this procedure run Microsoft Internet Explorer as administrator. The procedure is similar for Google Chrome and for Mozilla Firefox.
    \item Access the Zerto User Interface using the IP and not the name of the machine where Zerto is installed.
  \end{itemize}

  1. Click \textbf{View Certificate}.
      The Certificate dialog is displayed.

  2. Click \textbf{Install Certificate}.
      The Certificate Import wizard dialog is displayed.

  3. Follow the wizard: Place all the certificates in the \textbf{Trusted Root Certification Authorities store}:
     Select the \textbf{Place all certificates in the following store} option and browse to select the \textbf{Trusted Root Certification Authorities store}.
4. Continue to the end of the wizard. Click **Yes** when the Security Warning is displayed.
5. Click **OK** that the installation was successful.

6. Click **OK** when prompted and then **Yes** in the **Security Alert** dialog to continue.

### Working With the Zerto User Interface

After logging on to the Zerto User Interface for the first time, the dashboard is displayed. The dashboard provides summary information about the status of the site, as shown in the following diagram:
Use the tabs to access the specific information you want:

- **DASHBOARD**: General information about the site, including the status of the VPGs being protected or recovered to the site.
- **VPGs**: All the VPGs from both the local and remote sites and provides summary details of each VPG.
- **VMs**: All the protected virtual machines from both the local and remote sites and provides summary details of each virtual machine.
- **SITES**: Details of the paired sites. This tab lists all the paired sites to the local site and provides summary details of each paired site.
- **SETUP**: *(On-Premise only)* Details about VRAs, storage and repositories.
- **RETENTION STATUS**: Details of the retention repository jobs either by VPG or virtual machine. This tab lists all the defined retention sets and their statuses.
- **MONITORING**: Details about the alerts, events and tasks for the site.
- **REPORTS**: General reports.

**Zerto User Interface - Subtabs**

From the SETUP, RETENTION STATUS and MONITORING tabs you can see and manage details for a specific VPG and VRA from different perspective.

For example, under SETUP, from the subtabs, you can manage VRAs, Storage/Datastores and Repositories.
Zerto User Interface - Views

Lists can be displayed with different views. For each view you can filter the information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. Clicking the column title enables sorting the column in ascending to descending order.

You can customize the default views or add a new view by clicking the view configuration button.

Customize a default view by selecting Show/Hide Columns and then checking the columns you want displayed. Create a new view by selecting Create View.
Initial Site Configuration

There are a number of configuration tasks that you should do as part of the initial site configuration. The following configuration topics are described in this chapter section:

- Enabling Replication to the Same Site on page 39
- WAN Sizing on page 40

Note:
To set up Long Term Retention, to monitor the repositories created for retention, and to restore VPGs from the repositories, see Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention on page 332.

Enabling Replication to the Same Site

When a single SCVMM is used, for example with remote branch offices, when replicating from one datacenter to another datacenter, both managed by the same SCVMM, you must enable replication to the same SCVMM and pairing is not required. In this case, replication to the same SCVMM must be set in the Site Settings dialog.

To enable replication to the same SCVMM:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETTING ( ) in the top right of the header and select Site Settings.
   The Site Settings dialog is displayed, with the default tab, Site Information, open.
2. Click the tab Policies.
3. Select the checkbox Enable Replication to Self.

4. Click APPLY or SAVE.

The Zerto Virtual Manager, when used to protect to itself, can manage the protection of up to 5000 virtual machines.

**WAN Sizing**

When preparing your deployment, you need to verify that the connectivity between the two sites has bandwidth capacity that can handle the data to be replicated between the sites.

For minimum bandwidth requirements, see [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines](#).

Zerto employs sophisticated compression algorithms to reduce the bandwidth required between the sites. While compression can be very effective in reducing the bandwidth requirements, its efficiency is dependent on data characteristics.

**Note:** Zerto can also work with third-party WAN optimization and acceleration technologies, such as those supplied by Riverbed Technologies and Silver Peak.

Estimating the bandwidth requirements between the protected and recovery sites involves the following:

1. Collecting Data Characteristics for VMs on page 40.
2. Calculating the Estimated Bandwidth Requirement on page 42.

**Note:** When the recovery site is Amazon Web Services (AWS), you estimate the required bandwidth for the protected machines as described below.

**Collecting Data Characteristics for VMs**

You can collect data characteristics for the virtual machines in a VPG in one of the following ways:

- By using operating system performance monitors, such as the Windows Performance Monitor utility or the `iostat` command for Linux operating systems.
- By using Windows PowerShell in Windows Server 2012 to collect network utilization (and other information). When using metering ACLs, you can measure the total network traffic sent and received by a virtual machine. To collect performance characteristics for the virtual machines in a VPG, using PowerShell, do the following:
  - Turn on resource metering for the relevant virtual machines, if it is not already enabled.
  - Adjust the collection frequency, if necessary.
  - Collect the relevant statistics.

Zerto recommends that you collect data for a minimum of one day. When you have enough statistics, you may want to turn off resource metering since data collection can impact performance.
Turning on Resource Metering

By default, resource metering is not enabled. To turn on resource metering for one virtual machine, enter the following PowerShell command:

```powershell
Get-VM <VM-name> | Enable-VMResourceMetering
```

To turn on monitoring for all virtual machines on a server at one time, enter the following PowerShell command:

```powershell
Get-VM | Enable-VMResourceMetering
```

Once you enable resource metering, Hyper-V begins to collect data. You can reset metering at any time, which discards the data that has been collected up to that point.

If resource metering is enabled but no NetworkAdapterAcls are configured, Hyper-V configures them to measure total network traffic. To measure network traffic through an IP range, configure the NetworkAdapterAcls for the IP range before running `Enable-VMResourceMetering`.

Adjusting the Collection Frequency

By default, the collection frequency is once every hour. You can change the collection frequency, but understand that data collection can impact performance. To change the collection frequency, enter the following command:

```powershell
Set-VMHost -ComputerName <host-server-name> -ResourceMeteringSaveInterval <HH:MM:SS>
```

The collection frequency is always set at the host server level. You cannot adjust the collection frequency per virtual machine.

For example, if you enter 01:30:00, resource consumption will be collected every hour and a half.

Collecting and Viewing the Relevant Statistics

To view resource usage for one virtual machine, enter the following command:

```powershell
Get-VM <VM-name> | Measure-VM
```

Resource metering data can be displayed for all of the virtual machines that are running on a host. To see data for all of the virtual machines on a host, enter the following command:

```powershell
Get_VM | Measure-VM
```

You can configure PowerShell to display only certain statistics. To do this, you must know the object names that PowerShell assigns to each statistic. You can see the object names by entering the following command:

```powershell
Get-VM | Measure-VM | Select-Object *
```

For example, when working with Zerto, you are interested in network traffic. To list the network traffic for each virtual machine, enter the following command:

```powershell
Get-VM | Measure-VM | Select-Object VMName, NetworkMeteredTrafficReport
```

You can use VM Network Adapter ACLs to measure network activity to and from a specific network. For example, to meter network traffic for a special subnet or IP address:

```powershell
Add-VMNetworkAdapterAcl -VMName <VM-name> -Action Meter -RemoteIPAddress 10.10.0.0/16 -Direction Outbound
```
Turning off Resource Metering

To disable the collection of performance statistics, enter the following PowerShell command:

```
Disable-VMResourceMetering -VMName <VM-name>
```

Calculating the Estimated Bandwidth Requirement

Use the average write rate for the virtual machines in a VPG in the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator to estimate the minimum bandwidth required.

For each VM you also must decide whether compression will be enabled for the VM, based on the data characteristics.

Use one of the following procedures:

- Estimating sizing using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator on page 42
- Estimating sizing without using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator on page 42

Estimating sizing using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator

To estimate sizing using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator:

1. Open the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator.
2. Enter the following information in the VM data sheet:
   - The VM name.
   - The Write KB/s data, based on the statistics gathered in the previous task. Use a period for the decimal mark.
   - Define whether compression is enabled for this VM: Select Yes or No.
   - The application data characteristics: Select Compressed or Compressible.

   The Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator colors the cell red if you decide to employ compression on compressible data and orange if you decide to avoid compression for compressible data.
3. The Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator estimates the total bandwidth needed for your deployment, using a minimum value of 5 Mb/sec.

   The estimation is displayed on the top of each page of the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator.

To estimate the WAN sizing required without using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator, using the following procedure.

Estimating sizing without using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator

To estimate sizing without using the Zerto WAN Sizing Estimator:

1. For each virtual machine in the VPG multiply the KB/sec (which is based on the statistics gathered) by 8, and divide the result by 1024 to provide an answer in Mb/sec.
   - If compression is enabled for the VM and the data is compressible, divide this result by 2.
2. Sum the results of step 1.

\[
\text{WAN Mb/sec} = \text{SUM(} \text{KB/sec} \times (8/1024/(1 \text{ or } 2 \text{ if compressible data that will be compressed)}))
\]

The result is an estimate of the required Mb/sec for the WAN.

**Note:** If the result is less than 5 Mb/sec, see Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines for minimum bandwidth requirements.
Overview of Recovery Flows

The Zerto solution enables protecting virtual machines, for both disaster recovery or for extended, longer term recovery from a retention repository, by protecting the relevant virtual machines in virtual protection groups. A virtual protection group (VPG) is a group comprised of virtual machines that are grouped together for recovery purposes. For example, the virtual machines that comprise an application like Microsoft Exchange, where one virtual machine is used for the software, one for the database, and a third for the Web Server require that all three virtual machines be replicated to maintain data integrity.

Once a VPG has been created, each virtual machine in the VPG can be replicated on the recovery site under the VRA on the host specified in the VPG definition as the host for the recovery of the virtual machine.

In addition to disaster recovery and recovery from retention, the Zerto solution enables recovery of individual files or folders from a certain point of time.

The following are described in this section:

- What is Zerto’s Disaster Recovery Operation? on page 44
- What is Zerto’s File or Folder Level Restore? on page 47
- (On-premise environments) What is Zerto’s Long Term Retention? on page 47

What is Zerto’s Disaster Recovery Operation?

Disaster recovery using the Zerto solution enables recovering from a disaster to any point between the moment just before the disaster and a specified amount of time in the past up to 30 days. The recovery is done in real time at the recovery site with a minimal RTO.

A recovery operation is one of the following:

- A failover.
- A planned move of the protected virtual machines from the protected site to the recovery site.
- A clone of the protected virtual machine to the recovery site.

(On-premise environments) What is Zerto’s Disaster Recovery Operation in On-Premise Environments?

Virtual machines are protected in VPGs. Once a VPG is created, Zerto creates a copy under the management of a Virtual Replication Appliance, VRA, on the recovery site, of the protected virtual machine files, such as the configuration and data files. A VRA is installed on every host where the machines are to be recovered.

When a recovery operation is performed, the VRA creates the virtual machines defined in the VPG and attaches the virtual disks to these machines. It then promotes the data from the journal to the virtual machine disks.

Every write to the protected virtual machine in a VPG is copied by the VRA on the same host as the protected machine and passed to the VRA on the host in the recovery site. The VRA on the host in the recovery site was specified in the VPG definition as the host for the recovery of the virtual machine. These
writes first are saved in a journal for a specified period, and then moved to replica virtual disks managed by the VRA, which mirror the protected virtual machine disks.

The following link references the appropriate procedure to protect virtual machines:

- Recovery from: vCenter Server: Providing Virtual Machines from a vCenter Server
- Recovery from: vCloud Director (vCD): Protecting Virtual Machines to and From vCloud Director
- Recovery from: Hyper-V: Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V on page 58

After initializing the VPG, all writes to the protected virtual machines are sent by the VRA on the relevant host for each virtual machine on the protected site to the VRA on the recovery site specified as the recovery host for the virtual machine. The information is saved in the journal for the virtual machine with a timestamp, ensuring write-fidelity. Every few seconds the Zerto Virtual Manager causes a checkpoint to be written to every journal on the recovery site for every virtual machine in the VPG, ensuring crash-consistency.

The data remains in the journal until the time specified for the journal when it is moved to the relevant mirror disks, also managed by the VRA for the virtual machine. In this way, you can recover the virtual machines using the mirror disks and then promoting the data from the journal to include the final few hours of data for each virtual machine. For more details about the journal, see “The Role of the Journal During Protection”, on page 41.

(Azure environments) What is Zerto’s Disaster Recovery Operation to Azure?

Virtual machines are protected in VPGs, which are defined in the protected site. Once a VPG is created, Zerto creates a copy of the protected virtual machines under the management of a Virtual Replication Appliance, VRA, on the Azure recovery site. The data managed by the VRA is saved in a storage account.

When a recovery operation is performed, the Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM) creates the following:

- A copy of the virtual machine disks in a dedicated container under the same storage account.
- A virtual machine in Azure, under a newly created Resource Group, with the copied disks attached to it.
- Network Interfaces Cards (NICs) for each NIC of the protected virtual machine.

Once this is done, the ZVM promotes the data from the journal to the virtual machine disks.

The following link references the appropriate procedure to protect virtual machines:

- Recovery from: Microsoft Azure: Protecting Virtual Machines From Azure

For information on disaster recovery flows from Azure to on-premise platforms see:

- Flow for a Disaster Recovery Operation - vSphere
- Flow for a Disaster Recovery Operation - Hyper-V
(AWS environments) What is Zerto’s Disaster Recovery Operation to AWS?

Every write to the protected virtual machine in a VPG is copied by the VRA on the same host as the protected machine and passed to the VRA in AWS. The VRA writes these transactions to buckets in S3. This information is ready to be written to EBS disks in EC2 when recovering from a disaster or when recovering a retention set.

Virtual machines are protected in VPGs, which are defined in the protected site. Once a VPG is created, Zerto creates a copy of the protected virtual machines under the management of a Virtual Replication Appliance, VRA, on the AWS recovery site. The data managed by the VRA is saved in an S3 bucket.

When a recovery operation is performed, the VRA creates the virtual machines defined in the VPG in EC2 and imports data from the S3 bucket as EBS disks in EC2.

After initializing the VPG, all writes to the protected virtual machines are sent by the VRA on the relevant host for each virtual machine on the protected site to the VRA on the AWS recovery site. The information is saved in the journal for the virtual machine with a timestamp, ensuring write-fidelity. Every few seconds the Zerto Virtual Manager causes a checkpoint to be written to every journal on the recovery site for every virtual machine in the VPG, ensuring crash-consistency.

The data remains in the journal until the time specified for the journal when it is moved to the relevant mirror disks in S3, also managed by the VRA for the virtual machine. In this way, you can recover the virtual machines using the mirror disks and the data from the journal to include the final few hours of data for each virtual machine. Refer to “The Role of the Journal During Protection”, on page 32 for more details about the journal.

The following link references the appropriate procedure to protect virtual machines:

Recovery from: Amazon Web Services (AWS) Protecting Virtual Machines From AWS

The following references the procedures to recover virtual machines protected in a VPG:

- “Overview of Disaster Recovery Operations”, on page 157
- “Managing Failover Live”, on page 196
- “Migrating a VPG to Azure”, on page 181
- “Cloning a VPG to Azure”, on page 208

(On-premise environments) What is Zerto’s Test Failover Operation in On-Premise Environments?

When testing that the recovery works as planned, the VRA creates the virtual machines defined in the VPG and uses scratch disks to simulate the virtual machine disks for the duration of the test. This enables the ongoing protection of the virtual machines and the possibility of a failover if required during the test.

(Azure environments) What is Zerto’s Test Failover Operation in Azure Environments?

When testing that the recovery works as planned, the Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM) creates the virtual machines defined in the VPG in a dedicated resource group in Azure.
(AWS environments) What is Zerto’s Test Failover Operation in AWS Environments?

When testing that the recovery works as planned, the Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM) creates the virtual machines defined in the VPG in EC2.

The following references the procedure to recover virtual machines:

- Overview of Disaster Recovery Operations on page 268
- Testing Recovery on page 272

What is Zerto’s File or Folder Level Restore?

You can recover specific files and folders from the recovery site for virtual machines that are being protected by Zerto and running Windows operating systems. You can recover the files and folders from a specific point-in-time.

To recover files and folders, see Recovering Files and Folders on page 314.

(On-premise environments) What is Zerto’s Long Term Retention?

Note:

You cannot restore a retention set in Azure, or in AWS.

If you need to extend the recovery ability to more than 30 days, Zerto provides Long Term Retention that enables saving the protected data in a state where they can be easily deployed.

The data is saved in a repository for a defined retention period. Each VPG will have retention sets created according to the configured schedule.

The retention process is managed by the ZVM, and the Data Streaming Service (DSS), which is installed in the VRA, performs all the data path operations. During the retention process, the DSS communicates with the VRA on the recovery site. The retention sets are restore points saved either daily, weekly, monthly or yearly in the repository. Before you can start a retention process for VPGs, you must first create one or more repositories for the retention sets.

Configuring Long Term Retention is part of defining a VPG. To set up Long Term Retention to protect VPGs, see Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention on page 332, on page 387.

The number of Daily, Weekly, Monthly and Yearly retention sets define the retention period. For example, keeping 84 Monthly or 7 Yearly both result in a 7 year retention time.

This allows for full flexibility for users to define anything from a week to many years. There is no maximum to the configurable number of Yearly retentions to keep, although Zerto recommend users to keep no more than 150 retention sets in total (all types included). This means Zerto can keep up to 150 years of retention.

What does the Repository Contain?

The Repository contains retention sets, where each retention set has it’s own mapping file (DOM file).

How does the Long Term Retention process work?
When Long Term Retention is first configured, and the first reading of the data has occurred, the retention set consists of:

- All the data copied to the Repository.

When the second reading and any subsequent readings after a full retention of the data occurs, the retention set consists of:

- All the data from the first reading, but not including any original data which was marked as changed during the second reading.
- The changed data from the second reading.

Each incremental retention set is independent of previous incremental and full retention sets, and gives a complete and total picture of the data at the point in time of the reading.

**What happens when the Retention Policy period is overdue?**

Retention sets are kept for the retention period specified as part of the Retention Policy configuration. Once the retention expires, the expired retention sets will be deleted from the Repositories.

**What is Zerto’s File System Indexing?**

To support advanced VM-level or file-level restore scenarios, Zerto offers the capability to index files and folders of selected VMs that are enabled for retention. This allows users to search for the necessary files and folders and to perform a restore of the VMs or VPGs containing those files and folders.

**How Does File System Indexing Work?**

**How does Zerto index a VM?**

Zerto uses its file system parser which is also used for file and folder recovery. Once the retention process completes, Zerto uses the journal capabilities to create a file system view on the same checkpoint that the retention process had used, and gathers information on the file system which includes file/ folder names and file sizes.

**How long does it take to index?**

The indexing process on its own is rather fast. Zerto can process roughly 10,000 files per second on a windows VM and about 2000 files on a Linux VM.

**How is indexing enabled and disabled on a VM?**

Enabling and disabling File System Indexing is done when creating or editing a VPG. See Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs on page 338, on page 394.

**Can a specific disk be excluded from being indexed?**

Currently, excluding specific disks from being indexed is not supported.

**What happens when the indexing repository is changed?**

Zerto will start saving indexing meta data on the new repository. However, Zerto will scan all previously configured indexing repositories when searching for files and folders during Search and Restore operations.

**What happens when the indexing repository is removed?**
Users can select “None” as an indexing repository. If there are still VPGs which have VMs that have been selected for indexing, the indexing process for these VMs will fail. It is recommended to clear the indexing settings from all VMs if one chooses not to use indexing anymore.

**What happens when the indexing repository is re-added?**

If the repository was completely removed from Zerto, then the indexing data is lost. Upon re-adding the repository, any indexing data which exists on that repository is ignored and cannot be leveraged for Search and Restore.

**Is indexing executed in parallel on all VMs?**

No. In order to guardrail resources in the environment, Zerto limits the number of parallel indexing to 3 VMs and 1 per VRA at most.

**How is File System Indexing Managed?**

**How can users leverage the data kept in the indexing repository?**

All the indexed data is kept in the repository and is used when performing Search and Restore. Users can search for files or folders in VMs that were indexed, in a specific date range, select revisions of the specific file or folder in question, and restore the VM or VPG to the selected restore point.

**When does the indexing process happen?**

As part of the retention process, once the system finishes saving the retention sets of all the VMs in the VPG on the repository successfully, Zerto initiates indexing the VMs that were selected for indexing in the VPG.

**Will it affect retention performance or replication?**

Zerto guardrails the replication so any other process will not be affected, and that includes indexing. Indexing is done on the ZVM machine using a service called VBA. The VBA is limited to run 3 indexing tasks in parallel at most, and not more than one VRA. The impact on each VRA is similar to having a single VM mounted for File Level Restore.

**How do I know when indexing is running?**

When the indexing process runs, there will be a task showing the VPG is being indexed.

**Can an indexing task be aborted?**

Yes. As with any other task in Zerto, if you wish to stop the indexing process, you can stop the task by clicking the stop button. See “Monitoring Tasks”, on page 224.

**What happens if a retention process starts while the indexing task is running?**

Zerto cannot run two tasks on the same VPG, therefore the retention process will wait for the indexing process to complete before it starts.

**What happens when indexing fails?**

The indexing task will be shown as “failed”. When searching for files/folders, no results from the failed restore point will be shown.

**When is the indexed data removed from the system/repository?**
In Zerto 7.0, Zerto does not remove the indexed data from the system or the repository. In one of the upcoming updates or versions, Zerto will remove indexed data from both the system and the repository, when the retention-set has been expired. See Storing Retention Sets on page 353 for further details.

**What happens if the indexing task fails?**

When the indexing task fails, there will be a task showing that VPG which was being indexed.

**Is the data removed when the VPG is deleted?**

Indexed data is not deleted from the system, and as such users will be able to search files/folders in VMs even if the VPG protecting these VMs were deleted. In fact, as long as the retention-set that the indexing is referencing still exists, results will show up in Search and Restore operations.

**What happens to the indexed data when re-installing Zerto?**

Zerto does not delete the indexed data. Similarly to the remove repository process, the previously indexed data cannot be leveraged and will not be referenced in the new installation. This is planned to be addressed in one of the upcoming versions.

**What Are the Sizing and System Requirements**

**Which Operating and file systems are supported?**

Operating Systems, File Systems and Volume Manager that Zerto can index:

- Operating Systems: Windows Vista and 2008 server and above and Linux
- File System and Volume Manger: NTFS and EXT2/EXT3/EXT4
- Supported partitioning methods: GPT, MBR

**What happens if only one volume is supported and another one is not?**

Zerto indexes the supported volumes and skips the non-supported volumes one we don't except to log it exists and wasn't supported.

**What is the maximum number of entries that can be indexed on a single VM?**

- A VM with over 150 million entries (files or folders) cannot be indexed.
- Rate of entries (files or folders) indexed in NTFS per second: 5k-10k.
- Rate of entries (files or folders) indexed in EXT per second: 2k-3k.

**How to estimate the size required for indexing?**

Storing the index for 100 restore points (incremental or full) will consume between 5-10% roughly of the original VM size.

**What is Zerto’s Search and Restore?**

Search and Restore allows the user to quickly search for files and folders in specific VMs and restore either the virtual machine or VPG once the desired restore point is identified.
Introduction to Protecting Virtual Machines

Virtual machines are protected in virtual protection groups. A virtual protection group (VPG) is a group of virtual machines that you group together for recovery purposes. For example, the virtual machines that comprise an application like Microsoft Exchange, where one virtual machine is used for the software, one for the database, and a third for the Web Server require that all three virtual machines be replicated to maintain data integrity.

Any virtual machine whose operating system is supported in both the protected site and recovery site can be protected in a VPG.

Once a virtual machine is protected, all changes made on the machine are replicated in the remote site. The replicated virtual machines in the remote site can be recovered to any point in time defined for the VPG or if a period further in the past is required, a retention set can be restored.

When a VPG is created, a replica of each virtual machine disk in the VPG is created under a VRA on the recovery site. These replica virtual disks must be populated with the data in the protected virtual machines, which is done by synchronizing the protected virtual machines with the recovery site replicas. This synchronization between the protected site and remote site takes time, depending on the size of the virtual machines.

After the initial synchronization completes, only the writes to disk from the virtual machines in the protected site are sent to the remote site. These writes are stored by the VRA in the remote site in journals for a specified period, after which they are promoted to the replica virtual disks managed by the VRA.

The number of VPGs that can be defined on a site is limited only by the number of virtual machines that can be protected.

For the maximum number of virtual machines, either being protected or recovered to a site, see Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines

Note: If the total number of protected virtual machines on the paired sites is 5000, then any additional machines are not protected.

Any virtual machine that is supported by the hypervisor can be protected. When recovering to a different hypervisor, the protected virtual machines must also be supported by the recovery hypervisors.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:

- Configuring Virtual Protection Groups on page 51
- The Role of the Journal During Protection on page 53
- What Happens After the VPG is Defined on page 56

Configuring Virtual Protection Groups

Use the following guidelines:

- You protect one or more virtual machines in a VPG.
The VPG must include at least one virtual machine.

After creating a VPG, you can add or remove virtual machines as required.

You can only protect a virtual machine in a VPG when the virtual machine has no more than 60 disks.

The 60 disks can be a combination of IDE and SCSI disks, where each virtual machine can have up to 2 IDE controllers each with a maximum of 4 IDE disks and up to 4 SCSI controllers each with a maximum of 15 disks, so that the total of IDE and SCSI disks does not exceed 60 disks.

When the recovery site is VMware vSphere, any IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks. When the recovery site is Amazon Web Services (AWS), you can only protect virtual machines in the protected site that are supported by AWS in the recovery site and the maximum number of supported disks is 12 for virtual machines running a Windows operating system and 1 for virtual machines running a Linux operating system.

You can protect a virtual machine in several VPGs. A virtual machine can be in a maximum of three VPGs. VPGs that contain the same virtual machine cannot be recovered to the same site.

Note: Protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

The virtual machines can be defined under a single hypervisor host or under multiple hosts. The recovery can also be to a single host or multiple hosts. The virtual machines are recovered with the same configuration as the protected machines. For example, if a virtual machine in the protected site is configured so that space is allocated on demand and this machine is protected in a VPG, then during recovery the machine is defined in the recovery site with the same space allocation configuration. You protect virtual machines by creating the VPG on the site hosting these virtual machines. After the VPG is created, you can add or remove virtual machines from the VPG by editing the VPG in the Zerto User Interface running on either the protected or recovery site.

Note: To create a VPG you must have a recovery site available with a host with a VRA installed. The recovery site can either be a remote site, paired with the protected site, or the protected site itself, where both protection and recovery are to the same Zerto Virtual Manager site.

The VPG definition consists of the following:

General: A name to identify the VPG and the priority to assign to the VPG.

Virtual machines: The list of virtual machines being protected as well as the boot order and boot delay to apply to the virtual protection groups during recovery.

Replication Settings: VPG replication settings, such as the recovery site, host and storage and the VPG SLA. SLA information includes the default journal history settings and how often tests should be performed on the VPG. The defaults are applied to every virtual machine in the VPG but can be overridden per virtual machine, as required.

Cloud service providers can group the VPG SLA properties together in a service profile. When a service profile is used, the VPG SLA settings cannot be modified unless a Custom service profile is available.
**Storage Settings:** By default the storage used for the virtual machine definition is also used for the virtual machine data. This storage can be overridden per virtual machine, as required.

**Recovery Settings:** Recovery details include the networks to use for recovered virtual machines and scripts that should be run either at the start or end of a recovery operation.

**NIC Settings:** Specify the network details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a live or test failover or migration.

**Retention Policy Settings:** Specify the VPG’s retention properties, including the repository where the retention sets are saved.

**The Role of the Journal During Protection**

After defining a VPG, the protected virtual machine disks are synced with the recovery site. After initial synchronization, every write to a protected virtual machine is copied by Zerto to the recovery site. The write continues to be processed normally on the protected site and the copy is sent asynchronously to the recovery site and written to a journal managed by a Virtual Replication Appliance (VRA). Each protected virtual machine has its own journal.

In addition to the writes, every few seconds all journals are updated with a checkpoint time-stamp. Checkpoints are used to ensure write order fidelity and crash-consistency. A recovery can be done to the last checkpoint or to a user-selected, crash-consistent, checkpoint. This enables recovering the virtual machines, either to the last crash-consistent point-in-time or, for example, when the virtual machine is attacked by a virus, to a point-in-time before the virus attack.

Data and checkpoints are written to the journal until the specified journal history size is reached, which is the optimum situation. At this point, as new writes and checkpoints are written to a journal, the older writes are written to the virtual machine recovery virtual disks. When specifying a checkpoint to recover to, the checkpoint must still be in the journal. For example, if the value specified is 24 hours then recovery can be specified to any checkpoint up to 24 hours. After the time specified, the mirror virtual disk volumes maintained by the VRA are updated.

During recovery, the virtual machines at the recovery site are created and the recovery disks for each virtual machine, managed by the VRA, are attached to the recovered virtual machines. Information in the journal is promoted to the virtual machines to bring them up to the date and time of the selected checkpoint. To improve the RTO during recovery, the virtual machine can be used even before the journal data has been fully promoted. Every request is analyzed and the response is returned from the virtual machine directly or, if the information in the journal is more up-to-date, it comes from the journal. This continues until the recovery site’s virtual environment is fully restored to the selected checkpoint.

Each protected virtual machine has its own dedicated journal, consisting of one or more volumes. A dedicated journal enables journal data to be maintained, even when changing the host for the recovery. The default storage used for a journal is the storage used for recovery of each virtual machine. Thus for example, if protected virtual machines in a VPG are configured with different recovery storage, the journal data is by default stored for each virtual machine on that virtual machine recovery storage.

The journals for the protected virtual machines are defined as part of the VPG definition and by default are defined to reside on the same storage as the virtual machine. This can be overridden at the virtual machine and VPG levels as follows.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Allow Storage Tiering</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Journal</strong></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal storage separate from VM storage for each VM</strong></td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal storage for each VPG</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal storage for multiple VPGs</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Journal Sizing**

The journal space is always allocated on demand. The provisioned journal size initially allocated for a journal is 16GB. The provisioned journal size is the current size of all the journal volumes.

If the journal grows to approximately 80% of the provisioned journal size or less than 6GB remains free, a new volume is added to increase the journal size. Each new journal volume added is bigger than the previous volume. The journal size can increase up until a specified hard limit. If the size of the journal is reduced in the VPG definition after new volumes have been added, these volumes are not reduced and continue to be used if required. In this case, the journal size can be bigger than the set size and the reduced journal size definition is not applied, except to ensure that no new volumes are created if the new journal size is reached or exceeded.

The provisioned journal size reported in the Resources report can fluctuate considerably when new volumes are added or removed.

When the amount of the journal used is approximately 50% of the provisioned journal size, the biggest unused journal volume from the added volumes is marked for removal. This volume is then removed after the time equivalent to three times the amount specified for the journal history, or twenty-four hours, whichever is more if it is still not used.

The size of the datastore where the journal resides must have at least 30GB free, or have 15% free space, relative to the total datastore space, whichever number of GBs is smaller.

If the available storage of the journal datastore falls below 30GB or 15% of the total datastore size:

- The datastore itself is considered full.
- An error alert is issued and all writes to the journal volumes that datastore storage are blocked.
• Replication is halted, but history is not lost.
• The RPO begins to steadily increase until additional datastore space is made available.

Examples:
• For a large (2TB) datastore: 15% free space remaining = 307GB.
  The ZVM would not consider the datastore full if 307GB of free space were remaining. 30GB free space remaining would trigger an alert, as it is the smaller figure.
• For a small (100GB) datastore: 15% free space free space remaining = 15GB.
  The ZVM would not consider the datastore full if 30GB of free space were remaining. 15GB free space remaining would trigger an alert, as it is the smaller figure.

A volume does not change the provisioned journal size, which is the current size of all the journal volumes.

When a virtual machine journal comes close to a specified hard limit, Zerto starts to move data to the target disks. Once this begins, the maintained history begins to decrease. If the journal history falls below 75% of the value specified for the journal history, a warning alert is issued in the GUI. If the history falls below one hour, an error is issued. However, if the amount of history defined is only one hour, an error is issued if it is less than 45 minutes.

The size of the datastore where the journal resides must have at least 30GB free, or have 15% free space, relative to the total datastore space, whichever number of GBs is smaller.

If the available storage of the journal datastore falls below 30GB or 15% of the total datastore size:
• The datastore itself is considered full.
• An error alert is issued and all writes to the journal volumes that datastore storage are blocked.
• Replication is halted, but history is not lost.
• The RPO begins to steadily increase until additional datastore space is made available.

Examples:
• For a large (2TB) datastore: 15% free space remaining = 307GB.
  The ZVM would not consider the datastore full if 307GB of free space were remaining. 30GB free space remaining would trigger an alert, as it is the smaller figure.
• For a small (100GB) datastore: 15% free space free space remaining = 15GB.
  The ZVM would not consider the datastore full if 30GB of free space were remaining. 15GB free space remaining would trigger an alert, as it is the smaller figure.

Testing Considerations When Determining Journal Size

When a VPG is tested, either during a failover test or before committing a Move or Failover operation, a scratch volume is created for each virtual machine being tested. The scratch volume created uses the same size limit defined for the virtual machine journal.

The size limit of the scratch volume determines the length of time that you can test for. Larger limits enable longer testing times if the constant rate of change is constant. If a small hard limit is set for this amount
of history, for example 2-3 hours, the scratch volume created for testing will also be small, thus limiting the time available for testing.

What Happens After the VPG is Defined

After defining a VPG, the VPG is created. For the creation to be successful, the storage used for the recovery must have either 30GB free space or 15% of the size free. This requirement ensures that during protection the VRA, which manages the virtual machine journal and data, cannot completely fill the storage, which would result in the VRA freezing and stopping to protect all virtual machines using that VRA.

The VRA in the remote site is updated with information about the VPG and then the data on the protected virtual machines are synchronized with the replication virtual machines managed by the VRA on the recovery site. This process can take some time, depending on the size of the VMs and the bandwidth between the sites.

During this synchronization, you cannot perform any replication task, such as adding a checkpoint.

For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the protected data to replicate to the target recovery disks and an alert is issued.

Once synchronized, the VRA on the recovery site includes a complete copy of every virtual machine in the VPG. After synchronization the virtual machines in the VPG are fully protected, meeting their SLA, and the delta changes to these virtual machines are sent to the recovery site.

For details of the screen, see Monitoring a Single VPG on page 177, on page 135.
Recovery

After initializing the VPG, all writes to the protected virtual machines are sent by the VRA on the relevant host for each virtual machine on the protected site to the VRA on the recovery site specified as the recovery host for the virtual machine. The information is saved in the journal for the virtual machine with a timestamp, ensuring write-fidelity. Every few seconds the Zerto Virtual Manager writes a checkpoint to every journal on the recovery site for every virtual machine in the VPG, ensuring crash-consistency.

The data remains in the journal for the time defined by the journal history configuration, after which it is moved to the relevant mirror disks for each virtual machine. Both the journal and the mirror disks are managed by the VRA.

When recovering, either a failover or move, or testing failover or cloning protected virtual machines in the recovery site, you specify the checkpoint at which you want the recovered virtual machines to be recovered. The mirror disks and journal are used to recover the virtual machines to this point-in-time.

File and Folder Recovery

After initializing the VPG, instead of recovering a virtual machine, you can recover specific files and folders in the protected virtual machines from a checkpoint.
Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V

When the protected site is SCVMM, protection can be set up to cope with the following situations:

- A disaster, enabling recovery to a point in time in the 30 days prior to the disaster.
- The need to retain files saved either daily or weekly for a period of up to one year. The same wizard is used to set up both disaster recovery and the retention policy.

Use any of the following procedures depending on the site to which you need to recover:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protected Site</th>
<th>To a Recovery Site</th>
<th>See Procedure...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hyper-V Server</td>
<td>To a different Hyper-V Server site</td>
<td>Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery Site Hyper-V on page 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To the same Hyper-V Server site</td>
<td>Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(local replication)</td>
<td>Same Site on page 88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To a VMware vCenter site</td>
<td>Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery Site VMware vCenter Server on page 89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To a VMware vCloud Director site</td>
<td>Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery Site VMware vCloud Director on page 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To an Amazon Web Services (AWS) site</td>
<td>Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery Site AWS on page 149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To a Microsoft Azure site</td>
<td>Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery Site AWS on page 149</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Requirements for Hyper-V Environments

Before protecting your virtual machines, review Zerto - Prerequisites & Requirements for Microsoft Hyper-V Environments
Considerations

- A Hyper-V host with a pass-through disk is ignored by the Zerto Virtual Manager.
- Any virtual machine that is supported by the hypervisor can be protected. When recovering to a different hypervisor, the protected virtual machines must also be supported by the recovery hypervisor.
- You cannot protect the following virtual machines:
  - A VM VRA which is a virtual machine with a VRA installed on it.
  - A virtual machine on a host that has no VRA installed.
  - A virtual machine that was created after performing a Failover Test.
  - A virtual machine that is connected to DVDs.
  - A virtual machine with no disks attached.
  - A virtual machine that was removed from the inventory.
  - A virtual machine with pass-through disks and shared disks.

Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site Hyper-V

You can protect virtual machines to Hyper-V. The procedure is the same whether you intend to protect one virtual machine or multiple virtual machines.

To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in Hyper-V:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, select Actions> Create VPG.
   The General step of the Create VPG wizard is displayed.
2. Specify the name of the VPG and the priority of the VPG.

- **VPG Name**: The VPG name must be unique. The name cannot be more than 80 characters.
- **Priority**: Determine the priority for transferring data from the protected site to the recovery site when there is limited bandwidth and more than one VPG is defined on the protected site.
  - **High Priority**: When there are updates to virtual machines protected in VPGs with different priorities, updates from the VPG with the highest priority are passed over the WAN first.
  - **Medium Priority**: Medium priority VPGs will only be able to use whatever bandwidth is left after the high priority VPGs have used it.
  - **Low Priority**: Low priority VPGs will use whatever bandwidth is left after the medium priority VPGs have use it.

Updates to the protected virtual machines are always sent across the WAN before synchronization data, such as during a bitmap or delta sync.

During synchronization, data from the VPG with the highest priority is passed over the WAN before data from medium and low priority VPGs.

3. Click **NEXT**.

The VMs step is displayed.
4. Select the VMs that will be part of this VPG and click the arrow pointing right to include these VMs in the VPG.

   - When using the **Search** field, you can use the wildcards; * or ?

   Virtual machines that are not yet protected are displayed in the list. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.

5. You can view protected virtual machines in the **Advanced (One-to-Many)** section, by clicking **Select VMs**.

   The Select VMs dialog is displayed.

   ![Select VMs dialog](image)

   **Note:** Virtual machines can be protected in a maximum of three VPGs. These VPGs cannot be recovered to the same site. Virtual machines protected in the maximum number of VPGs are not displayed in the Select VMs dialog.

   In on-premise environments, protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version...
5.0 and higher.

6. To define the boot order of the virtual machines in the VPG, click **DEFINE BOOT ORDER**, otherwise go to the next step.

When virtual machines in a VPG are started in the recovery site, by default these machines are not started up in a particular order. If you want specific virtual machines to start before other machines, you can specify a boot order. The virtual machines are defined in groups and the boot order applies to the groups and not to individual virtual machines in the groups. You can specify a delay between groups during startup.

**Note:** Up to 20 virtual machines may boot on a host simultaneously. Following the boot, a 15 second (default) delay occurs until the next boot batch.

Initially, virtual machines in the VPG are displayed together under the Default group. If you want specific machines to start before other virtual machines, define new groups with one or more virtual machines in each group.

7. Click **ADD GROUP** to add a new group. Then, do the following:
   a. To change the name of a group, click the Pencil icon next to the group.
   b. To delete a group, click the delete icon on the right side. You cannot delete the Default group nor a group that contains a virtual machine.
   c. Drag virtual machines to move them from one group to another.
   d. Drag groups to change the order the groups are started, or, optionally, in **Boot Delay**, specify a time delay between starting up the virtual machines in the group and starting up the virtual machines in the next group.

   *For Example:* Assume three groups, Default, Server, and Client, defined in this order. The boot delay defined for the Default group is 10, for the Server group is 100, and for the Client group 0. The virtual machines in the Default group are started together and after 10 seconds the virtual machines in the Server group are started. After 100 seconds the virtual machines in the Client group are started.
e. Click OK to save the boot order.

Click NEXT.

The REPLICATION step is displayed.

**Note:** If the protected site is paired with only one recovery site, the recovery step is displayed with the **Recovery Site** field automatically filled in and defaults set for the SLA and Advanced settings, as shown below.

8. Specify the recovery site.

- **Recovery Site:** The site to which you want to recover the virtual machines. After specifying the recovery site, the host and storage on the site to use for the replication can be specified.
Note: You cannot select a recovery site if any of the virtual machines you selected are already in VPGs that recover to that site.

- **Host**: The default cluster or host, in the recovery site that handles the replicated data.

- **Storage**: The default storage volume to use for the recovered virtual machine files and for their data volumes. Every storage for the recovery host is included in the drop-down list. If a cluster is selected for the host, only storage accessible by every host in the cluster are displayed.

9. Optionally, change the SLA settings, which apply to every virtual machine in the group.

- **Journal History**: The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.

  The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.

  Select the number of **hours** from 1 to 23 or the number of **days** from 1 to 30.

10. For advanced journal settings, click **ADVANCED**.

    The Advanced Journal Settings dialog is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal History</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.</td>
<td>• Number of <strong>hours</strong> from 1 to 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.</td>
<td>• Number of <strong>days</strong> from 1 to 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Default Journal Storage (Hyper-V), or Default Journal Datastore (vSphere)</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The storage/datastore used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG.</td>
<td>• Select the storage/datastore accessible to the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> This field is <strong>not</strong> relevant when replicating to a vCD recovery site.</td>
<td>When you select a specific journal storage/datastore, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this storage/datastore, regardless of where the recovery storage/datastore is for each virtual machine. All protected virtual machines are recovered to the hosts that can access the specified journal storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Journal Size Hard Limit

The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount.

The journal is always **thin-provisioned**.

**Note:** The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently **both** to the Journal History and also to the Scratch Journal Volume.

*For Example:* If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit.

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Unlimited:</strong> The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.</td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are <strong>not</strong> displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Size (GB):</strong> The maximum journal size in GB.</td>
<td>• <strong>Size (GB):</strong> The maximum journal size in GB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <strong>minimum</strong> journal size, set by Zerto, is <strong>8GB</strong> for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and <strong>10GB</strong> for Microsoft Azure environments.</td>
<td>• <strong>Percentage:</strong> The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM’s volume size.</td>
<td>• <strong>Percentage:</strong> The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Percentage:</strong> The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Journal Size Warning Threshold

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The size of the journal that triggers a</td>
<td>• <strong>Unlimited</strong>: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>warning that the journal is nearing its</td>
<td>the size of the recovery storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard limit.</td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are <strong>not</strong> displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Size</strong> (GB): The size in GB that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Percentage</strong>: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*The values of **Size** and **Percentage** must be less than the configured **Journal Size Hard Limit** so that the warning will be generated when needed.

In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full.

11. Click **OK**.

- **Target RPO Alert**: The maximum desired time between each automatic checkpoint write to the journal before an alert is issued.

- **Test Reminder**: The amount of time in months recommended between each test, where you test the integrity of the VPG. A warning is issued if a test is not performed within this time frame.

12. **Enable WAN Traffic Compression**: Whether or not data is compressed before being transferred to the recovery site. Compressing the data is more efficient, but results in a small performance degradation.

**Note**: WAN Traffic Compression is enabled by default when replicating to vCD.

- Enable WAN traffic compression if network considerations are more critical than CPU usage considerations.

- When WAN compression is enabled, the compressed data is written in compressed format to the recovery site journal. Even if WAN compression is selected, Zerto decreases the level of compression if it takes too many resources. The VRA automatically adjusts the compression level according to CPU usage, including totally disabling it if needed. Zerto recommends enabling WAN compression.
Zerto can also work with third-party WAN optimization and acceleration technologies, such as those supplied by Riverbed Technologies and Silver Peak.

When third-party WAN optimization is implemented, Zerto recommends disabling VPG WAN compression.

The Advanced VM Replication Settings dialog is displayed.

In this dialog, you can edit the values of one or more of the virtual machines in the VPG.

13. To edit information in **one field**, click the field and update the information.

14. To edit information for **several virtual machines** at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Edit VM dialog is displayed.

15. Define as follows:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovery Host</strong> <em>(not relevant when replicating to vCD)</em></td>
<td><strong>(Hyper-V)</strong> The cluster or host that will host the recovered virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>(vSphere)</strong> The cluster, resource pool, or host that will host the recovered virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, only a resource pool can be specified and the resource pool must also have been defined in Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, see Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for all the virtual machines specified in the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If a resource pool is specified and DRS is disabled for the site later on, all the resource pools are removed by VMware and recovery is to any one of the hosts in the recovery site with a VRA installed on it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>All resource pool checks are made at the level of the VPG and do not take into account multiple VPGs using the same resource pool. If the resource pool CPU resources are defined as unlimited, the actual limit is inherited from the parent but if this inherited value is too small, failover, move, and failover test operations can fail, even without a warning alert being issued by Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VM Recovery Datastore</strong> <em>(vSphere)</em> <em>(not relevant when replicating to vCD)</em></td>
<td><strong>The datastore where the VMware metadata files for the virtual machine are stored, such as the VMX file.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If a cluster or resource pool is selected for the host, only datastores that are accessible by every ESX/ESXi host in the cluster or resource pool are displayed. This is also the datastore where RDM backing files for recovery volumes are located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovery Storage</strong> <em>(Hyper-V)</em> <em>(not relevant when replicating to vCD)</em></td>
<td><strong>The location where the metadata files for the virtual machine are stored, such as the VHDx file.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If a cluster is selected for the host, only storage that are accessible by every host in the cluster are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal Size Hard Limit</td>
<td><strong>Unlimited:</strong> The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore. If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are <strong>not</strong> displayed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount.

- The journal is always **thin-provisioned**.
- The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently **both** to the Journal History **and** also to the Scratch Journal Volume.

*For Example:* If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size (GB): The maximum journal size in GB.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- The minimum journal size, set by Zerto, is <strong>8GB</strong> for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and <strong>10GB</strong> for Microsoft Azure environments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percentage: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM's volume size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal Size Warning Threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16. Click **OK**.

17. In the Advanced VM Replication Settings dialog, click **OK**.

18. Click **NEXT**.

   The **Storage** step is displayed.

   By default the storage used for the virtual machine definition is also used for the virtual machine data.

   For each virtual machine in the VPG, Zerto displays its storage-related information.
**Note:** Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that step. Every step must be marked with a check mark before you can click **DONE** to create the VPG.

- **Temp Data:** If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration, mark the recovery disk for this disk as a temp data disk. In this case, data is **not** replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.

19. To edit storage information for one of the virtual machines' volume location, first select the virtual machine, then click **EDIT SELECTED**. The Edit Volumes window is displayed.

- For **Hyper-V** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click [here](#).

- For **vSphere** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click [here](#).

- For **vCD** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click [here](#).
Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V

Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site Hyper-V

73
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Source</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <em>(Hyper-V)</em> Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</td>
<td>• <strong>Volume Source &gt; Storage</strong>: A new volume is used for replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• From the <strong>Storage</strong> drop-down list, specify the storage to use to create disks for the replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The storage specified for the replication must have at least the same amount of space as the protected volume and then an additional amount for the journal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>For more details, see Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines, in the section Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Volume Source &gt; Preseeded volume</strong>: Whether to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Zerto recommends</strong> using this option particularly for large disks so that the initial synchronization will be faster since a <strong>Delta Sync</strong> can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>When not</strong> using a preseeded disk, the initial synchronization phase must copy the whole disk over the WAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When using a preseeded virtual disk, you select the storage and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk</strong>, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The storage where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery storage for the replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vSphere) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</td>
<td><strong>Volume Source &gt; Datastore:</strong> A new volume is used for replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Datastore</strong></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Edit Volume Dialog" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>RDM</strong></td>
<td>Vol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Preseeded volume</strong></td>
<td>Volume Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Specify the **Datastore** to use to create disks for the replicated data.
- If the **source disk is thin provisioned**, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned.
- The datastore specified for replication must have at least the same amount of space as the **protected volume** and an additional amount for the **journal**.
- The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.
- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified.

Then, define the following:

- **Datastore:** The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.

For more details, see *Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines*, in the section **Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V**.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Source &gt; RDM</strong>: The VMware RDM (Raw Device Mapping) which will be used for the replication.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By default, **RDM is recovered as thin-provisioned VMDK** in the datastore specified in the **VM Recovery Datastore/Storage** field in the Edit VM dialog, and not to RDM.

Only a raw disk with the **same size as the protected disk** can be selected from the list of available raw disks. Other raw disks with different sizes are not available for selection.

The RDM is always stored in the recovery datastore, used for the virtual machine.

The following **limitations** apply to protecting RDM disks:

- RDM disks with an even number of blocks can replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an even number of blocks and to VMDKs.
- RDM disks with an odd number of blocks can only replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an odd number of blocks and not to VMDKs.
- You cannot define an RDM disk to be protected to a cloud service provider via a Zerto Cloud Connector nor if the virtual machine uses a BusLogic SCSI controller, nor when protecting or recovering virtual machines in an environment running vCenter Server 5.x with ESX/ESXi version 4.1 hosts.
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(vSphere) Volume Source continued</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volume Source &gt; Preseeded volume: Select this when you want to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.</td>
<td>![Volume Source]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Consider the following, then proceed to define the Datastore and the Path:

- **Zerto recommends** using this option particularly for **large disks** so that the initial synchronization is **faster** since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.

- If a preseeded disk is **not** selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the **whole disk** over the WAN.

- If you use a preseeded virtual disk, you select the datastore and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk, which cannot be an IDE disk. Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

- The datastore where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery datastore for the replicated data.

- If the preseeded disk is **greater than 1TB on NFS storage**, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out. The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: `esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout> /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout`

- If the protected disks are **non-default geometry**, configure the VPG using preseeded volumes.

- If the protected disk is an **RDM disk**, it can be used to preseed to a recovery VMDK disk. Zerto makes sure that the VMDK disk size is a correct match for the RDM disk.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Then, define the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Datastore:</strong> The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Path:</strong> The full path to the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(vCD) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• vCD managed storage policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Preseeded volume</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Select...

**Volume Source > vCD managed storage policy:** Zerto will select a datastore, from the list of available datastores, in the selected Storage Policy in which to place the Volume, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- If there are several valid datastores, the datastore with the most available space is selected.
- Zerto recalculates the datastore available space for each volume sequentially, taking into consideration previously allocated volumes.

**Volume Source > Preseeded volume:**

Select this when you want to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.

- Zerto **recommends** using this option particularly for **large disks** so that the initial synchronization is **faster** since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.

- If a preseeded disk is **not** selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the **whole disk** over the WAN.

- The preseeded volume is a virtual disk (the VMDK flat file and descriptor) in the recovery site that has been prepared with a copy of the protected data.

- Browse to the preseed folder configured for the customer and the disk name, of the preseeded disk.

In order to use a preseeded VMDK, do the following:

- Create a folder in vCD to use for the preseeded disks in the datastore you want to use for the customer.

- Specify this datastore as a provider datastore for preseeded disks in the Configure Provider vDCs window, from the Advanced Settings window, as described in Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

- In the Zerto Cloud Manager specify the Preseed Folder Name for the ZORG, in the Manage ZORG tab.

- Zerto searches for the preseeded folder in the available datastores in the Org vDCs specified in the vCD Cloud Resources for the ZORG in the Zerto Cloud Manager and takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

If the virtual machine has more than one preseeded disk, these disks must...
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reside on the same datastore.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If the preseeded disk is greater than 1TB on NFS storage, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, <a href="http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en-US&amp;cmd=displayKC&amp;externalId=1027919">http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en-US&amp;cmd=displayKC&amp;externalId=1027919</a>, which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: <code>esxcfg-advcfg -s &lt;Timeout&gt; /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified. Virtual machine RDMs in a vCenter Server are replicated as VMDKs in a vCD environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(vCD) continued

**Storage Policy:** Specify the Storage Policy for recovery from one of the options:

- Storage Policy per volume is supported only in vCD supported versions, and when the selected Orgvdc is not configured for fast provisioning.
- Zerto will select a datastore from the selected Storage Policy in which to place these files, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.
- The Storage Policies which appear in the drop-down list:
- Include the **Use VM Default** option (default), which will apply the VM’s storage policy to this volume. This is also the Storage Policy default value.
- Were defined in VMware vCloud Director and are configured in the Orgvdc.
- Have at least one Datastore that was not excluded as a Recovery Volume in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temp Data disk</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration.</td>
<td>Specify a mirror disk for replication that is marked as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Thin provisioning (vSphere)

If the recovery volumes are thin-provisioned or not.

If the source disk is thin provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned.

vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports thin-provisioned volumes

### Dynamic provisioning (Hyper-V)

If the recovery volumes are dynamic-provisioned or not.

If the source disk is dynamic provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also dynamic provisioned.

vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports dynamic-provisioned volumes

---

20. Click **OK**.

21. Click **NEXT**.

The RECOVERY step is displayed. Recovery details include the networks to use for failover, move, and for testing failover, and whether scripts should run as part of the recovery operation.

22. Select the default recovery settings. These are applied to every virtual machine in the VPG.

   - **Failover/Move Network**: The network to use during a failover or move operation in which the recovered virtual machines will run.
   
   - **Failover Test Network**: The network to use when testing the failover of virtual machines in the recovery site. Zerto recommends using a fenced-out network so as not to impact the production network at this site.
23. To run pre and post recovery scripts, enter the path to the script to run.

- **Pre-recovery Script**: The information about a script that should run at the beginning of the recovery process.

- **Post-recovery Script**: The information about a script that should run at the end of the recovery process.

For both types of scripts, enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Box</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Script path</td>
<td>The full path to the script. The script must be located on the same machine as the Zerto Virtual Manager for the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Params</td>
<td>The parameters to pass to the script. Separate parameters with a space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timeout</td>
<td>The time-out, in seconds, for the script to run.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
  - If the script runs before executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the script fails or the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated and the failover, move, or test failover is not performed. |
  - If the script runs after executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated. |
  - The default time-out value is specified in **Site Settings > Performance and Throttling** tab. |

**Note:** Pre and post recovery scripts run in parallel. Therefore, ensure that the pre and post recovery scripts don’t use common resources.

24. Click **NEXT**.

The **NICs** step is displayed. In this step, you can specify the NIC details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover, a test failover, or migration.
25. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.

26. To edit information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click EDIT SELECTED.

27. Otherwise, go to step 30 on page 84.

The Edit VNIC dialog is displayed.

Specify the network details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover or move operation, in the Failover/Move column, and for the recovered virtual machines when testing replication, in the Test column.
28. In each column, **specify** the following:

- **Network**: The network to use for this virtual machine.

- **Create new MAC address?**: Whether the Media Access Control address (MAC address) used on the protected site should be replicated on the recovery site. The default is to use the same MAC address on both sites. Note that if you check this option, to create a new MAC address, and the current IP address is not specified, the protected virtual machine static IP address might not be used for the recovered virtual machine.

- **Change vNIC IP Configuration**: Whether or not to keep the default virtual NIC (vNIC) IP configuration. Configuration is possible only when the guest operating system is defined in the hypervisor manager and Integration Services are detected. The vNIC IP address is only changed after recovery for virtual machines with Microsoft Integration Services running.

To change the vNIC IP configuration, select **Yes** in the Failover/Move or Test column. If you select to use a statically-assigned IP address, set the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. Optionally, change the preferred and alternate DNS server IP addresses and the DNS suffix. If you leave the DNS server and suffix entries empty, or select to use DHCP, the IP address and DNS server configurations are assigned automatically, to match the protected virtual machine. You can change the DNS suffix.

If the virtual machine has multiple NICs but is configured to only have a single default gateway, fill in a 0 for each octet in the Default gateway field for the NICs with no default gateway.

**Note**: During a failover, move, or test failover, if the recovered virtual machine is assigned a different IP address than the original IP address, after the virtual machine has started it is injected with the correct IP address. If the same network is used for both production and test failovers, Zerto recommends changing the IP address for the virtual machines started for the test, so that there is no IP address clash between the test machines and the production machines.

- **Copy to failover test**: Select this to copy the settings in the Failover/Move column to the **Test** column.

- **Copy to failover/move**: Select this to copy the settings in the Test column to the Failover/Move column.

29. Click **OK**.

30. Click **NEXT**.

The RETENTION POLICY step is displayed. Retention properties govern the VPG retention, including the repository where the retention sets are saved.
31. By default, Long Term Retention is OFF. To keep this value, go to step 40 on page 88.

32. Toggle Long Term Retention from OFF to ON.

The options on the screen become available.

**Note:** When a VPG is recovered to a Public Cloud, Long Term Retention is not available.

33. Select the Target Repository from the drop-down list. This is the name of the Repository where the Retention sets are written. The Connection Type and Path of that Repository appear after selecting the Target Repository.

34. Select the VMs to index from the File System Indexing drop-down list. For details on file system indexing, see Configuring File System Indexing on page 320.

35. **Run all retention processes at:** The time to start the Retention process. The time is shown in UTC and is according to the Zerto Virtual Manager clock in the production site. All Daily, Weekly, Monthly or Yearly retentions will run at this time.

36. **Daily** and Monthly retentions are toggled ON by default and the default Retention settings for Schedule, Type and Keep For appear. By default, all Retention processes are scheduled to run on the same day.

37. Toggle the Weekly or Yearly retentions from OFF to ON. The default Retention settings for Schedule, Type and Keep For appear. The Retention setting Keep For is the length of time to keep the Retention sets. For details of how this affects the number of Retention sets saved, see Storing Retention Sets on page 353.

**Note:** Daily or Weekly Retentions must be configured. Weekly or Monthly retentions must be configured to Full.
38. If you do not want to use the default settings, click the edit icon next to each Retention setting and configure the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select…</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click the edit icon. The Daily Retention window is displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Daily Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Keep For:</strong> Define the number of days to keep the Daily Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Weekly</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click the edit icon. The Weekly Retention window is displayed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Every:</strong> Run a Retention process <strong>every</strong> selected day of the week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type:</strong> Select <strong>Full</strong> or <strong>Incremental</strong> from the drop-down menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Full:</strong> All the data is copied to the Repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Incremental:</strong> Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Weekly Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of weeks to keep the Weekly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Monthly

Click the edit icon. The Monthly Retention window is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Run a Retention process on the first, second, third, fourth or last selected day of each month. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each month.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific date of the month up to the 28th and last. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the 12th of each month.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type:</strong> Select <strong>Full</strong> or <strong>Incremental</strong> from the drop-down menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Full:</strong> All the data is copied to the Repository.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Incremental:</strong> Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Monthly Retention window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of months to keep the Monthly Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yearly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click the edit icon. The Yearly Retention window is displayed.</td>
<td>• Run a Retention process on the first or last selected day of the year. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific day and month of the year. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process every 12th of July.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Run at: The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Yearly Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Keep for: Define the number of years to keep the Yearly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

39. **Retries**: Select **Automatic retry after failure** to automatically rerun the Retention process, if the operation fails.

   • If you select this option, you must also define **Number of attempts**, and the **Wait time between retries**.

40. Click **NEXT**.

   The SUMMARY step is displayed. It shows the VPG configuration that you defined in previous tabs.

41. Click **DONE**. The VPG is created.

For details of what happens after saving the VPG, see *What Happens After the VPG is Defined on page 56.*

**Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to the Same Site**

The same site can be used as both the protected and recovery sites. Even if the site is not paired with another site, VPGs can be created.

Before you continue, see the following topic: *When to Replicate to the Same Site on page 89*
When to Replicate to the Same Site

The following scenarios show when replicating to the same site can be beneficial. The list is not inclusive.

- Where the same SCVMM manages different datacenters in different geographical locations. The main datacenter can be used as the recovery site. This scenario describes situations where there are remote offices or branch offices (ROBOs).
- In an organization that does not have a recovery site but wants to protect its virtual machines that use one storage by creating recovery on a second storage. This protects against a disaster happening to the primary storage.
- Between hosts in different clusters.
- Protection against viruses, even in a single cluster: A different host within the cluster can serve as the recovery host for a host with an internal problem with a virtual machine, such as a virus.

To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover to the same site:

1. Select **Site Settings**. In the Site Settings dialog, select **Policies**.

   ![Site Settings dialog](image)

   - **Disaster and Recovery**
     - Failover/Move Commit Policy: Commit
     - Default Timeout (Minutes): 60
   
   - **Pre/Post Recovery Operations Scripts**
     - Default Script Execution Timeout: 300 Sec

2. In the Replication section, select the option **Enable replication to self**.

3. Click **SAVE** or **APPLY**.

To define a VPG to recover to the protection site:

- In the Zerto User Interface, select **ACTIONS > CREATE VPG**.

   The GENERAL step of the Create VPG wizard is displayed.

   The procedure is the same as when protecting virtual machines, described in **Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site Hyper-V** on page 59.

Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site VMware vCenter Server

You can protect virtual machines to a recovery site VMware vCenter Server. The procedure is the same whether you intend to protect one virtual machine or multiple virtual machines.
When creating a VPG from Hyper-V to a VMware vCenter Server, all recovery operations bring up the recovered machines on VMware vCenter Server hosts.

Zerto uses SCSI for vCenter Server virtual machine disks. Any Hyper-V virtual machines with IDE disks will be recovered with SCSI disks.

When protecting virtual machines from Hyper-V to vCenter Server, the operating systems of the protected machines must be supported by vCenter Server. Refer to VMware documentation for the list of supported operating systems.

The following conversions are done to a protected virtual machine when it is recovered in vCenter Server:

- Virtual machines are recovered in vCenter Server with the highest hardware version supported by the vCenter Server host version under which the virtual machine is recovered.
- A Generation 1 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with BIOS with the highest supported hardware version.
- A Generation 2 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with EUFI. The host in vCenter must support hardware version 8 or higher. Also the following restrictions apply for Generation 2 virtual machines:
  - The secure boot option for the machine in Hyper-V must be disabled.
  - The boot disk must be less than 2TB if the recovery host version is lower than ESXi 5.5.
- All IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks. The boot disk is ported to a disk on a SCSI controller with location 0:0.
- Recovered virtual machines use the VMware Virtual E1000 network adapter.

To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in VMware vCenter:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, select Actions > Create VPG.

   The General step of the Create VPG wizard is displayed.
2. Specify the name of the VPG and the priority of the VPG.

   • **VPG Name**: The VPG name must be unique. The name cannot be more than 80 characters.
   
   • **Priority**: Determine the priority for transferring data from the protected site to the recovery site when there is limited bandwidth and more than one VPG is defined on the protected site.

      • **High Priority**: When there are updates to virtual machines protected in VPGs with different priorities, updates from the VPG with the highest priority are passed over the WAN first.

      • **Medium Priority**: Medium priority VPGs will only be able to use whatever bandwidth is left after the high priority VPGs have used it.

      • **Low Priority**: Low priority VPGs will use whatever bandwidth is left after the medium priority VPGs have use it.

      Updates to the protected virtual machines are always sent across the WAN before synchronization data, such as during a bitmap or delta sync.

      During synchronization, data from the VPG with the highest priority is passed over the WAN before data from medium and low priority VPGs.

3. Click **NEXT**.

   The VMs step is displayed.
4. Select the VMs that will be part of this VPG and click the arrow pointing right to include these VMs in the VPG.

- When using the Search field, you can use the wildcards; * or ?

Virtual machines that are not yet protected are displayed in the list. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.

5. You can view protected virtual machines in the Advanced (One-to-Many) section, by clicking Select VMs.

The Select VMs dialog is displayed.

Note: Virtual machines can be protected in a maximum of three VPGs. These VPGs cannot be recovered to the same site. Virtual machines protected in the maximum
number of VPGs are not displayed in the Select VMs dialog.

In on-premise environments, protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

6. To define the boot order of the virtual machines in the VPG, click **DEFINE BOOT ORDER**, otherwise go to the next step.

When virtual machines in a VPG are started in the recovery site, by default these machines are not started up in a particular order. If you want specific virtual machines to start before other machines, you can specify a boot order. The virtual machines are defined in groups and the boot order applies to the groups and not to individual virtual machines in the groups. You can specify a delay between groups during startup.

**Note:** Up to 20 virtual machines may boot on a host simultaneously. Following the boot, a 15 second (default) delay occurs until the next boot batch.

Initially, virtual machines in the VPG are displayed together under the Default group. If you want specific machines to start before other virtual machines, define new groups with one or more virtual machines in each group.

7. Click **ADD GROUP** to add a new group. Then, do the following:
   a. To change the name of a group, click the Pencil icon next to the group.
   b. To delete a group, click the delete icon on the right side. You cannot delete the Default group nor a group that contains a virtual machine.
   c. Drag virtual machines to move them from one group to another.
   d. Drag groups to change the order the groups are started, or, optionally, in **Boot Delay**, specify a time delay between starting up the virtual machines in the group and starting up the virtual machines in the next group.

   *For Example:* Assume three groups, Default, Server, and Client, defined in this order. The boot
delay defined for the Default group is 10, for the Server group is 100, and for the Client group 0. The virtual machines in the Default group are started together and after 10 seconds the virtual machines in the Server group are started. After 100 seconds the virtual machines in the Client group are started.

e. Click **OK** to save the boot order.

Click **NEXT**.

The REPLICATION step is displayed.

8. Specify the recovery site and default values to use for the replication to this site.

   - **Recovery Site**: The site to which you want to recover the virtual machines. After specifying the recovery site, other fields are displayed including the host and datastore to use for replication.
9. **ZORG:** If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, select the name used by the cloud service provider (CSP) to identify you as a Zerto Organization (ZORG). For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, see Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

10. **Host:** The default cluster, resource pool or host in the recovery site that handles the replicated data. If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, only a resource pool can be specified and the resource pool must also have been specified as a resource in Zerto Cloud Manager.

    **Note:** If Zerto Cloud Manager is used, vSphere Standard edition cannot be used.

For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for any virtual machines specified in the VPG.

All resource pool checks are made at the level of the VPG and do not take into account multiple VPGs using the same resource pool. If the resource pool CPU resources are specified as unlimited, the actual limit is inherited from the parent but if this inherited value is too small, failover, move, and failover test operations can fail, even without a warning alert being issued by Zerto Virtual Manager.

    **Note:** If a resource pool is specified and DRS is disabled for the site later on, all the resource pools are removed by VMware and recovery will be to any one of the hosts in the recovery site with a VRA installed on it.

**Datastore:** The default datastore to use for recovered virtual machine files and for their data volumes. Every datastore for the selected recovery host is included in the drop-down list. If a cluster or resource pool is selected for the host, only datastores that are accessible by every host in the cluster or resource pool are displayed.

11. In the **SLA** area, you define the Service Level Agreement for which this VPG is associated.

    - When **Zerto Cloud Manager** is used, select the **Service Profile** to use.
The Service Profile determines the VPG SLA settings for the group. This applies predefined settings for the Journal History, Target RPO Alert and the Test Reminder. These settings apply to every virtual machine in the group.

- When a Custom service profile is available, the VPGSLA settings are editable, and the Advanced button becomes available. When you change these settings, they apply to every virtual machine in the group.

12. Click ADVANCED. The Advanced Journal Settings dialog is displayed.

13. Set the following fields:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal History</strong></td>
<td>Number of hours from 1 to 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.</td>
<td>Number of days from 1 to 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Journal Storage</strong> (Hyper-V), or Default Journal Datastore** (vSphere)</td>
<td>Select the storage/datastore accessible to the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The storage/datastore used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG.</td>
<td>When you select a specific journal storage/datastore, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this storage/datastore, regardless of where the recovery storage/datastore is for each virtual machine. All protected virtual machines are recovered to the hosts that can access the specified journal storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal Size Hard Limit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount.</td>
<td>• <strong>Unlimited</strong>: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The journal is always <strong>thin-provisioned</strong>.</td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are <em>not</em> displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note</strong>: The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently both to the Journal History and also to the Scratch Journal Volume.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>For Example</em>: If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal Size Warning Threshold</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The size of the journal that triggers a warning that the journal is nearing its hard limit.</td>
<td>• <strong>Unlimited</strong>: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are <em>not</em> displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Size</strong> (GB): The maximum journal size in GB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The <strong>minimum</strong> journal size, set by Zerto, is 8GB for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and 10GB for Microsoft Azure environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Percentage</strong>: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM's volume size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Size</strong>* (GB): The size in GB that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Percentage</strong>*: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*The values of Size and Percentage must be <strong>less</strong> than the configured Journal Size Hard Limit so that the warning will be generated when needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14. Click **OK**.

   • **Target RPO Alert**: The maximum desired time between each automatic checkpoint write to the journal before an alert is issued.

   • **Test Reminder**: The amount of time in months recommended between each test, where you test the integrity of the VPG. A warning is issued if a test is not performed within this time frame.

15. Click **OK**.

16. **Enable WAN Traffic Compression**: Whether or not data is compressed before being transferred to the recovery site. Compressing the data is more efficient, but results in a small performance degradation.

   **Note**: WAN Traffic Compression is enabled by default when replicating to vCD.

   • Enable WAN traffic compression if network considerations are more critical than CPU usage considerations.

   • When WAN compression is enabled, the compressed data is written in compressed format to the recovery site journal. Even if WAN compression is selected, Zerto decreases the level of compression if it takes too many resources. The VRA automatically adjusts the compression level according to CPU usage, including totally disabling it if needed. Zerto recommends enabling WAN compression.

   • Zerto can also work with third-party WAN optimization and acceleration technologies, such as those supplied by Riverbed Technologies and Silver Peak.

   • When third-party WAN optimization is implemented, Zerto recommends disabling VPG WAN compression.

17. To change the replication settings per virtual machine, click **VM SETTINGS**.

The Advanced VM Replication Settings dialog is displayed.

In this dialog, you can edit the values of one or more of the virtual machines in the VPG.

18. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.
19. To edit information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Edit VM dialog is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovery Host</strong> (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Hyper-V) The cluster or host that will host the recovered virtual machine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vSphere) The cluster, resource pool, or host that will host the recovered virtual machine.</td>
<td>When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for all the virtual machines specified in the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, only a resource pool can be specified and the resource pool must also have been defined in Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
<td>If a resource pool is specified and DRS is disabled for the site later on, all the resource pools are removed by VMware and recovery is to any one of the hosts in the recovery site with a VRA installed on it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, see <a href="#">Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide</a>.</td>
<td>All resource pool checks are made at the level of the VPG and do not take into account multiple VPGs using the same resource pool. If the resource pool CPU resources are defined as unlimited, the actual limit is inherited from the parent but if this inherited value is too small, failover, move, and failover test operations can fail, even without a warning alert being issued by Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for all the virtual machines specified in the VPG.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>VM Recovery Datastore (vSphere) (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</strong></td>
<td>If a cluster or resource pool is selected for the host, only datastores that are accessible by every ESX/ESXi host in the cluster or resource pool are displayed. This is also the datastore where RDM backing files for recovery volumes are located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The datastore where the VMware metadata files for the virtual machine are stored, such as the VMX file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovery Storage (Hyper-V) (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</strong></td>
<td>If a cluster is selected for the host, only storage that are accessible by every host in the cluster are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The location where the metadata files for the virtual machine are stored, such as the VHDX file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal Size Hard Limit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount.  
  • The journal is always thin-provisioned.  
  • The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently both to the Journal History and also to the Scratch Journal Volume.  
  *For Example:* If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit. |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| **Unlimited:** The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.  
  If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are not displayed. |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| **Size (GB):** The maximum journal size in GB.  
  • The minimum journal size, set by Zerto, is 8GB for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and 10GB for Microsoft Azure environments. |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| **Percentage:** The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.  
  • This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM's volume size. |                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal Size Warning Threshold</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The size of the journal that triggers a warning that the journal is nearing its hard limit.</td>
<td><strong>Unlimited</strong>: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are <strong>not</strong> displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Size</strong> (GB): The size in GB that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Percentage</strong>: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*The values of Size and Percentage must be less than the configured Journal Size Hard Limit so that the warning will be generated when needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The storage/datastore used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG.

(VMware) To change the default, specify a host and then select one of the datastores accessible by this host to be used as the journal datastore. When you select specific journal datastore, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this datastore, regardless of where the recovery datastores are for each virtual machine. In this case, all the protected virtual machines must be recovered to hosts that can access the specified journal datastore.

(Hyper-V) To change the default, specify a host and then select the storage location accessible by this host to be used as the journal storage. When you select specific journal storage, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this storage, regardless of where the recovery storage is for each virtual machine. In this case, all the protected virtual machines must be recovered to hosts that can access the specified journal storage.

20. Click OK.

21. In the Advanced VM Replication Settings dialog, click OK.

22. Click NEXT.

The Storage step is displayed.

By default the storage used for the virtual machine definition is also used for the virtual machine data.

For each virtual machine in the VPG, Zerto displays its storage-related information.
Note: Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that step. Every step must be marked with a check mark before you can click **DONE** to create the VPG.

You can define **Thin provisioning** and **Temp Data** in this window, or you can alternatively define them when you separately select and **edit each VMs volume**.

**Important:**

Changing the VPG recovery volume from thin-provisioned to thick-provisioned or vice versa, results in volume initial synchronization.

See the following considerations regarding Thin provisioning:

- Unless the user **explicitly** requests Thin provisioning, provisioning type is the same type as provisioning in the **source VM**.

- If the **source** disk is Thin provisioned, the default for the **recovery** volume is also Thin provisioned.
• If the user uses preseed disks, Zerto maintains the provisioning types of the disks, so they can have other provisioning types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preseed</th>
<th>Provisioning in the Recovery VM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not selected</td>
<td>• User <strong>can</strong> select Thin provisioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected</td>
<td>• User <strong>cannot</strong> select Thin provisioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Provisioning is the same as defined in source VMs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23. To define whether the recovery volumes are thin-provisioned or not, select the **Thin** check box.

24. If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration, select the **Temp Data** check box to mark the recovery disk for this disk as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.

25. To edit storage information for one of the virtual machines' volume location, first select the virtual machine, then click **EDIT SELECTED**. The Edit Volumes window is displayed.

• For **Hyper-V** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

![Edit Volumes Window](image)

• For **vSphere** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

![Edit Volumes Window](image)

• For **vCD** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

![Edit Volumes Window](image)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Source</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• (Hyper-V) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</td>
<td>• <strong>Volume Source &gt; Storage</strong>: A new volume is used for replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• From the <strong>Storage</strong> drop-down list, specify the storage to use to create disks for the replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The storage specified for the replication must have at least the same amount of space as the protected volume and then an additional amount for the journal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For more details, see <em>Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines</em>, in the section <strong>Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Storage</td>
<td>• <strong>Volume Source &gt; Preseeded volume</strong>: Whether to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Preseeded volume</td>
<td>Zerto <strong>recommends</strong> using this option particularly for large disks so that the initial synchronization will be faster since a <strong>Delta Sync</strong> can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When <strong>not</strong> using a preseeded disk, the initial synchronization phase must copy the whole disk over the WAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>When using a preseeded virtual disk, you select the storage and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The storage where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery storage for the replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(vSphere)</em> Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</td>
<td><strong>Volume Source &gt; Datastore:</strong> A new volume is used for replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Datastore</td>
<td><img src="image-url" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• RDM</td>
<td><img src="image-url" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Preseeded volume</td>
<td><img src="image-url" alt="Image" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Specify the **Datastore** to use to create disks for the replicated data.
- If the **source disk is thin provisioned**, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned.
- The datastore specified for replication must have at least the same amount of space as the **protected volume** and an additional amount for the **journal**.
- The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.
- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified.

Then, define the following:

- **Datastore:** The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.

For more details, see *Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines*, in the section **Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V**.
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Source &gt; RDM:</strong> The VMware RDM (Raw Device Mapping) which will be used for the replication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By default, **RDM is recovered as thin-provisioned VMDK** in the datastore specified in the **VM Recovery Datastore/Storage** field in the Edit VM dialog, and not to RDM.

Only a raw disk with the **same size as the protected disk** can be selected from the list of available raw disks. Other raw disks with different sizes are not available for selection.

The RDM is always stored in the recovery datastore, used for the virtual machine.

The following **limitations** apply to protecting RDM disks:

- RDM disks with an even number of blocks can replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an even number of blocks and to VMDKs.
- RDM disks with an odd number of blocks can only replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an odd number of blocks and not to VMDKs.
- You cannot define an RDM disk to be protected to a cloud service provider via a Zerto Cloud Connector nor if the virtual machine uses a BusLogic SCSI controller, nor when protecting or recovering virtual machines in an environment running vCenter Server 5.x with ESX/ESXi version 4.1 hosts.
Consider the following, then proceed to define the Datastore and the Path:

- Zerto recommends using this option particularly for large disks so that the initial synchronization is faster since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.

- If a preseeded disk is not selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the whole disk over the WAN.

- If you use a preseeded virtual disk, you select the datastore and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk, which cannot be an IDE disk. Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

- The datastore where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery datastore for the replicated data.

- If the preseeded disk is greater than 1TB on NFS storage, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out. The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout> /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout

- If the protected disks are non-default geometry, configure the VPG using preseeded volumes.

- If the protected disk is an RDM disk, it can be used to preseed to a recovery VMDK disk. Zerto makes sure that the VMDK disk size is a correct match for the RDM disk.
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Then, define the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Datastore:</strong> The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Path:</strong> The full path to the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(vCD) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>vCD managed storage policy</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Presseeded volume</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- reside on the same datastore.

- If the preseeded disk is **greater than 1TB on NFS storage**, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out.

The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: `esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout> /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout`

- If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified. Virtual machine RDMs in a vCenter Server are replicated as VMDKs in a vCD environment.

---

(vCD) continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Storage Policy: Specify the Storage Policy for recovery from one of the options:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- Storage Policy per volume is supported only in vCD supported versions, and when the selected Orgvdc is not configured for fast provisioning.

- Zerto will select a datastore from the selected Storage Policy in which to place these files, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- The Storage Policies which appear in the drop-down list:

  - Include the **Use VM Default** option (default), which will apply the VM’s storage policy to this volume. This is also the Storage Policy default value.

  - Were defined in VMware vCloud Director and are configured in the Orgvdc.

  - Have at least one Datastore that was not excluded as a Recovery Volume in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Temp Data disk</td>
<td>Specify a mirror disk for replication that is marked as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thin provisioning (vSphere)</td>
<td>If the source disk is thin provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned. vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports thin-provisioned volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dynamic provisioning (Hyper-V)</td>
<td>If the source disk is dynamic provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also dynamic provisioned. vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports dynamic-provisioned volumes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26. Click **OK**.

27. Click **NEXT**.

The Recovery step is displayed. Recovery details include the networks to use for failover, move, and for testing failover, and whether scripts should run as part of the recovery operation.

28. Select the default recovery settings.
   - **Failover/Move Network**: The network to use during a failover or move operation in which the recovered virtual machines will run.
   - **Failover Test Network**: The network to use when testing the failover of virtual machines in the recovery site. Zerto recommends using a fenced-out network so as not to impact the production network at this site.
29. **Recovery Folder**: The folder to which the virtual machines are recovered.

   **Note**: If the recovery site is a cloud service provider site, it is not possible to select a recovery folder.

30. To specify a recovery folder for each virtual machine in the VPG, click **VM SETTINGS**.

   The Advanced VM Recovery Settings window is displayed.

   ![Advanced VM Recovery Settings](image)

   In this window, you can edit the values of one or more of the virtual machines in the VPG.

   - To edit information in **one field**, click the field and update the information.

31. To edit information for **several virtual machines** at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

   The Edit VM window is displayed.

   ![Edit VM](image)

   - **Recovery Folder**: The folder to which the virtual machine is recovered.

32. Click **SAVE**.

33. In the Advanced VM Recovery Settings window, click **OK**.

34. To run pre and post recovery scripts, enter the path to the script to run.
• **Pre-recovery Script:** The information about a script that should run at the beginning of the recovery process.

• **Post-recovery Script:** The information about a script that should run at the end of the recovery process.

For both types of scripts, enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Box</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Script path</strong></td>
<td>The full path to the script. The script must be located on the same machine as the Zerto Virtual Manager for the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Params</strong></td>
<td>The parameters to pass to the script. Separate parameters with a space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timeout</strong></td>
<td>The time-out, in seconds, for the script to run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the script runs before executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the script fails or the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated and the failover, move, or test failover is not performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the script runs after executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The default time-out value is specified in <strong>Site Settings &gt; Performance and Throttling</strong> tab.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Pre and post recovery scripts run in parallel. Therefore, ensure that the pre and post recovery scripts don’t use common resources.

35. Click **NEXT**.

The **NICs** step is displayed. In this step, you can specify the NIC details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover, a test failover, or migration.
36. To edit information in **one field**, click the field and update the information.

37. To edit information for **several virtual machines** at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

38. Otherwise, go to step **Click NEXT. on page 116**.

   The Edit VNIC dialog is displayed.

   ![Edit VNIC dialog](image)

   Specify the network details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover or move operation, in the **Failover/Move** column, and for the recovered virtual machines when testing replication, in the **Test** column.
39. In each column, specify the following:

- **Network**: The network to use for this virtual machine.

- **Create new MAC address?**: Whether the Media Access Control address (MAC address) used on the protected site should be replicated on the recovery site. The default is to use the same MAC address on both sites. Note that if you check this option, to create a new MAC address, and the current IP address is not specified, the protected virtual machine static IP address might not be used for the recovered virtual machine.

- **Change vNIC IP Configuration**: Whether or not to keep the default virtual NIC (vNIC) IP configuration. Configuration is possible only when the guest operating system is defined in the hypervisor manager and Integration Services or VMWare Tools are detected. The vNIC IP address is only changed after recovery for virtual machines with VMware Tools and Microsoft Integration Services running.

Refer to the Zerto Interoperability Matrix for the list of operating systems for which Zerto supports Re-IPing.

To change the vNIC IP configuration, select Yes in the Failover/Move or Test column. If you select to use a statically-assigned IP address, set the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. Optionally, change the preferred and alternate DNS server IP addresses and the DNS suffix. If you leave the DNS server and suffix entries empty, or select to use DHCP, the IP address and DNS server configurations are assigned automatically, to match the protected virtual machine. You can change the DNS suffix.

If the virtual machine has multiple NICs but is configured to only have a single default gateway, fill in a 0 for each octet in the Default gateway field for the NICs with no default gateway.

During a failover, move, or test failover, if the recovered virtual machine is assigned a different IP than the original IP, then after the virtual machine has started, it is automatically rebooted so that it starts up with the correct IP. If the same network is used for both production and test failovers, Zerto recommends changing the IP address for the virtual machines started for the test, so that there is no IP clash between the test machines and the production machines.

- **Copy to failover test**: Select this to copy the settings in the Failover/Move column to the Test column.

- **Copy to failover/move**: Select this to copy the settings in the Test column to the Failover/Move column.

40. Click OK.

41. Click NEXT.

The RETENTION POLICY step is displayed. Retention properties govern the VPG retention, including the repository where the retention sets are saved.
42. By default, Long Term Retention is OFF. To keep this value, go to step Click NEXT. on page 120.

43. Toggle Long Term Retention from OFF to ON.

The options on the screen become available.

Note: When a VPG is recovered to a Public Cloud, Long Term Retention is not available.

44. Select the Target Repository from the drop-down list. This is the name of the Repository where the Retention sets are written. The Connection Type and Path of that Repository appear after selecting the Target Repository.

45. Select the VMs to index from the File System Indexing drop-down list. For details on file system indexing, see Configuring File System Indexing on page 320.

46. Run all retention processes at: The time to start the Retention process. The time is shown in UTC and is according to the Zerto Virtual Manager clock in the production site. All Daily, Weekly, Monthly or Yearly retentions will run at this time.

47. Daily and Monthly retentions are toggled ON by default and the default Retention settings for Schedule, Type and Keep For appear. By default, all Retention processes are scheduled to run on the same day.

48. Toggle the Weekly or Yearly retentions from OFF to ON. The default Retention settings for Schedule, Type and Keep For appear. The Retention setting Keep For is the length of time to keep the Retention sets. For details of how this affects the number of Retention sets saved, see Storing Retention Sets on page 353.

Note: Daily or Weekly Retentions must be configured. Weekly or Monthly retentions must be configured to Full.
If you do not want to use the default settings, click the edit icon next to each Retention setting and configure the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Click the edit icon. The Daily Retention window is displayed. | • **Run at:** The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Daily Retention window.  
• **Keep For:** Define the number of days to keep the Daily Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention. |
| **Weekly**            |           |
| Click the edit icon. The Weekly Retention window is displayed. | • **Every:** Run a Retention process **every** selected day of the week.  
• **Type:** Select **Full** or **Incremental** from the drop-down menu.  
• **Full:** All the data is copied to the Repository.  
• **Incremental:** Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.  
• **Run at:** The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Weekly Retention window.  
• **Keep for:** Define the number of weeks to keep the Weekly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention. |
## Monthly

Click the edit icon. The Monthly Retention window is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monthly</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Run a Retention process on the <strong>first</strong>, <strong>second</strong>, <strong>third</strong>, <strong>fourth</strong> or <strong>last</strong> selected day of each month. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific date of the month up to the 28th and last. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the 12th of each month.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type:</strong> Select <strong>Full</strong> or <strong>Incremental</strong> from the drop-down menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Full:</strong> All the data is copied to the Repository.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Incremental:</strong> Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Monthly Retention window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of months to keep the Monthly Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Click the edit icon. The Yearly Retention window is displayed.

- Run a Retention process on the first or last selected day of the year. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each year.
- Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific day and month of the year. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process every 12th of July.
- Run at: The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Yearly Retention window.
- Keep for: Define the number of years to keep the Yearly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.

50. Retries: Select Automatic retry after failure to automatically rerun the Retention process, if the operation fails.

- If you select this option, you must also define Number of attempts, and the Wait time between retries.

51. Click NEXT.

The SUMMARY step is displayed. It shows the VPG configuration that you defined in previous tabs.

52. Click DONE. The VPG is created.

For details of what happens after saving the VPG, see What Happens After the VPG is Defined on page 56.

Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site VMware vCloud Director

You can protect virtual machines to a recovery site VMware vCloud Director (vCD). The procedure is the same whether you intend to protect one virtual machine or multiple virtual machines.

When creating a VPG from Hyper-V to a VMware vCD, all recovery operations bring up the recovered machines as vCD vApps.
Zerto uses SCSI for recovered virtual machine disks. Any Hyper-V virtual machines with IDE disks will be recovered with SCSI disks.

When protecting virtual machines from Hyper-V to vCD, the operating systems of the protected machines must be supported by vCD. Refer to VMware documentation for the list of supported operating systems.

The following conversions are done to a protected virtual machine when it is recovered in vCD:

- Virtual machines are recovered in vCenter Server with the highest hardware version supported by the vCenter Server host version under which the virtual machine is recovered.
- A Generation 1 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with BIOS with the highest supported hardware version.
- A Generation 2 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with UEFI. The host in vCenter must support hardware version 8 or higher. Also the following restrictions apply for Generation 2 virtual machines:
  - The secure boot option for the machine in Hyper-V must be disabled.
  - The boot disk must be less than 2TB if the recovery host version is lower than ESXi 5.5.
- All IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks. The boot disk is ported to a disk on a SCSI controller with location 0:0.
- Recovered virtual machines use the VMware Virtual E1000 network adapter.

> To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in vCD:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, select **Actions > Create VPG**. The General step of the Create VPG wizard is displayed.

2. Specify the name of the VPG and the priority of the VPG.
   - **VPG Name:** The VPG name must be unique. The name cannot be more than 80 characters.
• **Priority**: Determine the priority for transferring data from the protected site to the recovery site when there is limited bandwidth and more than one VPG is defined on the protected site.

• **High Priority**: When there are updates to virtual machines protected in VPGs with different priorities, updates from the VPG with the highest priority are passed over the WAN first.

• **Medium Priority**: Medium priority VPGs will only be able to use whatever bandwidth is left after the high priority VPGs have used it.

• **Low Priority**: Low priority VPGs will use whatever bandwidth is left after the medium priority VPGs have use it.

Updates to the protected virtual machines are always sent across the WAN before synchronization data, such as during a bitmap or delta sync.

During synchronization, data from the VPG with the highest priority is passed over the WAN before data from medium and low priority VPGs.

3. **Click NEXT**. The VMs step is displayed.

4. **Select the VMs that will be part of this VPG and click the arrow pointing right to include these VMs in the VPG.**
   - **When using the Search field, you can use the wildcards; * or ?**

Virtual machines that are not yet protected are displayed in the list. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.

5. **You can view protected virtual machines in the Advanced (One-to-Many) section, by clicking Select VMs.**

The Select VMs dialog is displayed.
Note: Virtual machines can be protected in a maximum of three VPGs. These VPGs cannot be recovered to the same site. Virtual machines protected in the maximum number of VPGs are not displayed in the Select VMs dialog.

In on-premise environments, protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

Note: A boot order for virtual machines recovered in a vCloud Director vApp is defined in the vCloud Director console.

6. Click **NEXT**.
   The **REPLICATION** step is displayed.

7. Choose the **Recovery vCD Site**, and select **vCD** from the drop-down list.
The REPLICATION step is re-displayed, displaying additional fields relevant for vCD.

Define as follows:

8. **ZORG**: If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, select the name used by the cloud service provider (CSP) to identify you as a Zerto Organization (ZORG). For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, see Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

9. Specify the **Recovery Org vDC** to use in the recovery site.

   **Note**: You cannot select a recovery site if any of the virtual machines you selected are already in VPGs that recover to that site.

   **Note**: At least one VRA needs to be installed on a host within a resource pool being used by a Recovery Org vDC.

10. In the **SLA** area, you define the Service Level Agreement for which this VPG is associated.

    - When Zerto Cloud Manager is used, select the **Service Profile** to use.

      The Service Profile determines the VPG SLA settings for the group. This applies predefined settings for the Journal History, Target RPO Alert and the Test Reminder. These settings apply to every virtual machine in the group.

    - When a **Custom** service profile is available, the VPGSLA settings are editable, and the **Advanced** button becomes available. When you change these settings, they apply to every virtual machine in the group.

11. Click **ADVANCED**. The Advanced Journal Settings dialog is displayed.
### Advanced Journal Settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal History</strong></td>
<td>Number of <strong>hours</strong> from 1 to 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Default Journal Storage</strong> (Hyper-V), or <strong>Default Journal Datastore</strong> (vSphere)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The storage/datastore used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG.</td>
<td>Select the storage/datastore accessible to the host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> This field is <strong>not</strong> relevant when replicating to a vCD recovery site.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Journal History**

- **Size (GB):** 150 GB
- **Size (GB):** 112.5 GB

**Cancel** **OK**
## Journal Size Hard Limit

The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount.

The journal is always **thin-provisioned**.

**Note:** The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently both to the Journal History and also to the Scratch Journal Volume.

*For Example:* If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit.

### Select...

- **Unlimited:** The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.

  If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are **not** displayed.

  - **Size (GB):** The maximum journal size in GB.
  
  - The **minimum** journal size, set by Zerto, is 8GB for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and 10GB for Microsoft Azure environments.
  
  
- **Percentage:** The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.

  - This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM's volume size.

## Journal Size Warning Threshold

The size of the journal that triggers a warning that the journal is nearing its hard limit.

### Select...

- **Unlimited:** The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.

  If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are **not** displayed.

  - **Size***(GB):*** The size in GB that will generate a warning.

  - **Percentage***(Percentage):*** The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that will generate a warning.

  *The values of **Size** and **Percentage** must be **less** than the configured **Journal Size Hard Limit** so that the warning will be generated when needed.

  In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full.
12. Click **OK**.

- **Target RPO Alert:** The maximum desired time between each automatic checkpoint write to the journal before an alert is issued.

- **Test Reminder:** The amount of time in months recommended between each test, where you test the integrity of the VPG. A warning is issued if a test is not performed within this time frame.

13. **Enable WAN Traffic Compression:** Whether or not data is compressed before being transferred to the recovery site. Compressing the data is more efficient, but results in a small performance degradation.

**Note:** WAN Traffic Compression is enabled by default when replicating to vCD.

- Enable WAN traffic compression if network considerations are more critical than CPU usage considerations.

- When WAN compression is enabled, the compressed data is written in compressed format to the recovery site journal.
  Even if WAN compression is selected, Zerto decreases the level of compression if it takes too many resources. The VRA automatically adjusts the compression level according to CPU usage, including totally disabling it if needed. Zerto recommends enabling WAN compression.

- Zerto can also work with third-party WAN optimization and acceleration technologies, such as those supplied by Riverbed Technologies and Silver Peak.

- When third-party WAN optimization is implemented, Zerto recommends disabling VPG WAN compression.

To change the replication settings per virtual machine, click **VM SETTINGS**.

The Advanced VM Replication Settings window is displayed.

In this window, you can edit the values of one or more of the virtual machines in the VPG.
14. To edit information for a single VM, click the field Storage Policy, or Journal Storage Policy, and update the information.

- **Storage Policy**: The Storage Policy in which the VM configuration files will reside. For considerations, see step When selecting Storage Policy, consider the following: on page 128.

- **Journal Storage Policy**: The Storage Policy in which the VM Journal files will reside. For considerations, see step When selecting Storage Policy, consider the following: on page 128.

15. To edit information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click EDIT SELECTED.

The Edit VM window is displayed.

16. When selecting Storage Policy, consider the following:

- Zerto will select a datastore from the selected Storage Policy in which to place these files, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- Zerto will try to determine a default Storage Policy according to:
  - A Storage Policy with the same name as the protected Storage Policy.
  - The default Orgvdc Storage Policy.

If Zerto did not manage to determine a default Storage Policy, this field appears empty.

- When you click to edit, a list of Storage Policies appear. These Storage Policies:
  - Were defined in VMware vCloud Director and are configured in the Orgvdc.
  - Have at least one Datastore that was not excluded as a Recovery Volume in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

  - To review site-specific configurations, see Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

17. When selecting Journal Storage Policy, consider the following:

- Zerto will select a datastore from the selected Storage Policy in which to place the Journal files, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- The default Journal Storage Policy is the same as the default VM Storage Policy.

- If Zerto did not manage to determine a default Journal Storage Policy, this field appears empty.

- When you click to edit, the option Auto Select appears, and a list of Storage Policies.

  - The list of Storage Policies associated with the Journal:
- Were defined in VMware vCloud Director and are configured in the Orgvdc.
- Have at least one Datastore that was not excluded as a **Journal** in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- **Auto Select**: Selecting this means that the journal can be placed in any datastore visible to the host that Zerto selected for recovery, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

18. Define the remaining fields as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovery Host</strong> (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(Hyper-V)</em> The cluster or host that will host the recovered virtual machine.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>(vSphere)</em> The cluster, resource pool, or host that will host the recovered virtual machine.</td>
<td>When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for all the virtual machines specified in the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, only a resource pool can be specified and the resource pool must also have been defined in Zerto Cloud Manager.</td>
<td>If a resource pool is specified and DRS is disabled for the site later on, all the resource pools are removed by VMware and recovery is to any one of the hosts in the recovery site with a VRA installed on it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, see <a href="#">Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide</a>.</td>
<td>All resource pool checks are made at the level of the VPG and do not take into account multiple VPGs using the same resource pool. If the resource pool CPU resources are defined as unlimited, the actual limit is inherited from the parent but if this inherited value is too small, failover, move, and failover test operations can fail, even without a warning alert being issued by Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for all the virtual machines specified in the VPG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VM Recovery Datastore (vSphere) (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</strong></td>
<td>If a cluster or resource pool is selected for the host, only datastores that are accessible by every ESX/ESXi host in the cluster or resource pool are displayed. This is also the datastore where RDM backing files for recovery volumes are located.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The datastore where the VMware metadata files for the virtual machine are stored, such as the VMX file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovery Storage (Hyper-V) (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</strong></td>
<td>If a cluster is selected for the host, only storage that are accessible by every host in the cluster are displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The location where the metadata files for the virtual machine are stored, such as the VHDX file.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal Size Hard Limit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount.</td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The journal is always <strong>thin-provisioned.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently <strong>both</strong> to the Journal History and also to the Scratch Journal Volume.</td>
<td><strong>Size (GB):</strong> The maximum journal size in GB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For Example: If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit.</td>
<td>• The <strong>minimum</strong> journal size, set by Zerto, is 8GB for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and 10GB for Microsoft Azure environments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Percentage:</strong> The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM's volume size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal Size Warning Threshold</td>
<td><strong>Unlimited</strong>: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are not displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Size</strong> (GB): The size in GB that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Percentage</strong>: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that will generate a warning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>*The values of Size and Percentage must be less than the configured Journal Size Hard Limit so that the warning will be generated when needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Journal Storage (Hyper-V), or Journal Datastore (vSphere) (not relevant when replicating to vCD)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The storage/datastore used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**(vSphere)** To change the default, specify a host and then select one of the datastores accessible by this host to be used as the journal datastore. When you select specific journal datastore, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this datastore, regardless of where the recovery datastores are for each virtual machine. In this case, all the protected virtual machines must be recovered to hosts that can access the specified journal datastore.

**(Hyper-V)** To change the default, specify a host and then select the storage location accessible by this host to be used as the journal storage. When you select specific journal storage, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this storage, regardless of where the recovery storage is for each virtual machine. In this case, all the protected virtual machines must be recovered to hosts that can access the specified journal storage.

---

19. In the Advanced VM Replication Settings window, click **OK**.

20. Click **NEXT**.

The Storage step is displayed.

By default the storage used for the virtual machine definition is also used for the virtual machine data.

For each virtual machine in the VPG, Zerto displays its storage-related information.
Note: Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that step. Every step must be marked with a check mark before you can click DONE to create the VPG.

You can define Thin provisioning and Temp Data in this window, or you can alternatively define them when you separately select and edit each VMs volume.

Important:
Changing the VPG recovery volume from thin-provisioned to thick-provisioned or vice versa, results in volume initial synchronization.

See the following considerations regarding Thin provisioning:

- Unless the user explicitly requests Thin provisioning, provisioning type is the same type as provisioning in the source VM.
- If the source disk is Thin provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also Thin provisioned.
• If the user uses preseed disks, Zerto maintains the provisioning types of the disks, so they can have other provisioning types.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preseed</th>
<th>Provisioning in the Recovery VM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not selected</td>
<td>• User <strong>can</strong> select Thin provisioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selected</td>
<td>• User <strong>cannot</strong> select Thin provisioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Provisioning is the <strong>same</strong> as defined in <strong>source VMs</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. To define whether the recovery volumes are thin-provisioned or not, select the **Thin** check box.

22. If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration, select the **Temp Data** check box to mark the recovery disk for this disk as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.

23. To edit storage information for one of the virtual machines' volume location, first select the virtual machine, then click **EDIT SELECTED**. The Edit Volumes window is displayed.

• For **Hyper-V** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

• For **vSphere** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

• For **vCD** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.
## Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Volume Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <em>(Hyper-V)</em> Select a <strong>Volume Source</strong> for recovery from one of the drop-down options:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Storage</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Preseeded volume</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Volume Source &gt; Storage:</strong> A new volume is used for replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• From the <strong>Storage</strong> drop-down list, specify the storage to use to create disks for the replicated data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The storage specified for the replication must have at least the same amount of space as the protected volume and then an additional amount for the journal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For more details, see <em>Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines</em>, in the section <strong>Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• <strong>Volume Source &gt; Preseeded volume:</strong> Whether to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto <strong>recommends</strong> using this option particularly for large disks so that the initial synchronization will be faster since a <strong>Delta Sync</strong> can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When <strong>not</strong> using a preseeded disk, the initial synchronization phase must copy the whole disk over the WAN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When using a preseeded virtual disk, you select the storage and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The storage where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery storage for the replicated data.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting & Description | Select...
--- | ---
(vSphere) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:
- **Datastore**
- **RDM**
- **Preseeded volume**

**Volume Source > Datastore:** A new volume is used for replicated data.

- Specify the **Datastore** to use to create disks for the replicated data.
- If the **source disk is thin provisioned**, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned.
- The datastore specified for replication must have at least the same amount of space as the **protected volume** and an additional amount for the **journal**.
- The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.
- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified.

Then, define the following:

- **Datastore:** The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.

For more details, see *Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines*, in the section **Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V**.
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Volume Source &gt; RDM:</strong> The VMware RDM (Raw Device Mapping) which will be used for the replication.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

By default, **RDM is recovered as thin-provisioned VMDK** in the datastore specified in the **VM Recovery Datastore/Storage** field in the Edit VM dialog, and not to RDM.

Only a raw disk with the **same size as the protected disk** can be selected from the list of available raw disks. Other raw disks with different sizes are not available for selection.

The RDM is always stored in the recovery datastore, used for the virtual machine.

The following **limitations** apply to protecting RDM disks:

- RDM disks with an even number of blocks can replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an even number of blocks and to VMDKs.
- RDM disks with an odd number of blocks can only replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an odd number of blocks and not to VMDKs.
- You cannot define an RDM disk to be protected to a cloud service provider via a Zerto Cloud Connector nor if the virtual machine uses a BusLogic SCSI controller, nor when protecting or recovering virtual machines in an environment running vCenter Server 5.x with ESX/ESXi version 4.1 hosts.
**Setting & Description**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(vSphere) Volume Source</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Volume Source > Preseeded volume:** Select this when you want to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.

Consider the following, then proceed to define the Datastore and the Path:

- Zerto **recommends** using this option particularly for **large disks** so that the initial synchronization is **faster** since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.

- If a preseeded disk is **not** selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the **whole disk** over the WAN.

- If you use a preseeded virtual disk, you select the datastore and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk, which cannot be an IDE disk. Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

- The datastore where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery datastore for the replicated data.

- If the preseeded disk is **greater than 1TB on NFS storage**, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out. The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: `esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout> /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout`

- If the protected disks are **non-default geometry**, configure the VPG using preseeded volumes.

- If the protected disk is an **RDM disk**, it can be used to preseed to a recovery VMDK disk. Zerto makes sure that the VMDK disk size is a correct match for the RDM disk.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Then, define the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Datastore</strong>: The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- <strong>Path</strong>: The full path to the preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(vCD) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:

- **vCD managed storage policy**
- **Preseeded volume**

### Volume Source > vCD managed storage policy:
Zerto will select a datastore, from the list of available datastores, in the selected Storage Policy in which to place the Volume, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- If there are several valid datastores, the datastore with the most available space is selected.
- Zerto recalculate the datastore available space for each volume sequentially, taking into consideration previously allocated volumes.

### Volume Source > Preseeded volume:
Select this when you want to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.

- Zerto recommends using this option particularly for **large disks** so that the initial synchronization is faster since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.
- If a preseeded disk is **not** selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the **whole disk** over the WAN.
- The preseeded volume is a virtual disk (the VMDK flat file and descriptor) in the recovery site that has been prepared with a copy of the protected data.
- Browse to the preseed folder configured for the customer and the disk name, of the preseeded disk.

In order to use a preseeded VMDK, do the following:

- Create a folder in vCD to use for the preseeded disks in the datastore you want to use for the customer.
- Specify this datastore as a provider datastore for preseeded disks in the Configure Provider vDCs window, from the Advanced Settings window, as described in Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.
- In the Zerto Cloud Manager specify the Preseed Folder Name for the ZORG, in the Manage ZORG tab.
- Zerto searches for the preseeded folder in the available datastores in the Org vDCs specified in the vCD Cloud Resources for the ZORG in the Zerto Cloud Manager and takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

If the virtual machine has more than one preseeded disk, these disks must...
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>reside on the same datastore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- If the preseeded disk is **greater than 1TB on NFS storage**, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out.

The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: ```esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout> /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout```

- If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified. Virtual machine RDMs in a vCenter Server are replicated as VMDKs in a vCD environment.

### (vCD) continued

**Storage Policy**: Specify the Storage Policy for recovery from one of the options:

- Storage Policy per volume is supported only in vCD supported versions, and when the selected Orgvdc is not configured for fast provisioning.

- Zerto will select a datastore from the selected Storage Policy in which to place these files, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.

- The Storage Policies which appear in the drop-down list:
  - Include the **Use VM Default** option (default), which will apply the VM’s storage policy to this volume. This is also the Storage Policy default value.
  - Were defined in VMware vCloud Director and are configured in the Orgvdc.
  - Have at least one Datastore that was not excluded as a Recovery Volume in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Temp Data disk</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration.</td>
<td>Specify a mirror disk for replication that is marked as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thin provisioning</strong> (vSphere)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the recovery volumes are thin-provisioned or not.</td>
<td>If the source disk is thin provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned. vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports thin-provisioned volumes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dynamic provisioning</strong> (Hyper-V)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the recovery volumes are dynamic-provisioned or not.</td>
<td>If the source disk is dynamic provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also dynamic provisioned. vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports dynamic-provisioned volumes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24. Click **OK**.

25. Click **NEXT**.

The RECOVERY step is displayed. Recovery details include the scripts that should be run either at the start or end of a recovery operation.

26. Select the default recovery settings.

- **vCD Guest Customization**: When selected, VMware Guest OS Customization is enabled for the virtual machine in vCloud Director. Enabling guest customization means that the computer name and network settings configured for this virtual machine are applied to its Guest OS when the virtual machine is powered on. vCD Guest Customization must be selected to enable re-IPing the recovered virtual machines.

- **vApp Network Mapping**: The networks to use for failover and move operations, for failover
test operations, and for test failover operations after a failover or move when reverse protection is configured. The list of current Org Networks is displayed and you can specify what network to use in each of the situations. <Isolated> means that the network is an internal only vApp network.

27. To run pre and post recovery scripts, enter the path to the script to run.

- **Pre-recovery Script**: The information about a script that should run at the beginning of the recovery process.
- **Post-recovery Script**: The information about a script that should run at the end of the recovery process.

For both types of scripts, enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Box</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Script path</strong></td>
<td>The full path to the script. The script must be located on the same machine as the Zerto Virtual Manager for the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Params</strong></td>
<td>The parameters to pass to the script. Separate parameters with a space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timeout</strong></td>
<td>The time-out, in seconds, for the script to run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>If the script runs before executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the script fails or the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated and the failover, move, or test failover is not performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>If the script runs after executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>The default time-out value is specified in Site Settings &gt; Performance and Throttling tab.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**: Pre and post recovery scripts run in parallel. Therefore, ensure that the pre and post recovery scripts don’t use common resources.

28. Click **NEXT**.

The NICs step is displayed. In this step, you can specify the NIC details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover, a test failover, or migration.
29. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.

30. To edit information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click EDIT SELECTED.

31. Otherwise, go to step Click NEXT. on page 145.

The Edit VNIC dialog is displayed.

32. Specify the network details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover or move operation, in the Failover/Move column, and for the recovered virtual machines when testing replication, in the Test column.

In each column, specify the following:

- **New MAC Address**: Whether the Media Access Control address (MAC address) used on the protected site should be replicated on the recovery site. The default is to use the same MAC address on both sites.

- **vNIC IP Mode**: Which IP mode to use. Specify the IP address if you choose static IP pool.

See the Zerto Interoperability Matrix for the list of operating systems for which Zerto supports Re-IPing.
During a failover, move, or test failover, if the recovered virtual machine is assigned a different IP than the original IP, then after the virtual machine has started, it is automatically rebooted so that it starts up with the correct IP. If the same network is used for both production and test failovers, Zerto recommends changing the IP address for the virtual machines started for the test, so that there is no IP clash between the test machines and the production machines.

- **Copy to failover test**: Select this to copy the settings in the Failover/Move column to the Test column.
- **Copy to failover/move**: Select this to copy the settings in the Test column to the Failover/Move column.

Click OK.

33. Click **NEXT**.

The RETENTION POLICY step is displayed. Retention properties govern the VPG retention, including the repository where the retention sets are saved.

34. By default, Long Term Retention is **OFF**. To keep this value, go to step Click **NEXT**. on page 88

35. Toggle **Long Term Retention** from **OFF** to **ON**.

The options on the screen become available.

**Note:** When a VPG is recovered to a Public Cloud, Long Term Retention is not available.

36. Select the **Target Repository** from the drop-down list. This is the name of the Repository where the Retention sets are written. The **Connection Type** and **Path** of that Repository appear after selecting the **Target Repository**.

37. Select the VMs to index from the **File System Indexing** drop-down list. For details on file system indexing, see Configuring File System Indexing on page 320.
38. **Run all retention processes at:** The time to start the Retention process. The time is shown in UTC and is according to the Zerto Virtual Manager clock in the production site. All *Daily*, *Weekly*, *Monthly* or *Yearly* retentions will run at this time.

39. **Daily** and **Monthly** retentions are toggled ON by default and the default Retention settings for **Schedule**, **Type** and **Keep For** appear. By default, all Retention processes are scheduled to run on the same day.

40. Toggle the **Weekly** or **Yearly** retentions from OFF to ON. The default Retention settings for **Schedule**, **Type** and **Keep For** appear. The Retention setting **Keep For** is the length of time to keep the Retention sets. For details of how this affects the number of Retention sets saved, see Storing Retention Sets on page 353.

**Note:** Daily or Weekly Retentions must be configured. Weekly or Monthly retentions must be configured to **Full**.

41. If you do not want to use the default settings, click the edit icon next to each Retention setting and configure the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Daily</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click the edit icon. The Daily Retention window is displayed.</td>
<td>• <strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Daily Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Keep For:</strong> Define the number of days to keep the Daily Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Weekly

Click the edit icon. The Weekly Retention window is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Every:</strong> Run a Retention process every selected day of the week.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type:</strong> Select <strong>Full</strong> or <strong>Incremental</strong> from the drop-down menu.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Full:</strong> All the data is copied to the Repository.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Incremental:</strong> Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Weekly Retention window.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of weeks to keep the Weekly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting &amp; Description</td>
<td>Select...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monthly</strong></td>
<td>• Run a Retention process on the first, second, third, fourth or last selected day of each month. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific date of the month up to the 28th and last. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the 12th of each month.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type:</strong> Select Full or Incremental from the drop-down menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Full:</strong> All the data is copied to the Repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Incremental:</strong> Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Monthly Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of months to keep the Monthly Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Retries: Select **Automatic retry after failure** to automatically rerun the Retention process, if the operation fails.

- If you select this option, you must also define **Number of attempts**, and the **Wait time between retries**.

43. Click **NEXT**.

The SUMMARY step is displayed. It shows the VPG configuration that you defined in previous steps.

44. Click **DONE**. The VPG is created.

For details of what happens after saving the VPG, see What Happens After the VPG is Defined on page 56, on page 46.

The virtual machines in the VPG are protected as a vCD vApp in the recovery site.

**Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site AWS**

You can protect a Hyper-V site to Amazon Web Services (AWS).
When creating a VPG from Hyper-V to AWS the data is stored in S3 and all replicated data from protected virtual machines to AWS is encrypted in S3. All recovery operations bring up the recovered machines in EC2 in AWS.

Before replicating from a protected Hyper-V site to a recovery AWS site, review the following guidelines for AWS environments, and considerations when protecting to AWS: [Zerto - Prerequisites & Requirements for Amazon Web Services (AWS)]

See also: Import Methods for AWS on page 150

After reviewing the guidelines and considerations, proceed with Creating a Virtual Protection Group to Recover in AWS on page 154.

Import Methods for AWS

During recovery operations, Zerto uses a combination of the following APIs and methods to convert the Amazon S3 objects into recovery disks in EC2 as EBS disks:

- **AWS Import**:
  - **Import-instance**: for the boot volume
  - **Import-volume**: for data volumes

  For more information see the relevant AWS documentation:
  - API_ImportInstance
  - API_ImportVolume

  **Note**: The ImportImage API is not used by Zerto.

- **Zerto Import - zimport**: an import method that does not have the same limitations as the AWS APIs. It creates an AWS EC2 instance per protected VM volume, called zimporter, to convert the S3 objects and write them to a zimport local disk. When all the data has been imported and its disk have been attached to the recovered instance, the zimport instance is terminated.

  **Notes**:
  - zimporter is based on an official AWS Linux AMI (Amazon Machine Image), into which a script is injected to perform the import.
  - To ensure that the zimport instance cannot be accessed from the outside world, a security group is created. During a recovery operation the zimport instance is connected to this security group. All inbound traffic is blocked and only outbound traffic to access the script online is allowed. The security group is deleted at the end of the recovery operation.
  - Zerto can set default encryption on the S3 bucket so that all objects are encrypted when they are stored in the bucket. To enable S3 encryption please contact support.
  - The default zimporter instance type is c5.4xlarge and the AWS EC2 default maximum instance quota is 10. If during the creation of zimport instances the maximum EC2 instance...
quota is reached, the creation of the next and subsequent zImport instances will be queued, increasing the RTO. If during recovery operations, the ZVM identifies a VPG with the potential to exceed the EC2 instance quota, the user will receive an alert with advice to contact AWS support to increase the service limits in order to improve RTO.

- Each zimporter VM is responsible for the import process of a single volume. Therefore, it is recommended to contact AWS and increase the maximum instance quota of the c5.4xlarge instance type to the maximum number of volumes you are planning to failover to AWS at once.
- GPT formatted disks are supported for data volumes only, when using either of the zImport methods.
- When using either of the zImport methods, each volume is created with EBS disk of type io1 with maximum 1000 EBS Provision IOPS allocated. EBS disk type can be changed post recovery without downtime, see the relevant for more information see the relevant AWS documentation. The minimum disk size for io1 is 4GB.
- The default Max EBS Provision IOPS quota in a region across all io1 disks is 40000 EBS Provision IOPS, meaning that with 1000 EBS Provision IOPS per volume, the maximum possible number of volumes is 40. If the Max EBS Provision IOPS quota is reached, the failover process will switch to using slower gp2 disks. An event will notify the user of this, and recommend that the user contact AWS support to increase the Max EBS Provision IOPS quota.

- Depending on the desired RTO during recovery operations, or when testing failover, the user can select an import method per VPG or per virtual machine from the following options:
  - Zerto Import for Data Volumes on page 151
  - Zerto Import for All Volumes on page 152
  - AWS Import on page 153

**Zerto Import for Data Volumes**

This method is the **default setting** and has a faster RTO than AWS Import. This method uses a **combination** of the **AWS Import-instance** API for the boot volume, and the **zImport** method for data volumes. To use this method when creating or editing a VPG, an **Access Key ID** and a **Secret Access Key** is required. Both fields can be set in the **Site Settings** window, see **Site Settings on page 1**.

- **Each machine that you intend to protect** must have at least **250MB free space**. This is because AWS adds files to the recovered machines during failover, move, test failover, and clone operations.
- **Protected boot volumes** are recovered in EC2 as EBS disks with magnetic disk type. Virtual machines with disks that are less than 1GB are recovered with disks of 1GB. Temporary disks may be created based on the selected instance size.
- Temporary disks may be created based on the selected instance size.
• The **maximum** protected **data volume** size is **16TB**, while the **boot volume** can be up to **1TB**.

• The AWS ImportInstance API only supports single volume VMs. The boot volume of the protected virtual machine should not be attached to any other volume to successfully boot. For more information, see [http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/API_ImportInstance.html](http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/API_ImportInstance.html)

### Zerto Import for All Volumes

This method uses the `zimport` method for all volumes and ensures the fastest RTO.

This method creates an AWS EC2 instance per protected VM volume, called `zimporter`, to convert the S3 objects and write them to a `zimport` local disk. When all the data has been imported and its disk have been attached to the recovered instance, the `zimport` instance is terminated.

• Temporary disks may be created based on the selected instance size.

• The **maximum** protected **data volume** size is **16TB**, while the **boot volume** can be up to **2047GiB**.

**Note:** Some VMs use the MBR partitioning scheme, which only supports up to 2047 GiB boot volumes. If your instance does not boot with a boot volume that is 2TB or larger, the VM you are using may be limited to a 2047 GiB boot volume size. Non-boot volumes do not have this limitation. See AWS Documentation for more information: [http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/EBSVolumeTypes.html](http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/EBSVolumeTypes.html)

When recovering to AWS instance types listed below using Zerto Import for All Volumes import method, **Windows 2012, Windows 2012R2, Windows 2016** or **Windows 2019** are supported.

- C3
- C4
- D2
- I2
- R3
- M4 (excluding M4.16xlarge)

The following drivers are installed on the recovered virtual machine:

- AWS PV Drivers
- Windows ENA (Elastic Network Adapter) Drivers

When recovering to **C5/M5** instances using Zerto Import for All Volumes import method, **Windows 2008R2, Windows 2012, Windows 2012R2, Windows 2016** and **Windows 2019** are supported.

- For **Windows 2012R2, Windows 2016** and **Windows 2019**, the following drivers are downloaded on the **protected** virtual machine. ZertoTools installs these drivers on the **recovered** virtual machine:
  - Windows ENA (Elastic Network Adapter) Drivers
  - NVMe driver

- For **Windows 2008R2** and **Windows 2012**, Windows ENA (Elastic Network Adapter) drivers and NVMe driver are downloaded on the **protected** virtual machine. ZertoTools installs these drivers on the **protected** virtual machine and executes the below command:
This command removes computer-specific information for the drivers. When recovering to C5/M5, the instance will boot on AWS and install all the drivers again.

**Note:** If these drivers are installed on a VM running **Windows 2012**, **Windows 2012R2**, **Windows 2016** or **Windows 2019**, the other AWS import methods will fail. To overcome this, you must uninstall the drivers before using the other AWS import methods.

**Note:** C5/M5 instance types are supported with the Zerto Import for All Volumes import method only.

**Important:**
When using this import method for Windows machines, **ZertoTools for Windows** needs to be run on the protected Windows virtual machine in VMware **before VPG creation**. For more information, see ZertoTools for Windows on page 1.

**AWS Import**

This method uses a combination of the **AWS import-instance** and **import-volume** APIs for the boot and data volumes respectively. This was the only method supported until version 5.5. To use this method when creating or editing a VPG, an **Access Key ID** and a **Secret Access Key** is required. Both fields can be set in the **Site Settings** window, see Site Settings on page 1.

- **Each machine that you intend to protect** must have at least **250MB free space**. This is because AWS adds files to the recovered machines during failover, move, test failover, and clone operations.

- **Protected boot volumes** are recovered in EC2 as EBS disks with General Purpose SSD (gp2). Virtual machines with disks that are less than 1GB are recovered with disks of 1GB. Additional volumes might be created in the recovered instance, dependent on the instance type used for the recovery. These volumes can be ignored.

- **Protected volumes** are recovered in EC2 as EBS disks with General Purpose SSD (gp2). Virtual machines with disks that are less than 1GB are recovered with disks of 1GB. Additional volumes might be created in the recovered instance, dependent on the instance type used for the recovery. These volumes can be ignored. Temporary disks may be created based on the selected instance size.

- The **maximum protected data volume** and **boot disk** size is **1TB**.

- The AWS ImportInstance API only supports single volume VMs. The boot volume of the protected virtual machine should not be attached to any other volume to successfully boot. For more information, see [http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/API.ImportInstance.html](http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/API.ImportInstance.html)
Creating a Virtual Protection Group to Recover in AWS

Use the following procedure to create a VPG in a protected Hyper-V site to recover to an AWS site.

To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in AWS:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, select Actions > Create VPG.
   The General step of the Create VPG wizard is displayed.

2. Specify the name of the VPG and the priority of the VPG.
   - **VPG Name**: The VPG name must be unique. The name cannot be more than 80 characters.
   - **Priority**: Determine the priority for transferring data from the protected site to the recovery site when there is limited bandwidth and more than one VPG is defined on the protected site.
     - **High Priority**: When there are updates to virtual machines protected in VPGs with different priorities, updates from the VPG with the highest priority are passed over the WAN first.
     - **Medium Priority**: Medium priority VPGs will only be able to use whatever bandwidth is left after the high priority VPGs have used it.
     - **Low Priority**: Low priority VPGs will use whatever bandwidth is left after the medium priority VPGs have use it.

   Updates to the protected virtual machines are always sent across the WAN before synchronization data, such as during a bitmap or delta sync.

   During synchronization, data from the VPG with the highest priority is passed over the WAN before data from medium and low priority VPGs.

3. Click **NEXT**.
   The VMs step is displayed.
Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V

4. Select the VMs that will be part of this VPG and click the arrow pointing right to include these VMs in the VPG.
   - When using the Search field, you can use the wildcards; * or ?

Virtual machines that are not yet protected are displayed in the list. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.

5. You can view protected virtual machines in the Advanced (One-to-Many) section, by clicking Select VMs.

The Select VMs dialog is displayed.

---

**Note:** Virtual machines can be protected in a maximum of three VPGs. These VPGs cannot be recovered to the same site. Virtual machines protected in the maximum...
number of VPGs are not displayed in the Select VMs dialog.

In on-premise environments, protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

6. To define the boot order of the virtual machines in the VPG, click **DEFINE BOOT ORDER**, otherwise go to the next step.

When virtual machines in a VPG are started in the recovery site, by default these machines are not started up in a particular order. If you want specific virtual machines to start before other machines, you can specify a boot order. The virtual machines are defined in groups and the boot order applies to the groups and not to individual virtual machines in the groups. You can specify a delay between groups during startup.

**Note:** Up to 20 virtual machines may boot on a host simultaneously. Following the boot, a 15 second (default) delay occurs until the next boot batch.

Initially, virtual machines in the VPG are displayed together under the Default group. If you want specific machines to start before other virtual machines, define new groups with one or more virtual machines in each group.

7. Click **ADD GROUP** to add a new group. Then, do the following:
   a. To change the name of a group, click the Pencil icon next to the group.
   b. To delete a group, click the delete icon on the right side. You cannot delete the Default group nor a group that contains a virtual machine.
   c. Drag virtual machines to move them from one group to another.
   d. Drag groups to change the order the groups are started, or, optionally, in **Boot Delay**, specify a time delay between starting up the virtual machines in the group and starting up the virtual machines in the next group.

   **For Example:** Assume three groups, Default, Server, and Client, defined in this order. The boot
delay defined for the Default group is 10, for the Server group is 100, and for the Client group 0. The virtual machines in the Default group are started together and after 10 seconds the virtual machines in the Server group are started. After 100 seconds the virtual machines in the Client group are started.

e. Click **OK** to save the boot order.

When configuring boot order settings, define the boot disk to be first in the boot sequence in order to avoid boot failure.

8. **Click NEXT.**

The **REPLICATION** step is displayed.

![Replication Step](image)

**Note:** If the protected site is paired with only one recovery site, the recovery step is displayed with the **Recovery Site** field automatically filled in and defaults set, as shown below.

9. **Specify the Recovery Site.** This is the site to which you want to recover the virtual machines. After specifying the recovery site, other fields are displayed.
Note: Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that step. Every step must be marked with a check mark before you can click **DONE** to create the VPG.

10. Optionally, change the default **SLA** values:

   - **Journal History:** The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.
     
     The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.
     
     Select the number of **hours** from 1 to 23 or the number of **days** from 1 to 30.

   - **Target RPO Alert:** The maximum desired time between each automatic checkpoint write to the journal before an alert is issued.

   - **Test Reminder:** The amount of time in months recommended between each test, where you test the integrity of the VPG. A warning is issued if a test is not performed within this time frame.

11. Click **NEXT**.

    The Storage step is displayed.

    By default the storage used for the virtual machine definition is also used for the virtual machine data.

    For each virtual machine in the VPG, Zerto displays its storage-related information.
12. Specify whether the protected volume is a **Temp Data** disk.

**Temp Data:** If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration, mark the recovery disk for this disk as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.

13. Click **NEXT**.

The RECOVERY step is displayed. Recovery details include the import method, networks, security group, instance family, and instance type to use for failover, move, and testing failover, and whether scripts should run as part of the recovery process.

**Note:** Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that
14. Select recovery settings for failover/move and failover testing.

15. From the **Import Method** drop-down list, select an import method.

- **Zerto Import for data volumes (Faster)**: Uses the zImport method for **data volumes** only. This is the **default** setting and usually has a faster RTO than AWS Import. This method requires setting the **Access Key ID** and **Secret Access Key** in the **Site Settings** window. See **Site Settings** on page 1.

- **Zerto Import for all volumes (Fastest, Requires setup)**: This is usually the fastest import method and uses a zImport VM for **all volumes**.

- **AWS Import**: This was the only import method supported until version 5.5. This method requires setting the **Access Key ID** and **Secret Access Key** in the **Site Settings** window. See **Site Settings** on page 1.

- **VPC Network**: The virtual network dedicated to your AWS account. A security group and subnet must be assigned to this VPC.

- **Subnet**: The subnet for the VPC network.

- When you select the import methods **Zerto Import for data volumes (Faster)**, or **Zerto Import for all volumes (Fastest, Requires setup)**, only those subnets that are supported by the zImport method are displayed in the drop-down list.

Other Subnets are grayed out and cannot be selected.

**Note:**

If the import method is not AWS Import, then the user can select only subnets that are part of the same Availability Zone as the one in which the ZCA resides. Other Subnets are disabled.

- When you select the import methods **AWS Import**, all subnets are listed. A tool tip alert is
displayed when the user hovers over a subnet that is not supported.

![Subnets Image]

**Note:**

If a subnet is chosen in a network that is not in the same Availability Zone as the one in which the ZCA resides, options that utilize the zImport method will not be made available for selection.

- **Security Group:** The AWS security to be associated with the virtual machines in this VPG.
- **Instance Family:** The instance family from which to select the type. AWS instance families are optimized for different types of applications. Choose the instance family appropriate for the application being protected in the VPG.
- **Instance Type:** The instance type, within the instance family, to assign to recovered instances. Different types within an instance family vary, for example in vCPU, RAM, and local storage size. Choose the instance type appropriate for the application being protected in the VPG. The price per instance is related to the instance configuration.

16. For additional settings, click **Advanced VM Settings**.

The Advanced VM Settings window is displayed, which shows the recovery network settings for **Failover/Move** for virtual machines in the VPG. You can see the recovery network settings for failover tests by selecting **Test**.

17. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.
18. To edit information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Edit VM Settings dialog is displayed. The following screenshot must be checked against the GUI.

![Edit VM Settings](image)

19. Update the values for Import Method, VPC network, subnet, security group, instance family, instance type, and private IP as necessary.

**Note:** Only private IPs specified for Windows machines are assigned during a recovery operation. For Linux machines, the IP is assigned from the specified subnet range.

Clearing the values in the **Private IP** field results in an IP being automatically assigned from the subnet range during a recovery operation.

See the [Zerto Interoperability Matrix](#) for the list of operating systems for which Zerto supports Re-IPing.

20. Click **OK** twice to return to the main page of the RECOVERY step.

21. To run pre and post recovery scripts, enter the path to the script to run.

- **Pre-recovery Script:** The information about a script that should run at the beginning of the recovery process.
- **Post-recovery Script:** The information about a script that should run at the end of the recovery process.

For both types of scripts, enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Box</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Script path</strong></td>
<td>The full path to the script. The script must be located on the same machine as the Zerto Virtual Manager for the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Params</strong></td>
<td>The parameters to pass to the script. Separate parameters with a space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Text Box | Description
--- | ---
**Timeout** | The time-out, in seconds, for the script to run.
- If the script runs before executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the script fails or the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated and the failover, move, or test failover is not performed.
- If the script runs after executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated.
- The default time-out value is specified in **Site Settings > Performance and Throttling** tab.

**Note:** Pre and post recovery scripts run in parallel. Therefore, ensure that the pre and post recovery scripts don’t use common resources.

22. Click **NEXT**.

The SUMMARY step is displayed. It shows the VPG configuration that you defined in the previous steps.

23. Click **DONE**. The VPG is created.

For details of what happens after creating the VPG, see **What Happens After the VPG is Defined** on page 56.

### Replication From a Protected Site Hyper-V Server to a Recovery Site Microsoft Azure

You can protect virtual machines to Microsoft Azure. The procedure is the same whether you intend to protect one virtual machine or multiple virtual machines.

When creating a VPG from Hyper-V to Azure the data is stored in a storage account and all replicated data from protected virtual machines to Azure is encrypted in the storage account. All recovery operations bring up the recovered machines in resource groups in Azure.

See also:
- **Requirements for Microsoft Azure Environments** on page 163
- **VPGs Recovering to Azure Managed Disks** on page 164
- **Protecting From Hyper-V - To a Microsoft Azure Recovery Site** on page 164

### Requirements for Microsoft Azure Environments

**Before protecting your virtual machines**, review **Zerto Prerequisites and Requirements for Microsoft Azure Environments**.
VPGs Recovering to Azure Managed Disks

When recovering VPGs to Azure, the VMs are recovered to Azure Managed Disks. Based on the VPG configuration, VM disks can be recovered to Managed Premium SSD, Managed Standard SSD, or Managed Standard HDD.

Protecting From Hyper-V - To a Microsoft Azure Recovery Site

Use the following procedure to replicate from a protected site Hyper-V to a recovery site Microsoft Azure.

To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in Microsoft Azure:

Note: Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that step. Every step must be marked with a check mark before you can click DONE to create the VPG.

1. In the Zerto User Interface, select Actions> Create VPG.

   The General step of the Create VPG wizard is displayed.

2. Specify the name of the VPG and the priority of the VPG.
   - **VPG Name**: The VPG name must be unique. The name cannot be more than 80 characters.
   - **Priority**: Determine the priority for transferring data from the protected site to the recovery site when there is limited bandwidth and more than one VPG is defined on the protected site.
   - **High Priority**: When there are updates to virtual machines protected in VPGs with different Replication...
priorities, updates from the VPG with the highest priority are passed over the WAN first.

- **Medium Priority**: Medium priority VPGs will only be able to use whatever bandwidth is left after the high priority VPGs have used it.
- **Low Priority**: Low priority VPGs will use whatever bandwidth is left after the medium priority VPGs have use it.

Updates to the protected virtual machines are always sent across the WAN before synchronization data, such as during a bitmap or delta sync.

During synchronization, data from the VPG with the highest priority is passed over the WAN before data from medium and low priority VPGs.

3. Click **NEXT**.

The VMs step is displayed.

4. Select the VMs that will be part of this VPG and click the arrow pointing right to include these VMs in the VPG.

   - When using the **Search** field, you can use the wildcards; * or ?

Virtual machines that are not yet protected are displayed in the list. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.

5. You can view protected virtual machines in the **Advanced (One-to-Many)** section, by clicking **Select VMs**.

The Select VMs dialog is displayed.
**Note:** Virtual machines can be protected in a maximum of three VPGs. These VPGs cannot be recovered to the same site. Virtual machines protected in the maximum number of VPGs are not displayed in the Select VMs dialog.

In on-premise environments, protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

6. **Click NEXT.**

The REPLICATION step is displayed.

**Note:** If the protected site is paired with only one recovery site, the recovery step is displayed with the **Recovery Site** field automatically filled in and defaults set, as shown below.
7. Specify the **Recovery Site**. This is the site to which you want to recover the virtual machines. After specifying the recovery site, other fields are displayed.

![Screenshot of Zerto Virtual Manager Administration Guide](image)

**Note:** Steps that do not require input are marked with a check mark. You can jump directly to a step that has been marked with a check mark to edit the values for that step. Every step must be marked with a check mark before you can click **DONE** to create the VPG.

8. Optionally, change the default **SLA** values:

   - **Journal History**: The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.
     
     The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.
     
     Select the number of **hours** from 1 to 23 or the number of **days** from 1 to 30.

   - **Target RPO Alert**: The maximum desired time between each automatic checkpoint write to the journal before an alert is issued.

   - **Test Reminder**: The amount of time in months recommended between each test, where you test the integrity of the VPG. A warning is issued if a test is not performed within this time frame.

9. Click **NEXT**.

The Storage step is displayed.

By default the storage used for the virtual machine definition is also used for the virtual machine data.

For each virtual machine in the VPG, Zerto displays its storage-related information.
10. Specify whether the protected volume is a **Temp Data** disk.

   **Temp Data:** If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration, mark the recovery disk for this disk as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.

11. Click **NEXT**.

   The RECOVERY step is displayed. Recovery details include the networks, network security group to use for failover, move, and testing failover, and whether scripts should run as part of the recovery process.

12. Select recovery settings for failover/move and failover testing.
   - **VNet:** The virtual network dedicated to your Azure subscription.
   - **Subnet:** The subnet or the VNet network.
• **Network Security Group:** The Azure network security to be associated with the virtual machines in this VPG. You can associate one network security group with the virtual machines. The NIC will be associated with the network security group defined at the virtual machine level.

• **Recovery Disk Type:** Select the Azure recovery storage type to which the selected virtual machines will be recovered to; Managed Premium SSD, Managed Standard SSD or Managed Standard HDD. The Virtual Machine Series and Virtual Machine Size fields are updated with the relevant options based on the selected Recovery Disk Type.

• **Virtual Machine Series:** The virtual machine series from which to select the size. Azure virtual machine series are optimized for different types of applications. The default is set to **DSv2**. You can choose the virtual machine series appropriate for the application being protected in the VPG.

• **Virtual Machine Size:** The virtual machine size, within the virtual machine series, to assign to recovered virtual machines. Different sizes within a virtual machine series vary, for example in a number of cores, RAM, and local storage size. The default is set to **Standard_DS1_v2**. You can choose the virtual machine size appropriate for the application being protected in the VPG. The price per virtual machine is related to the virtual machine configuration.

13. For additional settings, click **ADVANCED VM SETTINGS**.

The Advanced VM Settings dialog is displayed, which shows the recovery network settings for failover and move for virtual machines in the VPG. You can see the recovery network settings for failover tests by clicking **TEST**.

14. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.

15. To edit information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Edit VM Settings dialog is displayed.
16. Update the values for VNet, subnet, security group and private IP as necessary.

**Note:** Only private IPs specified for Windows machines are assigned during a recovery operation. For Linux machines, the IP is assigned from the specified subnet range.

Clearing the values in the Private IP field results in an IP being automatically assigned from the subnet range during a recovery operation.

See the Zerto Interoperability Matrix for the list of operating systems for which Zerto supports Re-IPing.

17. Click **OK** twice to return to the main page of the RECOVERY step.

18. To run pre and post recovery scripts, enter the path to the script to run.

- **Pre-recovery Script:** The information about a script that should run at the beginning of the recovery process.
- **Post-recovery Script:** The information about a script that should run at the end of the recovery process.

For both types of scripts, enter the following information:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Box</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Script path</strong></td>
<td>The full path to the script. The script must be located on the same machine as the Zerto Virtual Manager for the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Params</strong></td>
<td>The parameters to pass to the script. Separate parameters with a space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Zerto Virtual Manager Administration Guide Microsoft Hyper-V Environment - Rev01 U2
Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Text Box</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timeout</td>
<td>The time-out, in seconds, for the script to run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the script runs before executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the script fails or the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated and the failover, move, or test failover is not performed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• If the script runs after executing a failover, move, or test failover, and the timeout value is reached, an alert is generated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The default time-out value is specified in Site Settings &gt; Performance and Throttling tab.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Pre and post recovery scripts run in parallel. Therefore, ensure that the pre and post recovery scripts don’t use common resources.

19. Click **NEXT**.

The SUMMARY step is displayed. It shows the VPG configuration that you defined in the previous steps.

20. Click **DONE**. The VPG is created.

For details of what happens after creating the VPG, see What Happens After the VPG is Defined on page 56.
Monitoring Zerto Virtual Manager

You can monitor information about all the VPGs either protected at the local site or recovered to the local site in the VPGs tab. You can also drill-down to monitor information about a specific VPG displayed in the VPGs tab or about the virtual machines being protected by VPGs. You can also view summary details of the protected and recovery sites in either the protected or recovery site as well as monitor the status of each virtual protection group and any of the virtual machines being protected in either site.

The following general monitoring options are described in this section:

- The DASHBOARD Tab on page 172
- Monitoring VPGs - The VPGs Tab on page 174
- Monitoring a Single VPG on page 177
- Monitoring Tasks on page 181
- Monitoring Protected Virtual Machines - The VMs Tab on page 182

The following site monitoring option is described in this section:

- Monitoring Peer Sites - The SITES Tab on page 185

The following VRA monitoring option is described in this section:

- Monitoring Virtual Replication Appliances on page 186

The following storage monitoring option is described in this section:

- Monitoring Storage - The SETUP Tab - The STORAGE Tab on page 194

The following performance counters are described in this section:

- Zerto Performance Counters on page 196

For details about Zerto Virtual Manager alerts and events, refer to Zerto Guide to Alarms, Alerts and Events.

For details about monitoring Zerto Virtual Manager Long Term Retention repositories, see Monitoring Your Long Term Retention Status on page 343, on page 267.

The DASHBOARD Tab

The DASHBOARD provides an overview of the sites and VPGs being protected at the site or recovered to the site.
The following information is displayed:

**VPG HEALTH**

The VPGs being recovered with the health of each VPG, represented by a colored block, where the color represents the following:

- **Green**: The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
- **Orange**: The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the target RPO value specified for the VPG.
- **Red**: The VPG is not being replicated, for example because communication with the site is down.

Positioning the mouse over a block displays the VPG name as a tooltip. Clicking the block opens the details tab for the VPG.

**STATUS**

The status of the site, including the following:

- The number of VPGs and virtual machines being protected or recovered.
- The amount of storage being protected.
- The average RPO.
- The percentage compression of data passed between the site and peer sites.

**Performance Graphs**

**IOPS (I/O per Second)**: The total amount of I/O write operations generated by the protected virtual machines on the viewed site. (The IOPS graph is displayed for VPGs replicating from on-premise sites).
**Throughput (MB per second):** The total amount of uncompressed data written by the virtual machines protected to the recovery sites.

During synchronization processes (such as bitmap sync, initial sync and delta sync) this value will also consist of the uncompressed data read from the protected disks.

**WAN Traffic (MB per second):** The total amount of compressed data transferred between the viewed site and all its recovery sites.

A listing of the currently active alerts and running tasks, and the events run during the last few hours.

User input, for example, stopping a failover test or committing or rolling back a Move or Failover operation, can be initiated from the relevant task displayed in the **RUNNING TASKS** section.

**ACTIVE ALERTS, RUNNING TASKS, and EVENTS**

A listing of the currently active alerts and running tasks, and the events run during the last few hours.

User input, for example, stopping a failover test or committing or rolling back a Move or Failover operation, can be initiated from the relevant task displayed in the **RUNNING TASKS** section.

**Monitoring VPGs – The VPGs Tab**

View details of all VPGs in the VPGs tab. This tab lists all the VPGs from both the local and remote sites and provides summary details of each VPG.

![VPGs Tab](image)

You can create a query using the view field to display VPG information in a list. You can filter the VPGs that will be displayed according to their status by checking the checkboxes alongside the VPG status icons ( ![status icons](image) ). The query can be customized by adding and removing filters.

See also:

- **List View - GENERAL** on page 175
- **List View - PERFORMANCE** on page 175
List View - GENERAL

The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:

- **Alert status indicator**: The color indicates the status of the VPG. Hovering over the alert displays a popup of all active alerts with descriptions:
  - **Green**: The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
  - **Orange**: The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.
  - **Red**: The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.

- **VPG Name (#VMs)**: The name of the VPG. The name is a link: Click the VPG name to drill-down to more specific details about the VPG that are displayed in a dynamic tab. The number of VMs protected in the VPG is displayed in parentheses.

- **Direction**: The direction of the replication, from this site to the remote site or from the remote site to this site.

- **Peer Site**: The name of the site with which this site is paired: the site where the VPG is protected or will be recovered to.

- **Priority**: The priority of the VPG.

- **Protection Status**: The current status of the VPG, such as Meeting SLA. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.

- **State**: The current substatus of the VPG, such as Delta syncing. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.

- **Actual RPO**: The time since the last checkpoint was written to the journal. This should be less than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.

- **Operation**: The operation, such as Move, that is currently being performed.

List View - PERFORMANCE

The following information is displayed in the PERFORMANCE view:
IO: The IO per second between all the applications running on the virtual machines in the VPG and the VRA that sends a copy to the remote site for replication.

Throughput: The MB per second for all the applications running on the virtual machines being protected. There can be a high IO rate with lots of small writes resulting in a small throughput as well as a small IO with a large throughput. Thus, both the IOPS and Throughput values together provide a more accurate indication of performance.

Network: The amount of WAN traffic.

Provisioned Storage (not shown by default): The provisioned storage for all the virtual machines in the VPG. This value is the sum of the values that are used in the vSphere Client console per virtual machine in the Virtual Machines tab for the root vCenter Server node. Each value is the sum of both the hard disk and memory. Thus, a virtual machine with 1GB hard disk and 4GB memory will show 5GB provisioned storage.

Used Storage: The storage used by all of the virtual machines in the VPG. This value is the sum of the values that are used in the vSphere Client console per virtual machine in the Virtual Machines tab for the root vCenter Server node.

List View - Retention

The following information is displayed in the RETENTION STATUS view:

• **Alert status indicator:** The color indicates the status of the VPG. Clicking the alert displays a popup of all active alerts with descriptions:
  - **Green:** The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
  - **Orange:** The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.
  - **Red:** The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.

• **VPG Name (#VMs):** The name of the VPG. The name is a link: Click the VPG name to drill-down to more specific details about the VPG that are displayed in a dynamic tab.

• **Retention Policy:** Whether the VPG is protected against a disaster only with the ability to recover to a point in time up to 30 days before the disaster, or protection is extended to include retention sets of the virtual machines, going back for a maximum of one year.

• **Retention Policy Status:** The status of the retention set.

• **Repository Name:** The name of the repository where the jobs are stored.
• *Restore Point Range:* The restore points for the retention job out of the total retention jobs run for the VPG.

• *Retention Policy Scheduling:* The schedule for the retention process.

### Additional Fields and Options

In the GENERAL, PERFORMANCE, and RETENTION views you can:

• Show/Hide Columns, Create View and Reset Columns using the settings (⚙️) menu.

• Sort the list by a column by clicking in the column title.

• Filter information in the columns by clicking the filter button (_departed) that is displayed when the mouse cursor is moved into the column title. Active filters are displayed with a yellow background.

### Saving Details of Virtual Protection Groups to File

You can save details of every VPG displayed in the VPGs tab to a CSV file, which can be opened using programs such as Microsoft Excel.

In the VPGs tab, click **EXPORT** and specify where to save the VPG details.

### Monitoring a Single VPG

You can monitor the status of a specific VPG by clicking the VPG name in the VPGs tab or clicking the VPG name in the VMs tab. The VPG details are displayed in a dynamic tab.

### General Tab

The tab on the left side shows the status of the VPG. The following information is displayed in this tab:

### Performance Graphs

The current VPG performance, which includes the following information:
RPO: The current Recovery Point Objective (RPO) of the Virtual Protection Group (VPG).

IOPS (I/O per second): The total amount of I/O write operations generated by the protected virtual machines comprising the Virtual Protection Group (VPG).

Throughput (MB per Second): The total amount of uncompressed data written by the protected virtual machines comprising the Virtual Protection Group (VPG).

During synchronization processes (such as bitmap sync, initial sync and delta sync) this value will also consist of the uncompressed data read from the protected disks.

WAN Traffic (MB per second): The total amount of compressed data transferred between the protected and recovery sites of the Virtual Protection Group (VPG).

JOURNAL HISTORY

The journal history shows:
- The SLA defined for the VPG.
- The amount of time currently covered by information in the journal.
- The earliest—oldest—checkpoint currently in the journal that can be used for a recovery operation.

Long Term Retention

If Long Term Retention is enabled, the following details are displayed:
- Retention Policy: Whether the VPG is protected against a disaster only with the ability to recover to a point in time up to 30 days before the disaster, or protection is extended to include retention sets of the virtual machines, going back for a maximum of one year.
- Retention Status: The status of the retention set.
- Repository: The name of the repository where the retention sets are stored.
- Restore Point Range: The restore points for the retention sets out of the total retention sets run for the VPG.
- Scheduling: The retention schedule.

ACTIVE ALERTS, RUNNING TASKS, and EVENTS

A listing of the currently active alerts and running tasks, and the events run during the last few hours.

User input, for example, stopping a failover test or committing or rolling back a Move or Failover operation, can be initiated from the relevant task displayed in the RUNNING TASKS section.
**PROTECTED VMs Tab**

The PROTECTED VMs tab shows details about the protected virtual machines:

- **Name:** The name of the virtual machine.
- **Group:** The boot order group to which the virtual machine belongs.
- **Protection Host:** The protected virtual machine host.
- **Storage Protected:** The name of the protected storage.
- **Provisioned:** The protected virtual machine provisioned storage.
- **Used:** The amount of data used on the recovery site for this virtual machine.
- **Recovery Data Size:** The total size of the data on the recovery site.
- **Failover Network:** The failover network used when recovering this virtual machine.
- **Test Network:** The test network used when testing the recovery of this virtual machine.

The following details are displayed with a **vSphere** recovery site:

- **Recovery Host:** The host to use for recovery.
- **VM Recovery Datastore:** The name of the recovery datastore.
- **Folder:** The folder where the virtual machine is recovered to.

The following details are displayed with a **Hyper-V** recovery site:

- **Recovery Host:** The host to use for recovery.
- **VM Recovery Storage:** The name of the recovery storage.

The following details are displayed with an **AWS** recovery site:
**Failover/Move VPC:** The virtual network dedicated to your AWS account during a failover or move operation. A security group and subnet must be assigned to this VPC.

**Failover/Move Subnet:** The subnet mask for the VPC network during a failover or move operation.

**Failover/Move Security Groups:** The AWS security to be associated with the virtual machines in this VPG during a failover or move operation.

**Test VPC:** The virtual network dedicated to your AWS account during a failover test operation. A security group and subnet must be assigned to this VPC.

**Test Subnet:** The subnet mask for the VPC network during a failover test operation.

**Test Security Groups:** The AWS security to be associated with the virtual machines in this VPG during a failover test operation.

**Folder:** The folder where the virtual machine is recovered to.

**SITES Tab**

The SITES tab shows the topology of the VPG, including both the protected and recovery sites.
The SETTINGS tab shows details about the VPG settings, divided into general, replication, recovery, and retention categories.

**Monitoring Tasks**

Recent tasks can also be reviewed for a site by clicking the TASKS area in the status bar at the bottom of the user interface.

The following information is displayed for each task:

*Status:* The task status.

*Name:* The name of the task.

*Description:* A description of the task.

*Action:* The ability to perform an action directly. For example, stop a failover test, or commit or rollback a move or failover operation.

The full details of the tasks can be monitored in the TASKS subtab under the MONITORING tab.
The following information is displayed for each task:

**Task status indicator:** The color indicates the status of the task. The following statuses exist for each task:

- **Green:** The task was completed successfully.
- **Red:** The task failed.

**Task:** The task name.

**Status:** The task status.

**Related Entities:** The sites which were effected by the task.

**User:** The user who initiated the task.

**Started:** The date and time the task started.

**Completed:** The date and time the task completed.

**Notes:** Notes added at the completion of a failover test.

**Monitoring Protected Virtual Machines – The VMs Tab**

View details of the protected VMs in the VMs tab. This tab lists all the protected virtual machines from both the local and remote sites and provides summary details of each virtual machine.
You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.

**GENERAL View**

The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:

- **Alert status indicator**: The color indicates the status of the VPG:
  - **Green**: The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
  - **Orange**: The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the **Target RPO Alert** value specified for the VPG.
  - **Red**: The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.
- **VM Name**: The name of the virtual machine. The name is a link.
- **VPG Name**: The name of the VPG. The name is a link: Click the VPG name to drill-down to more specific details about the VPG that are displayed in a dynamic tab.
- **Direction**: The direction of the replication, from this site to the remote site or from the remote site to this site.
- **Peer Site**: The name of the site with which this site is paired: the site where the VPG is protected or will be recovered to.
- **Priority**: The priority of the VPG.
- **Protection Status**: The current status of the virtual machine, such as **Meeting SLA**. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.
- **State**: The current substatus of the VPG, such as **Delta syncing**. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.
• **Actual RPO:** The time since the last checkpoint was written to the journal. This should be less than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.

• **Operation:** The operation, such as Move, that is currently being performed.

**PERFORMANCE View**

The following information is displayed in the PERFORMANCE view:

• **IO:** The IO per second between all the applications running on the virtual machine and the VRA that sends a copy to the remote site for replication.

• **Throughput:** The MB per second for all the applications running on the virtual machines being protected. There can be a high IO rate with lots of small writes resulting in a small throughput as well as a small IO with a large throughput. Thus, both the IOPS and Throughput values together provide a more accurate indication of performance.

• **Network:** The amount of WAN traffic.

**Provisioned Storage:** The provisioned storage for the virtual machine in the recovery site.

**Used Storage:** The storage used by the virtual machine in the recovery site.

**Retention View**

The following information is displayed in the RETENTION STATUS view:

• **Alert status indicator:** The color indicates the status of the VPG. Clicking the alert displays a popup of all active alerts with descriptions:
  
  • **Green:** The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
  
  • **Orange:** The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.
  
  • **Red:** The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.

**VPG Name (#VMs):** The name of the VPG. The name is a link: Click the VPG name to drill-down to more specific details about the VPG that are displayed in a dynamic tab.

• **Retention Policy:** Whether the VPG is protected against a disaster only with the ability to recover to a point in time up to 30 days before the disaster, or protection is extended to include retention sets of the virtual machines, going back for a maximum of one year.

• **Retention Policy Status:** The status of the retention set.
• **Repository Name:** The name of the repository where the jobs are stored.

• **Restore Point Range:** The restore points for the retention job out of the total retention jobs run for the VPG.

• **Retention Policy Scheduling:** The schedule for the retention process.

**Additional Fields**

There are additional fields that you can display that are listed when you select Show/Hide Columns from the dropdown list shown by clicking the configuration icon ( ):

- **Protected Site:** The name of the protected site.

- **Recovery Site:** The name of the recovery site.

- **ZORG:** A name given to an organization by a cloud service provider. For details refer to *Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide*.

- **Last Test:** The time and date of the last retention process performed by Zerto Virtual Manager.

**Monitoring Peer Sites - The SITES Tab**

View details of the paired sites in the SITES tab. This tab lists all the sites paired to the local site and provides summary details of each paired site.

You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.

**GENERAL View**

The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:
Alert status indicator: The color indicates the alert status of the site:

- **Green**: The Zerto Virtual Manager for the site is running without problems.
- **Orange**: The Zerto Virtual Manager for the site has a problem that does not stop the protection of virtual machines, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value for a VPG.
- **Red**: The Zerto Virtual Manager for the site is not running correctly, for example, because communication with the site is down.

**Site Name**: The name specified for the paired site during installation or in the Site Settings dialog.

**Location**: The location specified for the paired site during installation or in the Site Settings dialog.

**Site IP**: The IP of the peer site.

**Network**: The amount of WAN traffic.

**IOPS**: The IO per second between all the applications running on the virtual machine in the VPG and the VRA that sends a copy to the remote site for replication.

**Incoming Throughput**: The MBs for all the applications running on the virtual machine being protected. There can be a high IO rate with lots of small writes resulting in a small throughput as well as a small IO with a large throughput. Thus, both the IO and Incoming Throughput values together provide a more accurate indication of performance.

**Provisioned Storage (GB)**: The maximum storage that can be protected.

**# VPGs**: The total number of VPGs being protected by the site and replicated to the site.

**# VMs**: The total number of virtual machines being protected by the site and replicated to the site.

**Additional Fields**

There are additional fields that you can display that are listed when you select Show/Hide Columns from the dropdown list shown by clicking the configuration icon (°):

**Used Storage (GB)**: The name of the protected site.

**ZORG Name**: A name given to the organization by a cloud service provider. For details refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

**Version**: The Zerto version installed at this site.

**Monitoring Virtual Replication Appliances**

You can monitor information about all the VRAs for the local site in the VRAs tab. You can also drill-down to monitor information about a specific VRA displayed in the VRAs tab:

- Monitoring VRAs - The SETUP Tab - VRAs Tab on page 187, below.
- Monitoring a Single VRA on page 189, on page 148.
Monitoring VRAs – The SETUP Tab – VRAs Tab

View details of the VRAs in the VRAs subtab, under the SETUP tab. All the hosts in the SCVMM are listed, and details of VRAs for each host, when installed, are also shown.

You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.

GENERAL View

In this view, the number of installed VRAs is displayed in the VRAs tab. The following information is displayed in this view:

**Cluster:** The cluster name, if relevant.

**Host Address:** The host IP address for the VRA. If the host is part of a cluster, the cluster name is displayed with the hosts under the cluster.

**Host Version:** The host version.

**Alert Status:** The alerts status of the VRA virtual machine.

**VRA Name:** The name of the VRA virtual machine.

**VRA Status:** The VRA status. For example, Installed, Ghost VRA.

**VRA Version:** Either Latest if the version installed is the most current version or Outdated if it can be upgraded. A tooltip displays the actual version.

**VRA Address:** The IP address of the VRA virtual machine.

**# VPGs:** The number of VPGs with a virtual machine for which the VRA either manages the protection or the recovery of the data.

**# VMs:** The number of virtual machines for which the VRA either manages the protection or the recovery of the data.
SETTINGS View

The following information is displayed in the SETTINGS view:

**VRA Group:** The group of VRAs to which this VRA belongs. When VRAs use different networks, they can be grouped by network.

**VRA RAM:** The amount of memory allocated to the VRA to buffer data before it is sent to the recovery site or at the recovery site before it is written to the journal.

**Storage:** The storage used by the VRA.

**Storage Cluster:** The storage cluster used by the VRA.

WORKLOAD PROTECTION View

The following information is displayed in the WORKLOAD PROTECTION view:

- **# VPGs:** The number of VPGs with a virtual machine for which the VRA is used either for protection or recovery.
- **# VMs:** The number of virtual machines for which the VRA is used either for protection or recovery.
- **# of Protected VPGs:** The number of VPGs with a virtual machine for which the VRA manages the protection of their data.
- **# of Protected VMs:** The number of virtual machines for which the VRA manages the protection of their data.
- **# of Protected Volumes:** The number of volumes for which the VRA manages the protection of their data.
- **# of Recovery VPGs:** The number of VPGs with a virtual machine for which the VRA manages the recovery of the data.
- **# of Recovery VMs:** The number of virtual machines for which the VRA manages the recovery of the data.
- **# of Recovery Volumes:** The number of volumes for which the VRA manages the recovery of the data.

Additional Fields

There are additional fields that you can display that are listed when you select Show/Hide Columns from the dropdown list shown by clicking the configuration icon ():

**Cluster:** The cluster with the host used by the VRA.

**VC Network:** The network used by the VRA.

**# Volumes:** The number of volumes for which the VRA manages the protection or recovery of data.
Monitoring a Single VRA

You monitor the status of a single VRA by clicking the VRA name in the VRAs tab. The VRA details are displayed in a dynamic tab.

![Image of Zerto Virtual Manager](image)

You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.

**Installed Tab**

The tab on the left side shows the status of the VRA. The following information is displayed when this tab is selected:

**Performance Graphs**

- CPU Usage: The percentage of CPU usage by the VRA.
- Local Memory: The percentage of the VRA memory used by protected volumes managed by the VRA. If the memory consumption is high you can consider vMotioning some of the virtual machines to a different host.
- Remote Memory: The percentage of the VRA memory used by recovery volumes managed by the VRA. If the memory consumption is high you can consider changing the target host for some of the virtual machines to a different host.

**ACTIVE ALERTS, RUNNING TASKS, and EVENTS**

A listing of the currently active alerts, running tasks, and events run over the last few hours.

**VPGs Tab**

Information about the VPGs with virtual machines that are on the host with the VRA is displayed in the VPGs tab.
GENERAL View

The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:

**Alert status indicator:** The color indicates the status of the VPG:

- **Green:** The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
- **Orange:** The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.
- **Red:** The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.

**Direction:** The direction of the replication, from this site to the remote site or from the remote site to this site.

**Protected Site:** The name of the protected site.

**Recovery Site:** The name of the recovery site.

**Name:** The name of the VPG.

**Protection Status:** The current status of the VPG, such as Meeting SLA. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.

**State:** The current substatus of the VPG, such as Delta syncing. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.

PERFORMANCE View

The following information is displayed in the PERFORMANCE view:

**# VMs on VRA/#VMs in VPG:** The number of virtual machines on the VRA and the number of virtual machines in the VPG.
**Provisioned:** The provisioned storage for all the virtual machines in the VPG. Each value is the sum of both the hard disk and memory. Thus, a virtual machine with 1GB hard disk and 4GB memory will show 5GB provisioned storage.

**Used:** The storage used by all virtual machines in the VPG.

**IOPS:** The IO per second between all the applications running on the virtual machines in the VPG and the VRA that sends a copy to the remote site for replication.

**Throughput:** The MB per second for all the applications running on the virtual machines being protected. There can be a high IO rate with lots of small writes resulting in a small throughput as well as a small IO with a large throughput. Thus, both the IOPS and Throughput values together provide a more accurate indication of performance.

**Retention View**

The following information is displayed in the RETENTION STATUS view:

- **Alert status indicator:** The color indicates the status of the VPG. Clicking the alert displays a popup of all active alerts with descriptions:
  - **Green:** The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.
  - **Orange:** The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.
  - **Red:** The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.

- **VPG Name (#VMs):** The name of the VPG. The name is a link: Click the VPG name to drill-down to more specific details about the VPG that are displayed in a dynamic tab.

- **Retention Policy:** Whether the VPG is protected against a disaster only with the ability to recover to a point in time up to 30 days before the disaster, or protection is extended to include retention sets of the virtual machines, going back for a maximum of one year.

- **Retention Policy Status:** The status of the retention set.

- **Repository Name:** The name of the repository where the jobs are stored.

- **Restore Point Range:** The restore points for the retention job out of the total retention jobs run for the VPG.

- **Retention Policy Scheduling:** The schedule for the retention process.
Additional Fields

There is an additional field that you can display. This field is listed when you select Show/Hide Columns from the dropdown list shown by clicking the configuration icon ( ):  

**ZORG:** A name given to an organization by a cloud service provider. For details refer to *Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide*.  

VMs Tab

Information about the virtual machines that are on the host with the VRA is displayed in the VMs tab.

![VMs Tab Image]

**GENERAL View**

The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:

**Alert status indicator:** The color indicates the status of the VPG:

- **Green:** The VPG is being replicated, including syncing the VPG between the sites.

- **Orange:** The VPG is being replicated but there are problems, such as an RPO value larger than the Target RPO Alert value specified for the VPG.

- **Red:** The VPG is not being replicated, for example, because communication with the remote site is down.

**Direction:** The direction of the replication, from this site to the remote site or from the remote site to this site.

**Protected Site:** The name of the protected site.

**Recovery Site:** The name of the recovery site.

**VM Name:** The name of the virtual machine.
VPG Name: The name of the VPG with which this virtual machine is associated.

Protection Status: The current status of the virtual machine, such as Meeting SLA. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.

State: The current substatus of the virtual machine, such as Delta syncing. Where appropriate, the percentage of the operation completed, such as syncing, is displayed.

PERFORMANCE View

The following information is displayed in the PERFORMANCE view:

**Provisioned on Host:** The provisioned storage for the virtual machine on the host.

**Used on Host:** The storage used by the virtual machine in the VPG.

**IO:** The IO per second between all the applications running on the virtual machines in the VPG and the VRA that sends a copy to the remote site for replication.

**Throughput:** The MB per second for all the applications running on the virtual machine. There can be a high IO rate with lots of small writes resulting in a small throughput as well as a small IO with a large throughput. Thus, both the IOPS and Throughput values together provide a more accurate indication of performance.

Additional Fields

There is an additional field that you can display. This field is listed when you select Show/Hide Columns from the dropdown list shown by clicking the configuration icon (°):

**ZORG:** A name given to an organization by a cloud service provider. For details refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

SETTINGS Tab

Information about the VRA is displayed in the SETTINGS tab. This includes its version, the host on which it is located, its definition, the networks it uses, and its replication and recovery settings.
Monitoring Storage – The SETUP Tab – The STORAGE Tab

View details of the storage used by Zerto in the STORAGE subtab, under the SETUP tab. This tab lists all the storage used by Zerto with an option to show all the storage per cluster or for the hosts, whether used by Zerto or not.

You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.

GENERAL View

In this view, the number of available storage is displayed in the STORAGE subtab. The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:
Storage: The name of the datastore or cluster.

Alert status indicator: The color indicates the alert status of the storage:
- **Green**: The storage is functioning as required.
- **Orange**: The storage is functioning, but there are problems, such as not enough free space.
- **Red**: There is a problem with the storage.

Status: The status of the storage:

Device: The storage device identifier.

Cluster: The cluster that the storage is associated with.

Total Usage (GB): The amount of GB used in relation to the total amount available.

DR Usage (GB): The amount of GB used by Zerto in relation to the total amount available.

# VRAs: The number of VRAs using the storage.

**WORKLOAD PROTECTION View**

The following information is displayed in the WORKLOAD PROTECTION view:

Storage: The name of the storage or cluster.

Alert status indicator: The color indicates the alert status of the storage:
- **Green**: The storage is functioning as required.
- **Orange**: The storage is functioning, but there are problems, such as not enough free space.
- **Red**: There is a problem with the storage.

Total Usage (GB): The amount of space, in GB, used in relation to the total amount available.

Type: The type of storage.

Recovery Size: The amount space used for recovery.

Journal Size: The amount of space used by the journals.

# Protected VMs: The number of protected virtual machines using the storage.

# Incoming VMs: The number of virtual machines are specified to be recovered using the storage.

Additional Fields

There are no additional fields that you can display. However, you can display all the fields shown in these views when you select Show/Hide Columns from the dropdown list shown by clicking the configuration icon (°).
Zerto Performance Counters

During installation of Zerto, Zerto-related performance counters are added to the Windows Performance Monitor on the machine where the Zerto Virtual Manager runs.

Uninstalling Zerto, uninstalls the Zerto-related performance counters. Upgrading Zerto updates any changes to the Zerto-related performance counters.

The Zerto-related performance counters are collected on the protected site only. These counters are described as follows.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Checkpoints</td>
<td>Checkpoint failures in last 10 minutes</td>
<td>Number of checkpoints that failed to be inserted in last 10 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Checkpoints</td>
<td>Checkpoint insertions in last 10 minutes</td>
<td>Number of checkpoints inserted in last 10 minutes. The maximum is 120; normal performance is 90-115; less than 40 indicates a problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Checkpoints</td>
<td>Time to insert last checkpoint</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to insert the last checkpoint; normal is less than 5 seconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Connectivity</td>
<td># of connected VRAs</td>
<td>Number of VRAs connected to the local Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Connectivity</td>
<td># of peer Zerto Virtual Managers (ZVMs)</td>
<td>Number of Zerto Virtual Managers connected to the local Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto GUI</td>
<td>Concurrent GUI calls to the ZVM</td>
<td>Number of concurrent GUI calls to the local Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Reflections</td>
<td>AWS reflection collection time</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to collect AWS environment data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hypervisor reflection collection time</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to collect vCenter Server or SCVMM environment data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• vCenter Server collection time should be less than 10 minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• SCVMM collection time should be less than 25 minutes.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reflection data pushed in last 10 minutes</td>
<td>Size in bytes of environment data pushed in last 10 minutes to Zerto Virtual Managers connected to this site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reflection data pushed to peer ZVMs</td>
<td>Size in bytes of last pushed environment data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reflection data received from peer ZVMs</td>
<td>Size in bytes of last received environment data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reflection data received in last 10 minutes</td>
<td>Size in bytes of environment data received in last 10 minutes from Zerto Virtual Managers connected to the local Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reflections pushed to peer ZVMs in last 10 minutes</td>
<td>Number of times environment data was pushed to peer Zerto Virtual Managers in the last 10 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reflections received from peer ZVMs in last 10 minutes</td>
<td>Number of times environment data was received from peer Zerto Virtual Managers in the last 10 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Retained data</td>
<td>Size in bytes of total retained pushed or received data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vCD reflection collection time</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to collect vCD environment data.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zerto Remote Calls</strong></td>
<td>Active incoming remote calls</td>
<td>Current number of active incoming calls being processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Active outgoing remote calls</td>
<td>Current number of calls sent to WCF services for which the Zerto Virtual Manager is still waiting for a response.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Incoming remote calls in last minute</td>
<td>Number of incoming remote calls received in last minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Outgoing remote calls in last minute</td>
<td>Number of outgoing remote calls executed in last minute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zerto RPO</strong></td>
<td>Average RPO</td>
<td>Average RPO in seconds for all VPGs, displayed in the Dashboard.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Current maximum RPO</td>
<td>Current maximum RPO in seconds for all VPGs in this site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Current minimum RPO</td>
<td>Current minimum RPO in seconds for all VPGs in this site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zerto System State</strong></td>
<td>Number of alerts</td>
<td>Current number of active alerts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>System state loop length</td>
<td>Execution time of one system state loop. This should be less than 40 milliseconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to calculate statistics</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to calculate statistics during a system state loop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to retrieve active alerts</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to collect local Zerto Virtual Manager active alerts during a system state loop.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to save VRA performance counters</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to save VRA performance information to a file.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Name</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Visual Query</td>
<td>Time to execute a VQ build loop</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to execute a single VQ build loop. This should be less than 25 milliseconds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to retrieve hypervisor information (reflection)</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to execute a remote query on peer Zerto Virtual Managers to retrieve hypervisor information from remote sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to retrieve local VM list</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to retrieve the list of virtual machines from the local hypervisor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to retrieve local VPG data</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds needed to retrieve VPG data from the local Zerto Virtual Manager.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Time to retrieve VPG list</td>
<td>Time in milliseconds to execute a remote query on peer Zerto Virtual Managers to build a list of VPGs on remote sites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto VRA Counters</td>
<td># of VRAs not updated</td>
<td>Should be zero or close to zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td># of VRAs updated</td>
<td>Should be near or equal to the number of active VRAs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Average time of 5 most time-consuming VRA updates</td>
<td>Should be close to the median VRA update time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Median VRA update time</td>
<td>Median time in milliseconds of last 100 VRA updates.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Managing VPGs

After defining virtual protection groups (VPGs) the virtual machines specified as part of each VPG are protected. There are a number of ongoing management tasks that you can perform on a VPG, such as specifying a checkpoint to enable recovery to that specific point or you can modify the configurations of existing VPGs.

The following VPG management options are described in this chapter section:

- Copy VPG Settings on page 200
- Editing a VPG on page 202
- Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - Overview on page 204
- Removing Virtual Machines from a VPG on page 207
- Removing Protected Virtual Machines from the Hypervisor Inventory on page 207
- Modifying Protected Virtual Machine Volumes on page 208
- Pausing the Protection of a VPG on page 208
- Forcing the Synchronization of a VPG on page 209
- Handling a VPG within an Error State on page 210
- Deleting a VPG on page 211
- Ensuring Application Consistency - Checkpoints on page 211
- Running Scripts Before or After Recovering a VPG on page 214
- Exporting and Importing VPG Definitions on page 218
- VPG Statuses and Synchronization Triggers on page 220

Monitoring VPGs and the VMs that are protected is described in Monitoring Zerto Virtual Manager on page 172, on page 131.

Note:
To set up Long Term Retention to protect VPGs, or to manually run a Retention process (unscheduled retention process) on the VPG, and to restore the VPG see Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention on page 332, on page 257. Configuring Long Term Retention is part of defining a VPG.

Copy VPG Settings

After defining VPGs, you can create a new VPG by copying the VPG-level settings of an existing one.

To copy VPG settings:
1. From either the protected or recovery site, in the VPGs tab, select the VPG to be copied and click **MORE > Copy VPG Settings**.

The Copy VPG wizard is displayed.

2. Modify the VPG name, or leave as is. The copied VPG name appears in this format - `<OriginalVpgName>_Copy_X>`.

3. Click **NEXT**.

The VMs step is displayed.

4. Select the VMs that will be part of this VPG and click the right-pointing arrow to include these VMs in the VPG.
   - Zerto uses the SCSI protocol. Only virtual machines with disks that support this protocol can be specified.
   - When using the Search field, you can use the wildcards; * or ?.

Virtual machines that are not yet protected are displayed in the list. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.

5. Once selected, either click **DONE** to create the VPG with the pre-populated settings, or click **NEXT** to review or edit the settings.
Editing a VPG

You can edit a VPG definition, including adding virtual machines to the VPG, as described in Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - Overview on page 204, deleting virtual machines from the VPG, or changing the information about how virtual machines are recovered, such as adding or removing volumes from the virtual machine.

You can also edit VPG settings when the sites are disconnected. However, not all VPG settings can be updated.

Note: You cannot edit the VPG while a retention process is running.

After modifying the VPG, the settings are updated.

While the VPG settings is being updated, you cannot perform any operations on the VPG, such as adding a checkpoint, editing the VPG properties, or failing the VPG.

After the settings updated, the VPG is synchronized with the recovery site.

To manage a VPG:

1. In the VPGs tab in the Zerto User Interface, select the VPG to be edited and click MORE > Edit VPG. You can also select the VPG, display the VPG details, and click EDIT VPG.

   The Edit VPG wizard is displayed, enabling editing the VPG, including adding and removing virtual machines from the VPG.

   When the sites are disconnected, you cannot add virtual machines to the VPG.

   Note: If the VPG was previously viewed, and the tab for this VPG is still displayed, you can access the details by selecting the tab.

2. Make any required changes to the VPG definition, as described in Protecting Virtual Machines from Hyper-V on page 58. You can jump directly to a step to make a change in that step, for example, the REPLICATION step or the RECOVERY step, by clicking the step. Steps that have been completed are marked with a check.

   Note: If the Journal Size Hard Limit or Journal Size Warning Threshold in the advanced journal settings for the VPG SLA settings, or the default values are changed, the changed values are not applied to existing virtual machines but only to new virtual machines added to the VPG.

The following VPG settings cannot be edited when the sites are disconnected.
## Managing VPGs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Edit VPG Step</th>
<th>VPG Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VMs</td>
<td>Select VMs to protect. You cannot add new VMs to a VPG when the sites are disconnected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replication -&gt; Advanced VM Replication Settings -&gt; Edit VM</td>
<td>If the Journal Datastore is missing, you cannot select a Journal Datastore.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Storage -> EDIT SELECTED -> Edit Volumes | • You cannot edit the Volume Source to RDM or Preseeded volumes.  
• You cannot edit the Volume Provision Type (Thin-provisioned or thick-provisioned). |

3. **Click** **DONE**.

In on-premise environment, when a virtual machine is removed from a VPG, a warning is displayed. Another message is displayed when trying to save the VPG, asking whether or not to save the recovery volumes. These recovery volumes can be used for preseeding if the virtual machine is added back to the VPG. Is this true for vCD vApps as well?

The VPG is updated and then synchronized with the recovery site, if required, for example when the host was changed.

See also:

- Modifying the Journal Size Hard Limit on page 203
- Modifying the Retention Period for Retention Sets on page 203

### Modifying the Journal Size Hard Limit

If the journal size hard limit is reduced, and if the current size is greater than the newly defined size, the journal remains at the current size. When the amount of the journal used falls below the hard limit value it will not grow greater than the new hard limit. Unused journal volumes from the added volumes are marked for removal and removed after the time equivalent to three times the amount specified for the journal history, or twenty-four hours, whichever is more.

**Note:** If the **Journal Size Hard Limit** or **Journal Size Warning Threshold** in the VPG SLA settings are changed, the changed values are not applied to existing virtual machines but only to new virtual machines added to the VPG.

### Modifying the Retention Period for Retention Sets

If the retention period is shortened, the number of retention jobs older than the new retention period are deleted from the repository.
Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - Overview

You can add virtual machines that are not already included in a VPG, to an existing VPG. A virtual machine can be protected in a maximum of three existing VPGs, provided that the VPGs are recovered to different sites.

- Protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.
- You cannot add a virtual machine in an existing VPG, while a retention process is running.
- Only virtual machines with a maximum of 60 disks can be protected.
  - 60 disks can be a combination of IDE and SCSI disks, where:
  - Each virtual machine can have up to 2 IDE controllers.
  - Each IDE controller can have a maximum of 4 IDE disks, and up to 4 SCSI controllers.
  - The IDE disks and SCSI controllers can each have a maximum of 15 disks, so that the total of IDE and SCSI disks does not exceed 60 disks.
- When the recovery site is VMware vSphere, any IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks.

For AWS or Azure recovery sites, see the following topic, then continue with How to Add Virtual Machines to an Existing VPG on page 205, on page 162.

Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - When the Recovery Site is AWS on page 204

Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - When the Recovery Site is Azure on page 205

Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - When the Recovery Site is AWS

- Only virtual machines that are supported by AWS can be protected by Zerto. Refer to AWS documentation for the supported operating systems.
- A VPC must exist, and a security group and subnet must be assigned to it and to all other VPCs you want to use for recovered virtual machines.
- AWS allocates EBS volumes by multiplications 1 GiB. When recovering VMs to AWS, whose volume sizes are not multiplications of GiB, AWS rounds the recovered volumes to the closest GiB, resulting in a size mismatch between the recovered and protected volumes. In this case, the original protected disks cannot be used for preseed and the VMs are recovered in Needs Configuration state.
- The following limitations apply when protecting to AWS:
  - For Linux, AWS supports virtual machines with up to 40 volumes, including the boot volume.
  - For Windows, AWS supports virtual machines with up to 26 volumes, including the boot volume.
  - Note that C5/M5 instances have 28 available devices and each volume/NIC utilizes one device. Windows supports up to 26 volumes. For more information, see Elastic Network Interfaces.
  - GBT formatted disks are supported for data volumes only.
  - The following table describes the limitations per Import Method:
Import Method

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OS</th>
<th>AWS Import</th>
<th>zImport for Data Volumes</th>
<th>zImport for all volumes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Boot Volume</td>
<td>Additional Volume</td>
<td>Boot Volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linux</td>
<td>1 TB</td>
<td>1 TB</td>
<td>1 TB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows</td>
<td>1 TB</td>
<td>1 TB</td>
<td>1 TB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Some VMs use the MBR partitioning scheme, which only supports up to 2047 GiB boot volumes. If your instance does not boot with a boot volume that is 2 TB or larger, the VM you are using may be limited to a 2047 GiB boot volume. See the relevant AWS documentation for more information: http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/EBSVolumeTypes.html

For the AWS Import and zImport for Data Volumes import methods, the AWS ImportInstance API only supports single volume VMs. The boot volume of the protected virtual machine should not be attached to any other volume to successfully boot. For more information, see http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/API_ImportInstance.html

It is strongly recommended to perform a Failover Test to ensure that the recovered instance is successfully running on AWS.

Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - When the Recovery Site is Azure

For complete and detailed requirements, see Enterprise Guidelines for Microsoft Azure Environments.

How to Add Virtual Machines to an Existing VPG

Use the following procedure to add a virtual machine to an existing VPG.

**To add a virtual machine to a VPG:**

1. In the VPGs tab in the Zerto User Interface, select the VPG and click MORE > Edit VPG. You can also select the VPG to display the VPG details and click EDIT VPG.

   The Edit VPG wizard is displayed, enabling you to edit the VPG, including adding and removing virtual machines from the VPG.

2. In the VMs step, select the virtual machines to add and click the arrow pointing right to include these machines in the VPG. A VPG can include virtual machines that are not yet protected and virtual machines that are already protected.
   - You can view protected virtual machines by clicking Select VMs in the Advanced (Multi Target) section.

   Virtual machines protected in the maximum number of VPGs are not displayed in the Select VMs dialog.

Adding Virtual Machines to a VPG - Overview
Note: Protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

3. To define the boot order of the VPGs, click **DEFINE BOOT ORDER**.

4. Configure the settings for the new virtual machines in the same way that you configured the other virtual machines in the VPG, when you created the VPG.

5. Click **DONE**.

The virtual machines are added to the VPG. This process may take a few minutes. While the VPG definition is being updated, you cannot perform any operation on the VPG, such as adding a checkpoint, editing its properties, or recovering it.

After the VPG definition has been updated, the protected and recovery sites are then synchronized. During the synchronization period, the Protection Status displayed in the VPGs tab of the Zerto User Interface is: Meeting SLA n/m VMs where n is the number of virtual machines that were originally in the VPG, and m is the total number of virtual machines in the VPG, including the virtual machines that are currently being synced. While the virtual machines that were added are being synced, the VPG can be failed over but the failover only includes the original virtual machines in the VPG.

When the sync process for a virtual machine is complete, Zerto Virtual Manager tags the first checkpoint that includes a new virtual machine with: VM 'XXX' is fully synced where XXX is the name of the virtual machine that was synced.

When you perform a recovery operation using one of these checkpoints, or any later checkpoint, all the virtual machines that have completed syncing will be recovered.

If the virtual machines are added to a VPG replicating to a resource pool in VMware vSphere environments, Zerto checks that the additional virtual machines do not exceed the resource pool capacity, such that the sum of the virtual machine reservation is less than or equal to the resource pool CPU and storage settings.
Removing Virtual Machines from a VPG

If a user removes a virtual machine from a VPG, the checkpoints of the VPG are retained.

**Note:** Once a virtual machine is removed, it is no longer possible to recover it.

**To remove a virtual machine from an existing VPG:**

1. In the VPGs tab in the Zerto User Interface, select the VPG and click **MORE > Edit VPG**. You can also select the VPG to display the VPG details and click **EDIT VPG**.
   
   The Edit VPG wizard is displayed, enabling you to edit the VPG, including removing virtual machines from the VPG.

2. In the **VMs** step, select the virtual machines to remove and click the arrow pointing left to remove these machines from the VPG. The selected virtual machines will no longer be protected.

3. Click **Done**.

4. Select **Keep the recovery disks at the peer site** if you might reprotect the virtual machines. Checking this option means that the target replica disks for the virtual machines are saved so that they can be used as preseeded disks if the virtual machines are re-protected.

5. Click **YES** to delete.

The VPG configuration is updated. The VRA on the recovery site that handles the replication for the VPG is updated including keeping or removing the replicated data for the deleted VM, dependent on the **Keep the recovery disks at the peer site** setting during the deletion.

The locations of the saved target disks are specified in the description of the event for the virtual machines being removed, event EV0040, displayed in **MONITORING > EVENTS**.

Removing Protected Virtual Machines from the Hypervisor Inventory

From time to time, a virtual machine (VM) or a host is removed from the hypervisor inventory for various purposes, such as maintenance. If the removed VMs are protected in VPGs, the VPGs enter a pause state and the replication is paused. The removed VM is grayed out in the VMs tab in the site.

When a VPG is in a state of pause, the recovery of all the VMs, including the removed, grayed out VMs, is possible.

For VPGs to enter a state of pause and to enable the replication to pause, the following conditions must apply:

- The ZVM on the protected and recovery sites are of version 5.5 and higher.
• The VRA installed on the recovery site is of version 5.5 and higher.

To resume replication, in Edit VPG, remove from the VPG the VM that was removed from the inventory.

Modifying Protected Virtual Machine Volumes

Adding or deleting volumes for a virtual machine protected in a VPG, are automatically reflected in the volumes used for the mirror virtual machine, managed by the VRA in the recovery site.

Deleting a volume in any virtual machine protected in a VPG, causes the journal to be reset as all the checkpoints in the journal are removed.

Adding a volume in any virtual machine protected in a VPG, causes a new checkpoint to be added, to mark the action.

When adding a volume to the virtual machine the total number of disks cannot exceed 60 disks, which can be a combination of IDE and SCSI disks, where:

• Each virtual machine can have up to 2 IDE controllers.
• Each IDE controller can have a maximum of 4 IDE disks, and up to 4 SCSI controllers.
• The IDE disks and SCSI controllers can each have a maximum of 15 disks, so that the total of IDE and SCSI disks does not exceed 60 disks.

When the recovery site is VMware vSphere, any IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks.

Changing the defined size of a journal of a virtual machine in a VPG is automatically reflected in the VRA in the recovery site.

When protecting to AWS, if you add a volume to the virtual machine the total number of disks cannot exceed 12, including the boot disk.

Changing the Recovery Storage for a Protected Virtual Machine

To change the recovery storage for a virtual machine volume, the new storage must have 45GB or 25% of the storage size for the change to be performed.

Pausing the Protection of a VPG

During periods when the WAN bandwidth is utilized to its maximum, you can pause the protection of a VPG, to free up some of this bandwidth. After pausing the protection, the VPG can still be recovered to the last checkpoint written to the journal before the pause operation.

Note:

• Zerto recommends adding a checkpoint to the VPG immediately before pausing protection, if you might want to recover the VPG to the latest point in time before the pause.
• You cannot pause a VPG while a retention process is running.
To pause the protection of VPGs:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click the VPGs or VMs tab and select one or more VPGs to pause protection.
2. Click MORE > PAUSE.

A warning is displayed. If you click PROCEED in this warning, the VPG protection is paused.

Note: If the VPG was previously viewed, and the tab for this VPG is still displayed, you can access the details by selecting the tab.

The VPG protection is paused until you click Resume VPGs.

To resume the protection of VPGs:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click the VPGs or VMs tab and select one or more VPGs to resume protection.
2. Click MORE > Resume.

After resuming protection, a Bitmap Sync will most probably be performed to synchronize the protection and recovery sites.

Forcing the Synchronization of a VPG

If the protected virtual machines are updated such that they are no longer synchronized with their mirror machines in the recovery site, you can force the resynchronization of the machines. An example of when the machines can be out-of-sync is when there is a rollback of a virtual machine to a VMware snapshot. In this case, the recovery virtual machine will include changes that have been rolled back in the protected machine, so that they are no longer synchronized.

You can force the synchronization of the machines in a VPG to remedy this type of situation.

Note: You cannot force the synchronization of a VPG while a retention process is running.

To forcibly synchronize a VPG:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, select the VPGs or VMs tab and click the VPG to display the VPG details.
2. Click MORE > Force Sync.

Note: If the VPG was previously viewed, and the tab for this VPG is still displayed, you can access the details by selecting the tab.

The VPG, and it's temp discs, start to synchronize with the recovery site. As the journal fills up during the synchronization, older checkpoints are deleted from the journal to make room for the
new data, and the data prior to these checkpoints are promoted to the virtual machine virtual disks.

Thus, during the synchronization, you can recover the virtual machine to any checkpoint still in the journal, but as time progresses, the list of checkpoints available can lessen.

If the journal is not big enough to complete the synchronization without leaving at least ten minutes worth of checkpoints, the synchronization pauses, for the amount of time which is specified in the Replication Pause Time value, for the VPG to enable intervention, to ensure recovery to a checkpoint remains available.

The intervention can be, for example, increasing the size of the journal, or cloning the journal as described in Deleting a VPG on page 211, on page 166.

Handling a VPG within an Error State

When a volume connected to a virtual machine in a VPG is deleted, the VPG and all the virtual machines in that VPG enter an error state and an alert is issued.

When a VPG is in an error state, recovery operations cannot be performed.

Edit the VPG definition to resolve the error in one of the following ways.

- Remove the virtual machine that was connected to the deleted volume from the VPG:
  - In the VPGs tab in the Zerto User Interface, select the VPG to be edited and click MORE > Edit VPG.
  - In the Edit VPG wizard, go to the VMs step.
  - Select the virtual machine to be removed and click the arrow pointing left.

- Replace the volume that was deleted:
  - In the VPGs tab in the Zerto User Interface, select the VPG to be edited and click MORE > Edit VPG.
  - In the Edit VPG wizard, go to the STORAGE step and click the empty Recovery Volume Location field or select that row and click EDIT SELECTED.
  - In the Edit Volumes dialog that is displayed, choose the volume source: Storage or Preseeded volume, specify other volume options and click OK.

Notes:

If you choose a new volume, a volume initial sync is performed. During this period, new checkpoints are not added to the journal and recovery operations cannot be performed on the VPG.

If you choose a preseeded volume, a delta sync is performed. During this period, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are possible. During a delta sync, you can recover to the last checkpoint in the journal.

It is not possible to perform a move during a delta sync.
As soon as the VPG is updated, the VPG and all virtual machines in the VPG return to normal, and recovery operations can be performed on the VPG.

Deleting a VPG

You can delete a VPG and either keep the target disks to use later for preseeding if you want to reprotect any of the virtual machines in the deleted VPG or delete these disks.

*(On-premise environments)* Any retention sets stored for the VPG are not deleted and the virtual machines that were retained can be restored. You cannot delete a VPG while a retention process is running.

To delete a VPG:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click the **VPGs** or **VMs** tab and select one or more VPGs to delete.
2. Click **MORE > Delete**.
   The Delete VPG window opens.
3. Select **Keep the recovery disks at the peer site** if you might reprotect the virtual machines. Checking this option means that the target replica disks for the virtual machines are saved so that they can be used as preseeded disks if the virtual machines are re-protected.
4. Click **APPLY** to delete the VPG.
   The VPG configuration is deleted. The VRA on the recovery site that handles the replication for the VPG is updated including keeping or removing the replicated data for the deleted VPG, dependent on the **Keep the recovery disks at the peer site** setting during the deletion.
   The locations of the saved target disks are specified in the description of the event for the virtual machines being removed, event EV0040, displayed in **MONITORING > EVENTS**.

Deleting a VPG When the Status is Deleting

If, for some reason, the VPG cannot be deleted, the VPG status changes to Deleting and the substatus is VPG waiting to be removed. Attempting to delete the VPG a second time causes the following to be displayed:

- **Retry**: Retry deleting the VPG.
- **Force Delete**: Forcibly delete the VPG.
- **Cancel**: Cancel the delete operation.

Ensuring Application Consistency – Checkpoints

Checkpoints are recorded automatically every few seconds in the journal. These checkpoints ensure crash-consistency, and are written to the virtual machines journals by the Zerto Virtual Manager.

Each checkpoint has the same timestamp which is set by the Zerto Virtual Manager.

During recovery you pick a checkpoint in the journal and recover to this point. The crash-consistent checkpoints guarantee write order fidelity.
For Example:

If write A on a virtual machine in the VPG occurred before write B on a virtual machine in the VPG, then when a checkpoint is written, the journal will contain:

- Neither of the writes
- Both writes, and if they overlap the B data takes precedence
- Only A, indicating the checkpoint occurred between A and B

The coordination is done by the Zerto Virtual Manager.

You can also use a script to place the application in a quiesced mode, such as Oracle Hot Backup mode, and execute the Zerto PowerShell cmdlet Set-Checkpoint, then release the quiesced mode. For more information about Zerto PowerShell cmdlets, see Zerto Cmdlets.

### Note:

- To write application-consistent checkpoints, there is a performance impact on the virtual machine running the application as a result of the application-consistent mechanism used. This is because the guest operating system and any integrated applications will be quiesced.

  This impact on performance may be negligible and does not always happen since not all applications require these checkpoints in order to achieve successful application recovery. Also, Zerto only requires the guest and application to quiesce for a brief moment, just long enough to add a checkpoint.

As previously mentioned, checkpoints are recorded every few seconds in the journal. After a while, the number of checkpoints available from which to choose a recovery point can be in excess of thousands per VPG.

When this threshold is reached, in order to enable efficient management and use of the checkpoints, the number of checkpoints is diluted with respect to time, as follows:

- Within the latest 2 hours: All of the checkpoints are available for recovery.
- Between 2 and ~4.5 hours: There are about two to three checkpoints every 15 minutes.
- From 4.5 hours and over: 1 checkpoint is kept every 15 minutes.

### Note:  
Checkpoints which are either added manually, or marked as part of a Failover test are not diluted.

This section describes the different options available to ensure application consistency:

- Adding a Checkpoint to Identify a Key Point on page 212, below.

### Adding a Checkpoint to Identify a Key Point

In addition to the automatically generated checkpoints, you can add checkpoints manually to ensure application consistency and to identify events that might influence recovery, such as a planned switch-over
to a secondary generator. You can recover the machines in a VPG to any checkpoint in the journal, to one added automatically or to one added manually. Thus, recovery is done to a point-in-time when the data integrity of the protected virtual machines is ensured.

**Note:**
- Adding a checkpoint manually does not guarantee transaction consistency.
- Changes to a VPG that result in re-synchronization of the VPG results in all checkpoints being removed. Adding checkpoints to the journal is resumed after synchronization completes. A forced synchronization of the VPG only removes checkpoints if the journal fills up during the synchronization.

**To add a checkpoint to a VPG:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface select **ACTIONS > ADD CHECKPOINT**.

The Add Checkpoint dialog is displayed.

A list of VPGs is displayed with the requested VPG selected. You can select more VPGs to add the same checkpoint to, for example, when something is happening at your site that affects multiple VPGs.

**Note:** Crash-consistency is per VPG and not across VPGs, even if a checkpoint was added to multiple VPGs.

2. Enter a name for the checkpoint.

3. Click **SAVE**.

When testing a failover, as described in Testing Recovery on page 272, or actually performing a failover, as described in Managing Failover Live on page 296, you can choose the checkpoint as the point to recover to.
Running Scripts Before or After Recovering a VPG

Before and after executing a failover, move, or test failover, you can run powershell scripts. A pre-recovery script is always run at the beginning of the recovery operation. A post-recovery script is run after all the virtual machines are powered on at the recovery site.

The scripts must be saved to the machine where the remote Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM) is installed.

Both pre-recovery and post-recovery scripts are run by the ZVM service on the ZVM machine. The account running the ZVM service is the account that will run the scripts when they are executed.

**Note:** Zerto recommends duplicating scripts on the Zerto Virtual Managers for both the protected and recovery sites, so that if reverse replication is required, the scripts are available. The location of the script for reverse replication, on the machine where the Zerto Virtual Manager that manages the protected site is installed, must be to the same path as in the remote Zerto Virtual Manager machine. For example, if the scripts are saved to C:\ZertScripts on the remote Zerto Virtual Manager machine, they must be saved to C:\ZertScripts on the local Zerto Virtual Manager machine.

The scripts can include environment variables that can be included as part of the script itself, or passed to the script as parameters. When the script is passed an environment variable as a parameter, the variable is evaluated before executing the script. The following environment variables are available:
Managing VPGs

- **%ZertoVPGName%**: The name of the VPG. If the name includes a space, enclose the variable in double quotes ("). For example, the VPG MyVPG uses the format %ZertoVPGName% but the VPG My VPG uses the format “%ZertoVPGName%”.

- **%ZertoOperation%**: The operation being run: FailoverBeforeCommit, FailoverRollback, Test, MoveBeforeCommit, MoveRollback. Use the result returned for this variable to limit when the script runs, dependent on the operation. The scripts are run after all the virtual machines are powered on at the recovery site and the variable is set to FailoverBeforeCommit or MoveBeforeCommit. Use FailoverRollback or MoveRollback when rolling back the Failover or Move operation, to undo whatever changes a previous script has done (such as updating the DNS records).

- **%ZertoVCenterIP%**: The IP address of the hypervisor manager, VMware vCenter Server or Microsoft SCVMM, where the VPG is recovered.

- **%ZertoVCenterPort%**: The port used by the Zerto Virtual Manager to communicate with the hypervisor manager, VMware vCenter Server or Microsoft SCVMM.

- **%ZertoHypervisorManagerIP%**: The IP address of the hypervisor manager, VMware vCenter Server or Microsoft SCVMM, where the VPG is recovered.

- **%ZertoHypervisorManagerPort%**: The port used by the Zerto Virtual Manager to communicate with the hypervisor manager, VMware vCenter Server or Microsoft SCVMM.

- **%ZertoForce%**: A Boolean value, Yes/No, that dictates whether to abort the recovery operation if the script fails. For example, whether to rollback a Move operation when the script fails and returns a non-zero value.

For example, if a specific VPG should not be migrated, the pre-recovery script can determine whether to continue based on the values of the %ZertoOperation% and %ZertoVPGName%.

When specifying scripts in the definition of a VPG, enter paths to the Pre-recovery Script and Post-recovery Scripts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRE-RECOVERY SCRIPT</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>POST-RECOVERY SCRIPT</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also:

- Running Scripts Before or After Recovering a VPG on page 214
- Running Scripts Before or After Recovering a VPG on page 214

### Creating a Script

There are many ways to create scripts to run before or after recovering a VPG. The following procedure uses a Windows PowerShell file (.ps1) or a batch (.bat) file.

**To create a script:**
1. Create a file on the machine where the Zerto Virtual Manager that manages the recovery is installed.

2. Enter the script that you want to run in the file.

3. Save the file as a Windows PowerShell file (.ps1) or batch (.bat) file.

   When writing a PowerShell script, you can include the environment variables in the script. For example, the following code snippet shows the use of the %ZertoOperation% and %ZertoVPGName% environment variables:

   ```powershell
   $Operation = $env:ZertoOperation
   $VPG = $env:ZertoVPGName
   $time = Get-Date

   if ($Operation -eq "Test") {
       "$time VPG: $VPG was tested." >> "C:\ZertoScripts\VPG_DR.txt"
   }
   if ($Operation -eq "FailoverBeforeCommit") {
       "$time Failover before commit was performed. VPG: $VPG" >> "C:\ZertoScripts\VPG_DR.txt"
   }
   if ($Operation -eq "MoveBeforeCommit"){
       "$time Move before commit was performed. VPG: $VPG" >> "C:\ZertoScripts\VPG_DR.txt"
   }
   ``

   Pre-recovery scripts must be saved on the protected site Zerto Virtual Manager machine. Post-recovery scripts must be saved on the recovery site Zerto Virtual Manager machine.

   **Note:** Zerto recommends having both pre- and post-recovery scripts, available on both the protected and recovery Zerto Virtual Manager machines, so that they will work from the protected site and after reverse protection from the recovery site.

4. Update Command to run and Params fields for all the VPG definitions that you want to run the script.

   Passing parameters is implemented differently for the two script types. For information about passing command line parameters, refer to the relevant PowerShell or batch file documentation.

   **Using a BAT File**

   Windows Batch (.bat) is an executable file that does not require anything in order to run. Update Command to run and Params fields for all the VPG definitions that you want to run the script.

   **Command to run:** `<script_including_path>`

   ```plaintext
   C:\ZertoScripts\PostScript.bat
   ```
Use quotes (" ) around the path if it includes spaces. The bat file is an executable file and is therefore included in the Command to run field.

**Params:** `<Zerto_Params>`, for example:

```
%ZertoOperation% %ZertoVPGName%
```

Using a PowerShell Script

Windows PowerShell scripts require Windows PowerShell (.exe) to execute. To specify a PowerShell script, update **Command to run** and **Params** fields for all the VPG definitions that you want to run the script.

**Command to run:** powershell.exe

**Params:** `<script_including_path> <Zerto_Params>`, for example:

```
C:\ZertoScripts\PostScript.ps1 %ZertoOperation% %ZertoVPGName%
```

Use quotes (" ) around the path if it includes spaces.

**Note:** You might have to set the remote signed execution policy.

**Note:** Zerto recommends testing both PowerShell and batch scripts by running them from the command line, to ensure that they run correctly.

Example Scripts

**Important:** The scripts are provided by example only and are not supported under any Zerto support program or service.

The following script is an example of how to track failover tests.

The following script, `c:\ZertoScripts\TestedVPGs.bat`, writes the VPG name and date to the `ListOfTestedVPGs.txt` file every time a failover test is run:

```
SET isodt=%date:~10,4%-%date:~7,2%-%date:~4,2%
%time:~0,2%-%time:~3,2%-%time:~6,2%
IF %1==Test ECHO %2 %isodt% >> c:\ZertoScripts\Results\TestedVPGs.txt
```

Where `%1` is the first parameter in the list of parameters, `%ZertoOperation%`, and `%2` is the second parameter in the list of parameters, `%ZertoVPGName%`. 
Exporting and Importing VPG Definitions

You can save VPG definitions to an external file and import these definitions back to Zerto, for example, exporting the settings before uninstalling a version of Zerto and importing the settings after reinstalling Zerto.

**Note:** Zerto regularly exports settings to the `Zerto_Installation_Folder\Zerto Virtual Replication\ExportedSettings` folder. You can use one of these exported files instead of creating a new export file. The default location of Zerto_Installation_Folder is `C:\Program Files\Zerto`.

To export VPG settings:

1. Open the Zerto Diagnostics application. For example, via Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics.
   
   The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Export Protection Group Settings option and click Next.

3. Select the destination for the file to contain exported settings and specify the Zerto Virtual Manager IP address and port where the VPGs are protecting virtual machines.

4. Click Next.

Note: If the file `TestedVPGs.txt` does not exist it is created, as long as the folder, `c:\ZertoScripts\Results`, exists.
The list of exported VPGs is displayed.

5. Click Done.

**Note:** If you are uninstalling Zerto, the VPGs are deleted. To prevent having to perform a full synchronization when the VPG definitions are imported, Zerto recommends deleting the VPGs in the Zerto User Interface, keeping their target disks.

**To import VPG settings:**

1. Click Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics.

   The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Import Protection Group Settings option.

3. Click Next.

4. Select the file previously exported and enter the Zerto Virtual Manager IP address and port specified when exporting the VPGs.

5. Click Next.

   The list of exported VPGs is displayed.

6. Select the VPGs to import. Only VPGs with names that are not already defined can be imported. VPGs in the import files with the same name as an existing VPG are disabled.

7. Click Next.
The list of imported VPGs is displayed. If the VPG could not be imported, the reason for the failure is specified.

**Note:** If a host was removed from and then re-added to the environment it is advisable to wait approximately 5 minutes from when the host was re-added before performing the import of the VPGs.

8. Click **Done**.

**VPG Statuses and Synchronization Triggers**

During normal operations the VPG status can change. For example, a change can be made to the VPG definition, or an operation such as move or failover is performed on the VPG, or an external event impacts the system such as the WAN going down. When the status changes, resulting in the VPG being synchronized, for example with a **Delta Sync**, the estimated time to complete the synchronization is displayed under the VPG status, and if relevant, the synchronization trigger, such as **Network Congestion**.

See also:

- VPG Statuses on page 220
- VPG Synchronization Triggers on page 231

**VPG Statuses**

The following statuses are displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Substatus</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deleting</td>
<td>Deleting the VPG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VPG waiting to be removed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failing Over</td>
<td>Committing Failover</td>
<td>The VPG is being failed over.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failing over - Before commit</td>
<td>A VPG being failed over is in the initial stage, before committing the failover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Promoting</td>
<td>The failover has completed and the data from the journal is being promoted to the failed over virtual machine disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rolling back Failover</td>
<td>The failover is being rolled back to prior to the failover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Substatus</td>
<td>Comment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History Not Meeting SLA</td>
<td>See <em>Not Meeting SLA</em>, below.</td>
<td>The VPG is meeting the RPO SLA setting but not the journal history.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Initial Sync</td>
<td>After adding a virtual machine to an existing VPG not meeting the journal history SLA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initializing</td>
<td>Creating VPG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Syncing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Initial Sync</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Syncing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Initial Sync</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting SLA or Based on Alerts</td>
<td>–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bitmap Syncing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delta Syncing (When Force Sync is applied)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery is Possible</td>
<td>After a rollback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rolling Back</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>User Paused Protection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Initial Sync</td>
<td>After adding a virtual machine to an existing VPG meeting SLA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zerto Virtual Manager paused protection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving</td>
<td>Committing Move</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Moving - Before commit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Promoting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rolling back Move</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VPG Statuses and Synchronization Triggers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Substatus</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Not Meeting SLA</strong></td>
<td>Site Delta Sync (when Force Sync is not applied)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Delta Syncing a volume</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Error</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Journal/recovery disks are missing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Journal storage error</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Needs configuration</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery storage error</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recovery storage profile error</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Site disconnection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Site disconnection. No checkpoints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VM not protected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Full Syncing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Initial Sync</td>
<td>After adding a virtual machine to an existing VPG not meeting the SLA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VPG has no VMs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Recovered</strong></td>
<td>–</td>
<td>The VPG has been recovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>RPO Not Meeting SLA</strong></td>
<td>See Not Meeting SLA, above.</td>
<td>The VPG is meeting the journal history SLA setting but not the RPO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Volume Initial Sync</td>
<td>After adding a virtual machine to an existing VPG not meeting the RPO SLA.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following provides full description of the substatuses:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substatus</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Backing Up</td>
<td>Retention process is running.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substatus</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Bitmap Syncing     | A change tracking mechanism of the protected machines during a disconnected state or when a VRA buffer is full. In these situations, Zerto starts to maintain a smart bitmap in memory, in which it tracks and records the storage areas that changed. Since the bitmap is kept in memory, Zerto does not require any LUN or volume per VPG at the protected side.

  **Note:** The VRA buffer is set via the Amount of VRA RAM value, specified when the VRA is installed.

The bitmap is small and scales dynamically, containing references to the areas of the protected disk that have changed but not the actual I/O. The bitmap is stored locally on the VRA within the available resources. For example, when a VRA goes down and is then rebooted.

When required, Zerto starts to maintain a smart bitmap in memory, to track and record storage areas that change. When the issue that caused the bitmap sync is resolved, the bitmap is used to check updates to the protected disks and send any updates to the recovery site. A bitmap sync occurs when any of the following conditions occur:

- Synchronization after WAN failure or when the load over the WAN is too great for the WAN to handle, in which case the VPGs with the lower priorities will be the first to enter a bitmap sync.

- When there is storage congestion at the recovery site, for example when the VRA at the recovery site cannot handle all the writes received from the protected site in a timely fashion.

- When the VRA at the recovery site goes down and is then rebooted, for example during a Zerto upgrade.

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are still possible, assuming there are valid checkpoints in the journal. If a disaster occurs requiring a failover during a bitmap synchronization, the VPG status changes to **Recovery Possible** and you can recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal.

For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substatus</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> If the synchronization takes longer than the configured history, all the checkpoints in the journal can be lost, preventing a failover from being performed. For the resolution of this situation, see <a href="#">To configure disaster recovery policies: on page 259</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Committing Failover</td>
<td>Failing over the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Committing Move</td>
<td>Completing the move, including removing the protected virtual machines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Creating VPG</td>
<td>The VPG is being created based on the saved definition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleting the VPG</td>
<td>Deleting the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substatus</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Delta Syncing</strong></td>
<td>The Delta Sync uses a checksum comparison to minimize the use of network resources. A Delta Sync is used when the protected virtual machine disks and the recovery disks should already be synchronized, except for a possible few changes to the protected disks, for example:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• When a virtual machine was added to the VPG and the target recovery disk is defined as a preseeded disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• After a source VRA upgrade: Depending on the nature of the upgrade, a VRA upgrade on the protected side may trigger either a Delta Sync or a Bitmap Sync. See the version release notes to determine if a sync will be triggered with a source VRA upgrade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• For reverse protection after a move or failover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A Force Sync operation was manually initiated on the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A host protecting virtual machines was restarted and the protected virtual machines on the host had not been Live Migrated to other hosts in the cluster or a protected virtual machine was Live Migrated to another host without a VRA, and then Live Migrated back to the original host.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are still possible, assuming there are valid checkpoints in the journal. If a disaster occurs requiring a failover during a delta synchronization, you can recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It is <em>not possible</em> to perform a move during a delta sync.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td>Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Delta syncing a volume

Synchronization when only delta changes for a volume need synchronizing, for example, when a volume is added to a protected virtual machine in a VPG, and a preseeded disk is used.

For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on.

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are still possible, assuming there are valid checkpoints in the journal. If a disaster occurs requiring a failover during a delta volume synchronization, you can recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal.

It is *not possible* to perform a move during a delta sync.

### Note:

Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substatus</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delta syncing a volume</td>
<td>Synchronization when only delta changes for a volume need synchronizing, for example, when a volume is added to a protected virtual machine in a VPG, and a preseeded disk is used. For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on. During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are still possible, assuming there are valid checkpoints in the journal. If a disaster occurs requiring a failover during a delta volume synchronization, you can recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal. It is <em>not possible</em> to perform a move during a delta sync.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Error</td>
<td>Problem situation, for example, when a ZVM is disconnected from a VRA used to protect virtual machines. The VPG cannot be recovered until the problem is resolved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failing over - Before commit</td>
<td>Preparing and checking the VPG virtual machines in the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substatus</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Syncing</td>
<td>Full synchronization to ensure that the protected disks and recovery disks are the same after some change to the system. This type of sync is the same as an Initial Sync but occurs after protection started. In general, this type of sync should not happen. For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on. During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal. Also, recovery operations are not possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Sync</td>
<td>Synchronization performed after creating the VPG to ensure that the protected disks and recovery disks are the same. Recovery operations cannot occur until after the initial synchronization has completed. For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on. Adding a virtual machine to a VPG is similar to creating a new VPG, a volume initial sync is performed for the new virtual machine. For more information, see Volume Initial Sync on page 230.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal storage error</td>
<td>There was an I/O error to the journal. For example, if the journal was full and the size was increased. Once the problem is resolved a synchronization is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moving - Before commit</td>
<td>Preparing and checking the VPG virtual machines in the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substatus</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Needs Configuration</td>
<td>One or more configuration settings are missing, for example, when reverse protection is not specified or a virtual machine is added to a vApp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promoting</td>
<td>Updating recovered virtual machines in the VPG with data from the journal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery is possible</td>
<td>Communication with the Zerto Virtual Manager at the protected site is down so continuing protection is halted, but recovery on the remote site is available (compare with Site disconnection on page 229).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery storage error</td>
<td>There was an I/O error to the recovery storage. For example, the storage is almost full or the virtual machines are turned off and the recovery disks are inaccessible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery storage profile error</td>
<td>The storage profile in the recovery site specified to be used by the VPG cannot be found.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling back</td>
<td>Rolling back to an initial status, for example, after canceling a cloning operation on the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling back Failover</td>
<td>Rolling back a Failover operation before committing it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling back Move</td>
<td>Rolling back a Move operation before committing it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site disconnection</td>
<td>Communication with the Zerto Virtual Manager at the remote, recovery, site is down so continuing protection is halted (compare with Recovery is possible on page 229).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site disconnection. No checkpoints</td>
<td>Communication with the Zerto Virtual Manager at the remote, recovery, site is down and there are no checkpoints to use to recover the VPG at the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syncing</td>
<td>Status while type of synchronization is being evaluated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User paused protection</td>
<td>Protection is paused to enable solving a Journal disk space problem, for example, by increasing the disk size or cloning the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VM not protected</td>
<td>A virtual machine in the VPG is no longer being protected. For example, when the virtual machine was moved to another host without a VRA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substatus</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Full Syncing</td>
<td>Synchronization when a full synchronization is required on a single volume. For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on. During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal. Also, recovery operations are not possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Initial Sync</td>
<td>Synchronization when a full synchronization is required on a single volume, for example, when changing the target storage or adding a virtual machine to the VPG without using a preseeded disk. For synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on so that the VRA has an active IO stack, which is only available when the virtual machine is powered on. Recovery can be performed on a VPG while a Volume Initial Sync is being performed for virtual machines added to an existing VPG. However, only the virtual machines that were already in the VPG can be recovered. The new virtual machines can only be recovered after the volume initial sync for them is complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Note:</strong> Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, depending on when the promotion to the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or initial sync, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Managing VPGs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Substatus</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VPG has no VMs</td>
<td>A configured VPG where the virtual machines have been removed from it, for example when changing both the storage and host for the virtual machines in the VPG, causes the VPG to be recreated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPG waiting to be removed</td>
<td>An attempt to remove the VPG failed and it must be forcibly removed. For details, see Deleting a VPG When the Status is Deleting on page 211.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Virtual Manager paused protection</td>
<td>Protection is paused to enable solving a Journal disk space problem, for example, by increasing the disk size or cloning the VPG.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### VPG Synchronization Triggers

The following synchronization triggers can be applied:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trigger</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Force Sync</td>
<td>The user requested to synchronize the VPG, as described in Forcing the Synchronization of a VPG on page 209.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Congestion</td>
<td>The network bandwidth is not wide enough to handle all the data, causing some of the data to be backed up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected Storage Error</td>
<td>An I/O error occurred to a protected virtual machine, after the data was sent to the recovery side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected VRA Congestion</td>
<td>The host where the VRA is installed is highly loaded: many updates are made to the protected machines at the same time, causing a time lapse before the updates are passed to the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery or Journal Storage Error</td>
<td>There was an I/O error either to the recovery storage or journal, for example if the journal was full and the size was increased. Once the problem is resolved a synchronization is required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Storage Congestion</td>
<td>The recovery storage is being written to a lot, causing a delay for some of the data passed from the protected site to be written to disk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery VRA Communication Problem</td>
<td>A network error, such as the network being down for a period, requires a synchronization of the VPG between the two sites, for example a bitmap sync.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPG Configuration Changed</td>
<td>The configuration of the VPG changed resulting in a synchronization being required. For example, the size of the journal was changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Managing VRAs

A VRA is a Zerto virtual machine that manages the replication of virtual machines across sites. A VRA must be installed on every hypervisor that hosts virtual machines that require protecting in the protected site and on every hypervisor that will host the replicated virtual machines in the recovery site. The VRA compresses the data that is passed across the WAN from the protected site to the recovery site. The VRA automatically adjusts the compression level according to CPU usage, including totally disabling it if needed.

The VRA is a custom, very thin, Linux-based virtual machine with a small footprint, disk–memory and CPU -and increased security since there are a minimum number of services installed.

Zerto recommends installing a VRA on every host so that if protected virtual machines are moved from one host in the cluster to another host in the cluster there is always a VRA to protect the moved virtual machines.

A VRA can manage a maximum of 1500 volumes, whether these are volumes being protected or recovered.

**Note:** VRAs and shadow VRAs are configured and managed by the Zerto Virtual Manager. You cannot take snapshots of VRAs as snapshots cause operational problems for the VRAs.

The priority assigned to a VPG dictates the bandwidth used. The Zerto Virtual Manager distributes bandwidth among the VRAs based on this priority and the VPGs with higher priorities are handled before writes from VPGs with lower priorities.

There are a number of tasks that you might need to perform on VRAs, including installing a new VRA on a host added to the hypervisor management tool or uninstalling VRAs and moving the data maintained by a VRA to another VRA when a host requires maintenance.

During normal operation, a VRA might require more disks than a single virtual machine can support. If this situation arises, the VRA creates new shadow VRA virtual machines, used by the VRA to maintain additional disks (a diskbox). A shadow VRA does not have an operating system and therefore does not have an IP address, or use Integration Services. A shadow VRA is created pro-actively at the recovery site. Similar to a VRA, a shadow VRA must be left to Zerto to manage, and must not be modified or removed for any reason.

The following VRA management options are described in this chapter section:

- Installing a VRA on page 233
- Upgrading VRAs on page 237
- Editing VRA Settings on page 238
- Changing a Recovery VRA on page 240
- Uninstalling VRAs on page 242
- Handling a VRA in an Error State (Ghost VRA) on page 242
- Managing Protection When Moving a Host to a Different Cluster on page 243
Monitoring VRAs is described in Monitoring Virtual Replication Appliances on page 186.

Installing a VRA

It is recommended to install a VRA on every host in every site so that if protected virtual machines are moved from one host in the cluster to another host in the cluster there is always a VRA to protect the moved virtual machines.

VRA Installation Requirements

To **install** a VRA you require the following on the **host**:

- 15GB storage space
- At least 1GB of reserved memory.
- *(vSphere only)* The ESX/ESXi version must be in accordance with supported ESX/ESXi versions in the Interoperability Matrix, and Ports 22 and 443 must be enabled on the host during the installation.
- Port 8100 must be enabled on SCVMM.
- *(Hyper-V only)* Minimum PowerShell version: 4.0
- The following PowerShell cmdlet has been run:
  
  ```powershell
  Install-WindowsFeature -Name Hyper-V -IncludeManagementTools -Restart
  ```

**Before You Begin:**

You must know the following information to install a VRA:

- *(vSphere only)* If the ESXi version is 5.5 or higher and the VRA should connect to the host with user credentials, or if the ESXi version is lower than 5.5, the password to access the host root account.

  **Note:** For ESXi versions 5.5 or higher, by default the VRA connects to the host with a vSphere Installation Bundle, VIB. Therefore, it is not necessary to enter the password used to access the host root account.

- The **storage** the VRA will use, and the **local network** used by the **host**.
- The **network settings** to access the **peer** site; either the default gateway or the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway.

  **Note:** When the gateway is not required, you can specify 0.0.0.0 as the gateway, for example when performing self replication.

- If a **static IP** is used, instead of DHCP, which is the Zerto recommendation, you need to know the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway to be used by the VRA.

  **Note:** In a non-production environment it is often convenient to use DHCP to allocate an IP to the VRA. In...
a production environment this is not recommended. For example, if the DHCP server changes the IP allocation on a reboot, the VRA does not handle the change.

- If the **peer site VRAs** are **not** on the **default gateway**, you must **set up routing** to enable the VRAs on this site to communicate with the peer site VRAs before defining the VRAs.
  
  - Setting up routing **after** defining VRAs only applies to VRAs installed after the routing is set.
  - Any **existing VRA** is not affected and access to these VRAs continues via the default gateway.
  - If the default gateway stops being used, you must reinstall the VRAs that were installed before setting up paired site routing.
  
- **(vSphere only)** For the duration of the installation of the VRA, the Zerto Virtual Manager enables SSH in the vCenter Server.

- **(vSphere only)** You must know the following information to install a VRA:
  
  - The **password** to access the **host root account**, for ESXi 5.x.
  - The **datastore** the VRA will use and the **local network** used by the host.
  - The **network settings** to access the **peer site**; either the default gateway or the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway.
  
  - If a **static IP** is used, instead of DHCP, which is the Zerto recommendation, you need to know the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway to be used by the VRA.

  **Note:** In a non-production environment it is often convenient to use DHCP to allocate an IP to the VRA. In a production environment this is not recommended. For example, if the DHCP server changes the IP allocation on a reboot, the VRA does not handle the change.

If the peer site VRAs are not on the default gateway, you must set up routing to enable the VRAs on this site to communicate with the peer site VRAs before defining the VRAs. Setting up routing after defining VRAs only applies to VRAs installed after the routing is set. Any existing VRA is not affected and access to these VRAs continues via the default gateway. If the default gateway stops being used, you must reinstall the VRAs that were installed before setting up paired site routing.

**To set up routing:**

1. In the SETUP > VRas tab, select **MORE > Paired Site Routing**.

   The Configure Paired Site Routing dialog is displayed.
Managing VRAs

2. Click **Enable Paired Site Routing**.

3. Specify the following, and then click **SAVE**:
   - **Address**: The IP address of the next hop at the local site, the router or gateway address, that is used to access the peer site network.
   - **Subnet Mask**: The subnet mask for the peer site network.
   - **Gateway**: The gateway for the peer site network.

   These access details are used to access all VRAs installed on the peer site after the information is saved.

To install a Zerto Virtual Replication Appliance (VRA) on a host:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click **SETUP > VRAs**.

2. Select a host which requires a VRA and click **NEW VRA**.

   The Configure and Install VRA dialog is displayed.
If you selected a cluster or multiple hosts, the VRA is installed on the first host in the displayed list.

3. Specify the following **Host Details**:
   - **Host**: The host under which the VRA is installed. The drop-down displays the hosts which do not have a VRA installed, with the selected host displayed by default.
   - **Host Root Password**: For future use.
   - **Storage**: The storage that contains the OS disks of the VRA VM. You can install more than one VRA on the same storage.
   - **Network**: The network used to access the VRA.
   - **VRA RAM**: The amount of memory to allocate to the VRA. The amount determines the maximum buffer size for the VRA for buffering IOs written by the protected virtual machines, before the writes are sent over the network to the recovery VRA. The recovery VRA also buffers the incoming IOs until they are written to the journal. If a buffer becomes full, a Bitmap Sync is performed after space is freed up in the buffer. For details, refer to Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines.
   - **VRA Bandwidth Group**: Choose the VRA Bandwidth Group from the dropdown list. If you want to create a new VRA group, type in the name of the new group and click **CREATE**. You can then choose the new group from the dropdown list.

4. Specify the following VRA Network Details:
   - **Configuration**: Either have the IP address allocated via a static IP address or a DHCP server.

You group VRAs together when VRAs use different networks so they can be grouped by network, for example when the protected and recovery sites are managed by the same SCVMM and you want to replicate from the branch site to the main site. Within a group the priority assigned to a VPG dictates the bandwidth used and is applicable within a group and not between groups. Thus, a VPG with a high priority is allocated bandwidth before VPGs with lower priorities. VPGs that are on VRAs with different VRA groups, for example, VPG1 on VRA1 in group1 and VPG2 on VRA2 in group2, do not affect each other, as the priority is relevant only within each group.
If you select the Static option, which is the recommended option, enter the following:

- **Address**: The IP address for the VRA.
- **Subnet Mask**: The subnet mask for the network. The default value is 255.255.255.0.
- **Default Gateway**: The default gateway for the network.

5. Click **INSTALL**.

The VRA installation starts and the status is displayed in the TASKS popup dialog in the status bar and under **MONITORING > TASKS**.

The VRA displayed name, and DNS name, is Z-**VRA-hostname**. If a virtual machine with this name exists, for example when a previous VRA was not deleted, the VRA name has a number appended to it.

**Upgrading VRAs**

This section is applicable if **Auto-Upgrade Virtual Replication Appliances** was not selected when upgrading Zerto, or if a manual VRA upgrade is required.

- If a newer version of the installed VRAs exists, you can continue to use the current VRAs with the new version of Zerto, or you can upgrade these VRAs from within the Zerto User Interface.
- VRAs installed with the previous version of Zerto can work with VRAs installed with the current version of Zerto in any combination (all from one version or a mix of VRA versions) as long as the VRAs are only one version lower than the version of Zerto installed on the site.
- Zerto recommends that you **always upgrade the VRAs** on your site to the latest version.
- Not all new installations of Zerto require upgrading VRAs. If your VRA is outdated relative to your current version of Zerto and an upgrade is available, the VRA version will be reported in the column as outdated. In addition, an alert is issued on the site using the old VRA and on any site that is paired with it.

**Note:** You can move the mouse over the **Outdated** value to display the VRA version as a tooltip.

**Considerations when upgrading VRAs**

- VRAs managing protected virtual machines: Either live migrate the protected virtual machines and storage managed by the VRA to another host with a VRA, or upgrade the VRA without migrating the virtual machines and a delta sync will be performed following the upgrade.
- Upgrading a VRA that manages the recovery of virtual machines results in a bitmap sync being performed after the upgrade. Note that the time to upgrade a VRA is short so the bitmap sync should also be quick.

**To upgrade VRAs:**

1. For a VRA protecting virtual machines, if live migrating the protected virtual machines:
   a. Remove affinity rules for protected virtual machines on the host with the VRA to be upgraded.
b. Migrate these protected machines from the host to another host with a VRA.

2. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETUP > VRAs, select the VRAs to upgrade, and then click MORE > Upgrade.

The Upgrade VRAs dialog is displayed, listing the selected VRAs and whether an upgrade is available.

3. Review the list for the VRAs that you want to upgrade. Deselect any VRAs that you decide not to upgrade.

4. Click Upgrade Selected VRAs.

5. The upgrade progress is displayed in the VRAs tab.
   - After the upgrade, a bitmap sync is performed at both the protected and recovered sites.

Note: The VRA name does not change, even if the naming convention in the latest version is different.

Note: You do not need to upgrade Integration Services on a VRA.

Editing VRA Settings

If you need to change the host password, VRA Group or network settings for a VRA, for example when the gateway to the VRA is changed, you can do this by editing the VRA.

To edit the VRA:
1. In the Zerto User Interface, click **SETUP > VRAs**, select the VRAs to edit, and click **MORE > Edit**. The Edit VRA dialog is displayed.

![Edit VRA Dialog](image)

2. Edit the host root password if the password for the host has changed. To display the password in plain text, click in the checkbox next to the field.

3. Edit the group if required.

   - **VRA Group:** You can change the free text to change the group that a VRA belongs. If you create a group and then change the name when editing the VRA so that there is no VRA in the site that belongs to the originally specified group, the group is automatically deleted from the system.

4. To create a new group, enter the new group name over the text **New group** and click **CREATE**.

5. Edit the VRA network settings as follows:

   - **Configuration:** Either have the IP address allocated via a static IP address or a DHCP server. If the VRA was originally installed with a static IP, you cannot change this to DHCP. If the VRA was originally installed to use a DHCP server, you can change this to use a static IP. Zerto always recommends using a static IP.

   - **Address:** The static IP address for the VRA to communicate with the Zerto Virtual Manager.

   - **Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for the network. The default value is **255.255.255.0**

   - **Default Gateway:** The default mask for the network.

6. Click **SAVE**.

   The following folder is created as part of the VRA installation and must not be removed:

   C:\zerto-temp-<storage_name> - VRA installation files. `<storage_name>` signifies the target host.

   When a VRA is installed using the local storage (c:\), there is only one folder with this name.
When a VRA is installed on remote storage, a second folders with the same name is also created where the VRA is installed

**Changing a Recovery VRA**

When a VPG is defined, the recovery host to use for each virtual machine in the VPG is specified. If required, you can edit the recovery host for a single or multiple protected virtual machines. To edit the recovery host for selected virtual machines, see To change a recovery VRA for selected VMs: on page 240. To edit the recovery host for all protected virtual machines at once, see To automatically change the recovery host for all VMs: on page 241.

➢ To change a recovery VRA for selected VMs:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETUP > VRAs.

2. Select the VRA to change and click MORE > Change VM Recovery VRA.

   The EDIT VM Recovery VRA window is displayed, listing all the virtual machines being recovered on that host.

   ![EDIT VM RECOVERY VRA](image)

3. Review the list and select the virtual machines to change the target host to another specified target host.

4. To change the target host for the selected VM:

   - Click the Select the replacement host drop-down list to get a list of available target hosts and choose the target host.
   - Click the edit pencil icon under the Target Host column to get a list of available target hosts and choose the target host.
   - Click Auto Select the Replacement Host and the best suitable host will be automatically selected for that virtual machine. The auto-selection is based on a load-balancing algorithm.

   You can move some virtual machines to one replacement target host, and then by repeating the operation, you can move other virtual machines to a different target host.
- Validation is performed to make sure the selected target host can be used. For example, the datastores used by both the VRAs are accessible from both hosts.
- Any implications of the change, such as whether synchronization might be required after the change is also displayed.

5. Click **APPLY**
   - During this procedure you cannot edit the affected VPGs nor attempt a failover, move, failover test, or clone operation.
   - At the end of the procedure a Bitmap Sync might be required to resynchronize the protected machines with the recovery VRAs.

To automatically change the recovery host for all VMs:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click **SETUP > VRAs**.
2. Select the VRA to change and click **MORE > Evacuate Host**.

   The EVACUATE HOST window is displayed, listing all the virtual machines being recovered on that host and their automatically selected target host.

   ![EVACUATE HOST](image)

   The auto-selection is based on a load-balancing algorithm. The suggested hosts must share the same cluster as the evacuated host meaning load-balancing will be executed at the cluster level.

   - Validation is performed to make sure the selected target host can be used. For example, the datastores used by both the VRAs are accessible from both hosts.
   - Any implications of the change, such as whether synchronization might be required after the change is also displayed.

3. Click **APPLY**.
   - During this procedure you cannot edit the affected VPGs nor attempt a failover, move, failover test, or clone operation.
   - At the end of the procedure a Delta Sync might be required to resynchronize the protected machines with the recovery VRAs.
Uninstalling VRAs

VRAs are uninstalled via the Zerto User Interface and not via SCVMM. You cannot uninstall a VRA which is used to protect or recover virtual machines.

**For a VRA protecting virtual machines:** Before uninstalling the VRA, remove affinity rules for protected virtual machines on the host and live migrate these protected virtual machines to another host in the cluster with a VRA installed.

**For a VRA recovering virtual machines:** Before uninstalling the VRA, change the host for all virtual machines in VPGs recovering to this VRA to another host as described in Changing a Recovery VRA on page 240. A bitmap sync occurs to synchronize the VPGs with the new host.

| Note: | If the VRA has crashed, or was accidentally deleted, it must be forcibly uninstalled, as described in Handling a VRA in an Error State (Ghost VRA) on page 242. |

For a VRA in a cluster, you can remove it and then install a new VRA. However, to ensure that virtual machines in the cluster are not moved to the host without a VRA from the time the VRA is removed to the time a new VRA is installed, it is recommended to perform the following procedure.

➢ **To uninstall a VRA with virtual machines being recovered to it:**

1. When the VRA to be removed is in a cluster, make sure that virtual machines in the cluster are not moved to the host without a VRA from the time the VRA is removed to the time a new VRA is installed.
2. Remove affinity rules for protected virtual machines on the host and live migrate any protected virtual machines to another host with a VRA installed.
3. Change the host for all virtual machines in VPGs recovering to this VRA to another host as described in Changing a Recovery VRA on page 240.
4. Wait for any synchronization to complete.
5. Either select the VRAs to uninstall in the VRAs tab or for a single VRA display the VRA details by clicking the VRA Name link in the VRAs tab, and click Actions > Uninstall.
6. Once the VRAs are completely removed, install a new VRA on the host.

After the VRA is uninstalled, connectivity from that VRA to any Zerto Cloud Connector is lost. After a VRA is reinstalled on the host, the ports that were used for the connection to the Zerto Cloud Connector are not reused and new ports must be opened in the firewall for the cloud site. For details about Zerto Cloud Connectors, refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

Handling a VRA in an Error State (Ghost VRA)

When an event occurs that causes a VRA to enter an error state, for example the host machine crashes or the VRA or a shadow VRA is accidentally deleted, if the VRA has shared storage disks that are accessible by other hosts in the site, you can copy these disks to another VRA in the site.

➢ **To recover VRA disks from a ghost VRA:**

Uninstalling VRAs
1. Remove the VPGs, keeping the recovery disks when removing to use as preseeded disks.
2. Uninstall the VRA.
3. Reinstall the VRA, as described in Installing a VRA on page 233.
4. Recreate the VPGs using the preseeded disks.

Managing Protection When Moving a Host to a Different Cluster

When a host machine has to be moved to another cluster:

- **For a host machine on the protected site:** Remove affinity rules for protected virtual machines on the host that is going to be moved and live migrate these machines to any other host in the cluster with a VRA installed. Shut down the VRA before moving the host.

- **For a host machine on the recovery site:** Shut down the VRA. After shutting down the VRA VPGs with virtual machines being recovered to the VRA will enter an error state. Move the host to the new cluster and power on the VRA. The VPGs in an error state will enter a bitmap sync and then resume a Meeting SLA status.

**Note:** Any VPGs that were defined with a recovery resource pool in the original cluster must be edited to change the default and virtual machine specific target host settings for the new cluster, even when the new cluster has a resource pool that is displayed in the VPG definitions.
Managing a Zerto Virtual Manager

The Zerto Virtual Manager runs as a Windows service and connects to Zerto components, such as VRAs, as well as hypervisor management tools, such as VMware vCenter Server and Microsoft SCVMM.

For the maximum number of virtual machines, either being protected or recovered to the Zerto Virtual Manager, see Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines.

The following topics are described in this section:

- Checking Connectivity Between Zerto Components on page 244
- Reconfiguring the Zerto Virtual Manager Setup on page 245
- Reconfiguring the Microsoft SQL Server Database Used by the Zerto Virtual Manager on page 248
- Replacing the SSL Certificate on page 249
- Pairing to Another Site and Unpairing Sites on page 249

Checking Connectivity Between Zerto Components

If you think that there are connectivity problems to or from a Zerto Virtual Manager, you can use the Zerto diagnostics utility to check the connectivity.

➢ To check connectivity between Zerto Virtual Manager components:

1. Open the Zerto Diagnostics application. For example, via Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics.
   
The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Test Connectivity to Zerto components option and click Next.
   
The IP Connectivity dialog is displayed.
You can use this dialog to check the following:

- TCP communication between the Zerto Virtual Managers (ZVMs) on the protected and recovery sites. The default port, specified during installation, is 9081.
- Communication between VRAs on the protected and recovery sites, via the control port and the data port.

3. Select the connectivity you want to test and in the case of the Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM), specify the TCP communication port specified during the installation, if the default port, 9081, was changed.

4. Specify the type of test to perform:
   - **Server**: Test for incoming communication.
   - **Client**: Test for outgoing communication. Specify the IP address of the receiving Zerto Virtual Manager.

5. Click **Next** to test the specified connectivity.

   The Server option listens for communication from a paired VRA. Stop listening by clicking **Stop**.

   The Client options tests the client; on completion a result dialog is displayed.

6. Click **Stop** (server test) or **OK** (client test) to return to the Zerto Diagnostics dialog.

**Reconfiguring the Zerto Virtual Manager Setup**

When installing Zerto, you provide the IP address of SCVMM to connect the Zerto Virtual Manager with, and the IP address of the machine where the Zerto Virtual Manager runs to enable running the Zerto User
You can change these IP addresses if necessary, using the Zerto Diagnostics utility.

**To reconfigure the Zerto Virtual Manager:**

1. Click **Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics**.

   The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Reconfigure Zerto Virtual Manager option and click **Next**.

   The installation settings for the connection to the SCVMM are displayed.

3. Change the IP and username and password if necessary.

   **IP / Host Name:** The IP address or host name of the machine where SCVMM runs.

   **Domain\User Name:** The user name for an administrator to SCVMM. The name can be entered using either of the following formats:
   - username
   - domain\username

   **Password:** A valid password for the given user name.

4. Click **Next**.

   The dialog for Zerto Virtual Manager setup is displayed:
Managing a Zerto Virtual Manager

**ZVM VM IP to be used by SCVMM**: The IP to access the Zerto Virtual Manager from the Zerto User Interface. If the machine has more than one NIC, select the appropriate IP from the list, otherwise the IP that is displayed is the only option.

**TCP Port (ZVM<->ZVMs on other sites)**: The port used for communication between Zerto Virtual Managers.

- **Both the protected and recovery sites belong to the same enterprise**: If you change the value, when pairing sites, use the TCP port value you specify here.

- **An enterprise using a cloud service provider to supply disaster recovery services**: You must not change this value.

**TCP Port (ZVM->VBA)**: The port used for communication between the Zerto Virtual Manager and the Virtual Backup Appliance.

**HTTP Certificate**: Check Replace SSL Certificate and browse for a certificate, if you change the certificate you have been using.

5. **Click Next**.

The connectivity is checked.

---

**Note**: If one of the tasks fails, click the link for information about why it failed. Usually it is a mistake when entering an IP address.
6. Click **Next**.
   The Zerto Virtual Manager is reconfigured.

7. Click **Finish**.

If you changed the IP address of the Zerto Virtual Manager or the TCP port it uses to communicate with paired Zerto Virtual Managers on other sites, you must unpair these sites, both from this site and from the remote sites and then pair the sites again.

**Reconfiguring the Microsoft SQL Server Database Used by the Zerto Virtual Manager**

1. Click **Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics**.
   The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Change SQL Server Credentials option and click **Next**.
   The installation settings for the SQL Server are displayed. Change the IP and username and password if necessary.

**Server Name:** The domain name and server instance to connect to, with the format `<server_name><instance_name>` or `<Server_IP><instance_name>`.

Specify either of the following authentication options:

**Windows Authentication:** Use Windows authentication. This option is only enabled if a specific service user account was specified in the previous *Service User* dialog, in which case the service account name and password are used.
**SQL Server Authentication**: Use SQL Server authentication.

**User Name**: The user name for SQL Server database.

**Password**: A valid password for the given user name.

3. Click **Next** to the end of the wizard and then click **Finish**.

4. The Zerto Virtual Manager service is restarted using the new credentials.

**Replacing the SSL Certificate**

The communication between the Zerto Virtual Manager and the user interface uses HTTPS. On the first log in to the Zerto User Interface you must install a security certificate in order to be able to continue working without each log in requiring acceptance of the security.

If you want to replace the SSL certificate, perform the procedure described in To reconfigure the Zerto Virtual Manager: on page 246 and select a new SSL certificate when the dialog for Zerto Virtual Manager setup is displayed:

![Reconfigure Zerto Virtual Replica Manager](image)

**HTTP Certificate**: Check **Replace SSL Certificate** and browse for a replacement certificate.

**Pairing to Another Site and Unpairing Sites**

See the following sections:

- Pair to Another Site on page 249
- Unpairing Sites on page 251

**Pair to Another Site**

You can pair to any site where Zerto is installed.

Zerto can be installed at multiple sites and each of these sites can be paired to any other site on which Zerto has been installed. Virtual machines that are protected on one site can be recovered to any paired site.

> **To pair to a site:**
1. From the remote site to which you will pair, in Zerto Virtual Manager > Sites tab, click the button Generate Pairing Token.

   ◀ GENERATE PAIRING TOKEN

2. The Generate Pairing Token window opens.

   ![Generate Pairing Token Window]

   X9BPBU2TWRKN4AM8ZWS4GPT25Y2BNCP91
   Copy

   This token can be used to pair a single site. It will expire on Jul 31, 2019

3. Click Copy, to copy the token.

   The token expires when the earliest of one of the following conditions is met:
   - 48 hours after clicking Copy
   - At the next ZVM process termination
   - After the token is used to authenticate the pairing request

4. From the site which will initiate the pairing, in the Zerto Virtual Manager > Sites tab, click PAIR.

   The Add Site window is displayed.

   ![Add Site Window]

   Host name / IP
   Port 9081
   Token

   Cancel Pair

5. Specify the following:

   - Host name/IP: IP address or fully qualified DNS host name of the remote site Zerto Virtual
Manager to pair to.

- **Port**: The TCP port communication between the sites. Enter the port that was specified during the installation. The default port during the installation was 9081.

- **Token**: Paste the token which you copied above.

6. Click **PAIR**.

The sites are paired, meaning that the Zerto Virtual Manager for the local site is connected to the Zerto Virtual Manager at the remote site.

After the pairing completes the content of the SITES tab updated to include summary information about the paired site.

**Unpairing Sites**

You can unpair any two sites that are paired to each other.

> **Important**: If there is a VPG on either of the sites you are unpairing, the VPGs will be **deleted**.

**To unpair two sites:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface, in the SITES tab, select the site which you want to unpair.
2. Click **UNPAIR**.

   A message appears warning the user that the sites are about to unpair.

   If there are either protected or recovered VPGs on the paired sites, a message appears warning the user that the VPGs will be deleted.

3. For vSphere, Hyper-V and Azure platforms, you can select to keep disks to use for preseeding if the VMs are re-protected. If you select this option, the disks are not removed from the recovery site.

4. To unpair, click **CONTINUE**.

   The sites are no longer paired. If there are VPGs on either site, they are deleted.

   The VRA on the recovery site that handles the replication for the VPG is updated including keeping or removing the replicated data for the deleted VPG, depending if you selected to keep disks to use for preseeding.

   The locations of the saved target disks are specified in the **Events** tab in the ZVM application on the **Recovery** site.
Advanced Site Configuration

There are a number of configuration tasks that you can perform, some of which should be done as part of the initial site configuration.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:

- Site Settings on page 252
- Editing Information About a Site on page 254
- Seeing What is Licensed on page 262
- Submitting a Support Ticket on page 264
- Submitting a Feature Request on page 265
- About Zerto on page 266, on page 207.

Site Settings

The Site Settings dialog enables configuring various site settings. These include the default script timeout and protection policies such as the commit policy for a failover or move operation.

To specify site information:

1. In the Zerto User Interface (top right), click **SETTING** ( ) and select **Site Settings**.

   The Site Settings dialog is displayed.

   - In **vSphere** and **Hyper** environments, the following window is displayed.

   ![Site Settings dialog](image)

   - In **AWS** environments, the following window is displayed.
In Azure environments, the following window is displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site Details</th>
<th>Azure Settings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name</td>
<td>Site-II Cloud-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Location</td>
<td>Manhattan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Name</td>
<td>Zerto Trial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Email</td>
<td>Unconfigured contact email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Phone</td>
<td>Unconfigured contact phone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Make any required changes to the settings, click **SAVE** and then **APPLY**. The following settings can be defined:

   Editing Information About a Site on page 254
Defining Performance and Throttling on page 256
Defining Site Policies on page 259
Configuring Email Settings on page 261
Defining Resource Report Sampling Period on page 262
Reviewing Supported Host Versions on page 262

Licensing is described in Seeing What is Licensed on page 262.

Editing Information About a Site

You provide information about the site during installation, to make it easier to identify the site in the user interface and to identify the contact person at the site. After installation you can update these settings.

To update information about the local site:

1. In the Zerto User Interface (top right), click SETTING (รายการ) and select Site Settings.

   The Site Settings dialog is displayed.

   • In vSphere and Hyper-V sites, the following fields are displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SITE DETAILS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name*</td>
<td>site-1 at Zerto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Location*</td>
<td>site-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Name*</td>
<td><a href="mailto:site-1@zerto.com">site-1@zerto.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Email</td>
<td><a href="mailto:site-1@zerto.com">site-1@zerto.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Phone</td>
<td>066-6666666</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   • In AWS sites, the following fields are displayed:
In Microsoft Azure sites, the following fields are displayed:

- **Site Name**: The name used to identify the site. (Mandatory)
- **Site Location**: Information such as the address of the site or a significant name with which to identify the site location. (Mandatory)
- **Bucket Name**: The name of the bucket that was created when Zerto was installed. This cannot be changed. (AWS environments only)
- **Contact Name**: The name of the person to contact if a need arises. Mandatory.
- **Contact Email**: An email address to use if a need arises.
- **Contact Phone**: A phone number to use if a need arises.

3. (On premise environments) To change the User Credentials to access the vCenter or Hyper-V SCVMM server from the Zerto Virtual Manager:

- **User Name**: The administrator name used to access the vCenter or SCVMM server. The name can be entered using either of the following formats:
  - `username`
  - `domain\username`
• **Password:** The password used to access the vCenter or SCVMM server for the given user name. To ensure security, after saving the settings, the password field is cleared.

4. (Azure environments only) **Azure Settings:**
   - **Application Name:** The name used to access Azure.
   - **Client ID:** A unique identifier that is associated with the access name.
   - **Subscription:** The subscription associated with the user.
   - **Resource Name:** The name of the resource the user created.
   - **Storage Account Name:** The name of the storage account created or selected for this site during installation.(TA14986)

5. (AWS environments only) **AWS Settings:**
   - **Access Key ID:** A unique identifier that is associated with a secret access key.
   - **Secret Access Key:** A key that is used with the access key ID.

6. Click **SAVE.**

### Defining Performance and Throttling

Performance and throttling settings include bandwidth settings and the maximum time a script can run before timing out.

You can specify bandwidth throttling, which is the maximum bandwidth that Zerto uses from this site to all peer recovery sites. The default value is for Zerto to automatically assign the bandwidth used per VPG, based on using the maximum available and then prioritizing the usage according to priority set for the VPGs sending data over the WAN.

| Note: | For minimum bandwidth requirements, see [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines](#). |

For details about estimating the bandwidth, see [WAN Sizing on page 40](#).

**Time-based Bandwidth Throttling:** If you know that the bandwidth needs specific throttling during a certain period, for example, during the daily peak transaction period you can override the general throttling of the bandwidth for these specific times.

- **To configure bandwidth:**
  - Click **Performance and Throttling.**
• Click **Throttling**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BANDWIDTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth Throttling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time-based Throttling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Limited**

**Note:**
For minimum bandwidth requirements, see [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines](#).

• **Bandwidth Throttling:**

Define this to control the amount of traffic going out of your site. When defined, this is the maximum bandwidth that Zerto uses from this site to **all peer** recovery sites.

If you do not specify bandwidth throttling, the default is for Zerto to automatically assign the bandwidth used per VPG, based on using the maximum available and then prioritizing the usage according to the priority set for the VPGs sending data over the WAN.

• **By default, Limited is selected.**

• **In the text box, set the MB/sec.** The valid range is from 0 to **1300** MB/sec.

• **With 0 MB/sec, Zerto automatically assigns the bandwidth used per VPG, based on using the maximum available and then prioritizing the usage according to the priority set for the VPGs sending data over the WAN.**

• **Enter the MB/sec when the value required is 100 MB/sec or more.**

• **Time-based Throttling:**

Define this to throttle the bandwidth during specific times. For example, during the daily peak transaction period you can change the bandwidth throttling, to override the general setting.
**Limited**: Select to define the limit, then define:

- **From**: The hour and the minute to start the throttling, using a 24-hour clock.
- **To**: The hour and the minute to end the throttling, using a 24-hour clock.

**Click** **Show advanced settings**...

**Important:**

Advanced settings must **only** be changed in coordination with **Zerto support**.

**Enable Bandwidth Regulation**: Use this for troubleshooting - to enable regulating the bandwidth.
Zerto Virtual Manager Administration Guide Microsoft Hyper-V Environment - Rev01 U2
Advanced Site Configuration

- **Enable IO throttling**: If a host is handling too many IOs, then the IOs begin to get high latencies. To offset this the VRA sends fewer concurrent IOs. The latency is measured by taking the average latency for all IOs over a set period of time. For example, when the period is 5000 milliseconds and the bad IO latency is 40, the average latency is calculated every 5 seconds, and if the average latency exceeds 40, the VRA sends fewer concurrent IOs.

- **Bad IO Latency VM**: The threshold above which the latency is considered high, and therefore bad.

- **Requested Duration (ms)**: The period of time used to measure the average latency.

**Defining Site Policies**

You can set default recovery and replication policies.

**Configuring Disaster Recovery Policies**

➢ **To configure disaster recovery policies:**

1. Click the **Policies** tab.

2. In the **Disaster & Recovery** area, choose the **Failover/Move Commit Policy** to use during a failover or move operation. These policies are described in [Initiating Failover Live on page 298](#) and [Moving Protected Virtual Machines to a Remote Site on page 288](#) respectively. The following options are available:

   - **None**: The failover or move operation must be manually committed or rolled back by the user.

   - **Commit**: After the time specified in the **Default Timeout** field the failover or move operation is committed, unless manually committed or rolled back by the user before the time-out value is reached. During the specified time you can check the recovered VPG virtual machines.

   - **Rollback**: After the time specified in the **Default Timeout** field the failover or move operation is rolled back, unless manually committed or rolled back by the user before the time-out value is reached. During the specified time you can check the recovered VPG virtual machines.

The value set here applies as the default for all failover or move operations from this point on but can be changed when defining a failover or move operation.
3. Specify the **Default Timeout** after which a **Commit** or **Rollback** commit policy is performed. A value of zero indicates that the system will automatically perform the commit policy, without waiting for any user interaction.

4. In the **Pre/Post Recovery Operations Scripts** area, specify the timeout in seconds for a script to run before or after a failover, move, or test failover in the **Default Script Execution Timeout** field. For information about scripts, see **Running Scripts Before or After Recovering a VPG on page 214**.

5. In the **Replication** area:
   - If the **same site** is to be used as **both** the protected and recovery site, select **Enable Replication to Self**. For more details, see **Enabling Replication to the Same Site on page 39**.
   - Choose the **Replication Pause Time**, which is the time to pause when the journal might have problems, resulting in the loss of all checkpoints. For example, when the datastore for the journal is almost full.
     - Replication pause time is the amount of time that the **transfer of data** from the protected site to the journal on the recovery site is paused.
     - This time can then be used by the administrator to resolve the issue, for example by cloning the virtual machines in the VPG, described in **Cloning Protected Virtual Machines to the Remote Site on page 309**.
     - The value defined here is applied to **existing and new VPGs**.
     - The value defined here is applied to **this site only**.
     - To pause the protection in **both directions**, for example to cover reverse protection back to the original site after a move operation, you must define **Replication Pause Time** on **both sites**.
     - To preserve the **BIOS UUID** of the **protected VM** after recovery operations, in the recovery **ZVM Site Settings window**, select **For incoming replication, copy the BIOS UUID of the protected VM to the recovered VM**.

**Notes:**

- Preserving of the BIOS UUID is **not** supported in Clone and Self-Replication recovery operations.
- Preserving of the BIOS UUID is **not** supported in Public Cloud.
- Cross replication is **not** supported.

6. Click **APPLY** or **SAVE**.
Configuring Email Settings

You can configure Zerto alerts to be sent to an email address, so as to be better informed when an alert occurs and retention processes are run.

Email Settings

To configure email settings:

1. Click Email Settings.

2. Specify the SMTP server Address. The Zerto Virtual Manager must be able to reach this address.

3. If the SMTP Server Port was changed from the default, 25, specify the port number.

4. Specify a valid email address for the email sender name in the Sender Account field.

5. Specify a valid email address where you want to send the email in the To field.

   You can test that the email notification is set up correctly by clicking SEND TEST EMAIL. A test email is sent to the email address specified in the To field.

6. Click APPLY or SAVE.

Alerts and Reports

You can configure when to send alerts and retention reports.

To configure when to send emails about alerts and retention sets:

1. To send an email when an alert is issued, select Enable sending alerts.

2. To send an email with a retention report, select Enable retention reports.

3. Specify whether you want a retention report sent daily or weekly.

   Daily: Send a daily retention report

   Weekly: Send a weekly retention report. Select the day of the week from the drop-down list.
4. Specify day of the week and the time of day to send the retention report.

5. Click **APPLY** or **SAVE**.

**Defining Resource Report Sampling Period**

Specify when you want to take resource samples to identify resource usage, either daily at a specific hour and minute or hourly at a specific minute within each hour.

1. Click **Reports**.

2. Choose the **Sampling Rate**.

   Information is saved for 90 days when the sampling period is hourly, and for one year when the sampling period is daily.

3. Choose the **Sampling Time**.

   If you set the daily time to be 12:00, you will get a sample taken at noon every day. Collecting a sample hourly provides a higher resolution picture of replication traffic than if collected daily.

4. Click **APPLY** or **SAVE**.

   These samples are used to generate resource reports as described in **Zerto Reports on page 368**.

**Reviewing Supported Host Versions**

Zerto works with Microsoft hypervisor hosts. For a list of supported hosts, click **Compatibility**.

**Seeing What is Licensed**

The Zerto license includes information such as the number of virtual machines that can be protected and the license expiry date. You can see these details by clicking ☰ in the top right of the header and selecting...
License.

The Zerto license includes the following details:

- **License**: The license key itself.
- **License Type**: What is licensed: whether the license restricts the number of virtual machines that can be protected or the number of sockets used.
- **Expiry Date**: The license expiry date.
- **Quantity**: The maximum amount licensed, either virtual machines or sockets, based on the license type. If blank, the quantity is unlimited.
- **Usage**: The sites using the license and the number of protected virtual machines in each site.

A warning is generated when either the license expires or more than the licensed number of virtual machines are being protected. Protection continues but the license should be updated. After getting a new license key you can update Zerto with this key.

▶ **To update a license key:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface, in the top right of the header click † and select **License**.
2. Enter a valid license key and click **APPLY** or **SAVE**.
   
   The license is updated on the local site and the paired remote sites.
Submitting a Support Ticket

You can open a ticket to Zerto support directly from Zerto.

Note: The clocks on the machines where Zerto is installed must be synchronized with UTC and with each other (the timezones can be different). Zerto recommends synchronizing the clocks using NTP. If the clocks are not synchronized with UTC, submitting a support ticket can fail.

To open a support ticket:

Support cases can be opened directly in the Zerto User Interface.

Creating a support case in the Zerto User Interface simplifies the submission process since much of the information that is required when entering a case using the Zerto Support Portal, such as the version and build numbers, is automatically added to the case when it is submitted via the Zerto User Interface.

In addition, when the case is submitted, a snapshot of the current environment is also attached to the case. The snapshot information includes the lists of alerts, events, tasks, VPGs, and virtual machines that are protected.

This information is used to help Zerto resolve the case quickly and, whenever possible, without the need to request more information from you.

Note: The clocks on the machines where Zerto is installed must be synchronized with UTC and with each other (the timezones can be different). Zerto recommends synchronizing the clocks using NTP. If the clocks are not synchronized with UTC, submitting a support ticket can fail.

To open a support case:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click ☐ in the top right of the header and select Open a Case.

   The Open Support Case window for the site opens.
2. Specify the case details:

   • **Subject**: The subject of the support case.
   • **Type**: The type of case being opened. Available options are:
     - Problem
     - Question
   • **Description**: A description of the problem or question in addition to the information supplied in the subject.
   • **Allow remote log collection**: How many logs is Zerto allowed to collect. Available options are:
     - Only for this case
     - For the next 30 days
     - Never
   • **SSP Email Address**: A valid email address registered with Zerto, with permission to open cases.

3. Click **SUBMIT**.

   The case is processed and its progress is displayed. If the email address is not valid, the case is rejected. Once the case submission starts, it cannot be canceled.

**Submitting a Feature Request**

From the Zerto User Interface, you can access the Feature Requests page in myZerto in order to submit a feature request.

➤ **To submit a feature request:**
1. In the Zerto User Interface, on the top right of the header, click.
2. Click Submit Feature Request; the Feature Requests page in myZerto opens.

About Zerto

In the About window, you can do the following:

- View the Zerto version being run.
- Enable or disable the **Zerto CALLHOME feature**. The Zerto CALLHOME feature enables support notification and analytics for the following purposes:
  - To improve Zerto.
  - To send notifications to the user when a new Zerto version is available, or when new hypervisor versions are supported by Zerto.
  - Enable or disable Zerto to send data to the SaaS platform for monitoring purposes, using the Zerto Mobile App. This action is done by licensed Zerto Virtual Manager users.

When clicking About, the following options appear:

- Enable Support notification and product improvement feedback.
- Enable Zerto SaaS features. Includes Zerto Analytics, Zerto Mobile App and Remote upgrade.

To perform these actions, do the following:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, in the top right of the header, click, and then click About.
   
The version and build of Zerto installed in the site are displayed.
2. To enable the Zerto CALLHOME feature, click Enable Support notification and product improvement feedback. This is selected by default.
   
   **Note:** For Microsoft Azure and AWS, this option is grayed out.

   If the user deselects Enable Support notification and analytics, a warning appears notifying the user that deselecting this option will stop Zerto from sending notifications when new Zerto updates are available, or when new hosts are supported.
3. If you want Zerto to send information to our Online Services and Zerto Mobile App, and enable remote upgrade, select Enable Zerto SaaS features. Include Zerto Analytics, Zerto Mobile App and Remote upgrade. This is selected by default.

   This allows licensed Zerto Virtual Manager users to enable or disable data being sent from the Zerto Virtual Manager to the SaaS platform, thereby enabling site monitoring using the Zerto Mobile App. This also enable automatic script upgrade of Zerto’s local ZCA scripts. This means that the scripts, which are responsible for configuration and management tasks, will always be up to date.

   - If the user deselects Enable Online Services and Zerto Mobile, a warning appears notifying the
user that deselecting this option will stop Zerto from sending information to Online Services and to the Zerto Mobile Application, rendering these services inoperable for the entire installation.

4. If you want to enable automatic script upgrade of Zerto's local ZCA scripts, select **Enable Zerto SaaS features. Include Zerto Analytics, Zerto Mobile App and Remote upgrade**. This means that the scripts, which are responsible for configuration and management tasks, will always be up to date.
Overview of Disaster Recovery Operations

Zerto provides a number of operations to recover virtual machines at the remote site. This chapter section describes these operations. The following topics are described in this chapter section:

• The Failover Test Operation on page 268
• The Move Operation on page 269
• The Failover Operation on page 269
• The Restore File Operation on page 270
• The Clone Operation on page 270

In addition, when extended recovery is defined, a VPG can be restored as described in Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention on page 332.

The Failover Test Operation

Use the Failover Test operation to test that during recovery the virtual machines are correctly replicated at the recovery site.

The Failover Test operation creates test virtual machines in a sandbox, using the test network specified in the VPG definition as opposed to a production network, to a specified point-in-time, using the virtual disks managed by the VRA. All testing is written to scratch volumes. The longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done. The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed. The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal. Using scratch volumes makes cleaning up the test failover more efficient. For details, see Testing Recovery on page 272, on page 213.

During the test, any changes to the protected virtual machines at the protected site are sent to the recovery site and new checkpoints continue to be generated, since replication of the protected machines continues throughout the test. You can also add your own checkpoints during the test period.

The following diagram shows the positioning of the virtual machines before and during a Failover test operation.
The Move Operation

Use the Move operation to transfer protected virtual machines from the protected site to the recovery site in a planned migration.

When you perform a planned migration of the virtual machines to the recovery site, Zerto assumes that both sites are healthy and that you planned to relocate the virtual machines in an orderly fashion. For details, see Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 286, on page 225.

The following diagram shows the positioning of the virtual machines before and after the completion of a Move operation.

Note: The Move operation without reverse protection does not remove the VPG definition but leaves it in a Needs Configuration state.

The Failover Operation

Following a disaster, use the Failover operation to recover protected virtual machines to the recovery site. A failover assumes that connectivity between the sites might be down, and thus the protected virtual machines and disks are not removed, as they are in a planned Move operation.

When you set up a failover you always specify a checkpoint to which you want to recover the virtual machines. When you select a checkpoint - either the last automatically generated checkpoint, an earlier checkpoint, or a tagged checkpoint - Zerto makes sure that virtual machines at the remote site are recovered to this specified point-in-time. For details, see Managing Failover Live on page 296, on page 235.

Note: To identify the checkpoint to use, you can perform a number of test failovers, each to a different checkpoint.
Failback after the Original Site is Operational

After completing a failover, when the original site is back up and running you can move the recovered virtual machines back again using the Move operation. The VPG that is now protecting the virtual machines on the recovery site has to be configured and then a Delta Sync is performed with the disks in the original protected site. Once the VPG is in a protecting state the virtual machines can be moved back to the original site. For details, see Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 286, on page 225.

The following diagram shows the positioning of the virtual machines before and after the completion of a Failover operation.

![Diagram showing virtual machines before and after failover](image)

Note: The Failover operation without reverse protection does not remove the VPG definition but leaves it in a Needs Configuration state.

The Restore File Operation

Use the Restore File operation to recover individual files and folders from the recovery site.

You can recover specific files and folders from the recovery site for virtual machines that are being protected by Zerto and running Windows operating systems. You can recover the files and folders from a specific point-in-time. For details, see "Recovering Files and Folders", on page 213.

The Clone Operation

Use the Clone operation to create a copy of the VPG virtual machines on the recovery site in the production network. The virtual machines on the protected site remain protected and live.

Note: When the recovery site is VMware vCloud Director, the clone is created in vCenter Server
Overview of Disaster Recovery Operations

and the virtual machines have to be manually imported into vCD.

You might want to create a clone if you need to have a copy of the virtual machines saved to a specific point-in-time, for example, when the VPG enters a Replication Paused state, or when testing the VPG in a live DR test. For details, see Cloning a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 309, on page 246.

The cloned machines are named the after the protected virtual machine name along with the timestamp of the checkpoint used for the clone. The cloned virtual machines are not powered on.

The following diagram shows the positioning of the virtual machines before and after the completion of a Clone operation.
Testing Recovery

In order to verify that the disaster recovery that you have planned is the one that will be implemented, Zerto recommends testing the recovery of the VPGs defined in the protected site to the recovery site. This section describes how to test VPG recovery.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:

- The Test Failover Process on page 272
- Starting and Stopping Failover Tests on page 273
- Viewing Test Results on page 279
- Live Disaster Recovery Testing on page 279

Note: You cannot perform a failover test while a retention process is running.

The Test Failover Process

Use the Failover Test operation to test that during recovery the virtual machines are correctly replicated at the recovery site.

The Failover Test operation creates test virtual machines in a sandbox, using the test network specified in the VPG definition, as opposed to creating virtual machines in a production network, to a specified point-in-time, using the virtual disks managed by the VRA. All testing is written to scratch volumes. The longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done. The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed. The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal.

During the test, any changes to the protected virtual machines at the protected site are sent to the recovery site and new checkpoints continue to be generated, since replication of the protected machines continues throughout the test. You can also add your own checkpoints during the test period. You can initiate a failover during a test, as described in Initiating Failover Live During a Test on page 308.

The Failover Test operation has the following basic steps:

1. Starting the test.
   a. The test virtual machines are created at the remote site using the network specified for testing in the VPG settings and configured to the checkpoint specified for the recovery.
   b. The virtual machines are powered on, making them available to the user. If applicable, the boot order defined in the VPG settings is used to power on the machines.

2. Testing. The virtual machines in the VPG are created as test machines in a sandbox and powered on for testing using the test network specified in the VPG definition and using the virtual disks managed by the VRA. All testing is written to scratch volumes. The longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done. The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be
changed. The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal. Using scratch volumes makes cleaning up the test failover more efficient.

**Note:** You must not delete, clone, migrate to another host or change the disk properties of any of the test virtual machines.

3. Stopping the test.
   a. The test virtual machines are powered off and removed from the inventory.
   b. The following tag is added to the checkpoint specified for the test:
      Tested at startDateAndTimeOfTest

   The tagged checkpoint can be used to identify the point-in-time to restore the virtual machines in the VPG during a failover.

Testing that recovery is accomplished successfully should be done periodically so that you can verify that a failover will work. Zerto also recommends testing all the VPGs being recovered to the same cluster together. For example, in a cluster, if the HA configuration in a cluster includes admission control to prevent virtual machines being started if they violate availability constraints, testing the failover of every VPG configured for recovery to this cluster, at the same time, will show whether the constraints are violated or not.

When configuring a VPG, specify the period between tests for that VPG in the Test Reminder field in the REPLICATION step of the Create VPG wizard.

### Starting and Stopping Failover Tests

You can test specific VMs in a VPG, a single VPG or multiple VPGs to make sure that if an actual failover is needed, the failover will perform as expected.

By default, test virtual machines are started with the same IPs as the protected machines in the protected site. This can create clashes so Zerto recommends ensuring that different IPs are assigned to the virtual machines when they start, by configuring virtual machine NIC properties in the VPG. For details, see To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in Hyper-V: on page 59. If you have defined the new virtual machines so that they are assigned different IPs, Zerto changes the machine IPs.

**Note:** You can initiate the failover test from either the protected site or recovery site. You cannot select specific VMs in a VPG for failover test if the protected site is down.

#### To test failover:

1. In the Zerto User Interface click .

   The Failover Test wizard is displayed.
2. Select the VPGs to test. By default, all VPGs are listed.
   a. To select specific VMs in a VPG, click the icon next to each VPG to get a list of VMs. The Select VMs to Failover dialog is displayed. By default, all VMs are selected.

   ![Select VMs to Failover](image)

   b. Select the VMs to test.

   **Note:** Selecting specific VMs in a VPG to failover is not supported when replicating from a vCD site.

   At the bottom, the selection details show the amount of data and the total number of virtual machines selected.

   The **Direction** arrow shows the direction of the process: from the protected site to the peer, recovery, site.

3. Click **NEXT**.

   The **PARAMETERS** step is displayed.
You can select the checkpoint to use for the recovery and see if a boot order and scripts are defined for the VPG.

You can select the checkpoint to use for the recovery and see if a boot order and scripts are defined for the VPG.

4. By default, the last checkpoint added to the journal is displayed in the Checkpoint column
   - To use this checkpoint, proceed to the next step.
   - To change the checkpoint, click the link that appears as the checkpoint.

A window appears, displaying a list of the VPGs’ checkpoints.

**Latest:** Recovery is to the latest checkpoint. This ensures that the data is crash-consistent for the recovery.

When selecting the latest checkpoint, the checkpoint used is the latest at this point.

If a checkpoint is added between this point and starting the failover, this later checkpoint is not used.

**Latest Tagged Checkpoint:** The recovery operation is to the latest checkpoint added in one of the following situations:

- By a user.
- When a failover test was previously performed on the VPG that includes the virtual machine.
- When the virtual machine was added to an existing VPG after the added virtual machine was synchronized.

5. To use a checkpoint which is not the latest checkpoint, or the latest tagged checkpoint, choose Select from all available checkpoints. By default, this option displays all checkpoints in the
system. You can choose to display only automatic, or tagged checkpoints, or any combination of these types.

6. Click **OK**. If the selected VMs were not protected when the selected checkpoint was taken, a warning will appear informing the user that these VMs cannot be recovered. If all selected VMs cannot be recovered, an error will appear.

7. Click **NEXT**.

The FAILOVER TEST step is displayed. The topology shows the number of VPGs and virtual machines being tested to failover to each recovery site.

8. To start the test, click **START FAILOVER TEST**.

The test starts for the selected VPGs. The test begins with an initialization period during which the virtual machines are created in the recovery site.

**After Starting a Test, What Happens?**

The virtual machines in the virtual protection group are created at the recovery site with the suffix testing recovery.

**Note:** The following conversions are done to a protected virtual machine when it is recovered in vCenter Server:

- Virtual machines are recovered in vCenter Server with the highest hardware version supported by the vCenter Server host version under which the virtual machine is recovered.
- A Generation 1 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with BIOS with the highest supported hardware version.
- A Generation 2 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with UEFI. The host in vCenter must support hardware version 8 or higher.
- Recovered virtual machines use the VMware Virtual E1000 network adapter.
All testing is written to scratch volumes. The longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done. The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed. The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal. Using these test scratch volumes makes cleaning up the test failover more efficient.

While a test is running:

- The virtual machines in the VPGs continue to be protected throughout the test.
- You can add checkpoints to the VPGs, and if necessary fail over the VPGs, as described in [Initiating Failover Live During a Test](https://www.zerto.com/documentation/6.6.00.00) on page 308, on page 245.
- You cannot take a snapshot of a test machine, since the virtual machine volumes are still managed by the VRA and not by the virtual machine. Using a snapshot of a test machine will create a corrupted virtual machine.
- You cannot delete, clone, migrate to another host or change the disk properties of any of the test virtual machines.
- You cannot initiate a failover while a test is being initialized or closed.

Monitor the status of a failover test by doing the following:

- In the Zerto User Interface, click the VPGs tab. The Operation field in the GENERAL view displays Testing Failover when a failover test is being performed.

- In the Zerto User Interface, click the VPGs tab, and then click the name of a VPG you are testing. A dynamic tab is created displaying the specific VPG details including the status of the failover test.
To stop a failover test:

1. Click the **Stop** icon, in either the Dashboard or the dynamic tab, to stop the test in the specific VPG tab.

2. In the Result field specify whether the test succeeded or failed.

3. Optionally, in the Notes field, add a description of the test. For example, specify where external files that describe the tests performed are saved. Notes are limited to 255 characters.

4. Click **STOP**.

After stopping a test, the following occurs:
• Virtual machines in the recovery site are powered off and removed.
• The resource group created for the operation is deleted.
• The checkpoint that was used for the test has the following tag added to identify the test: Tested at startDateAndTimeOfTest.

This checkpoint can be used to identify the point-in-time to use to restore the virtual machines in the VPG during a failover.

Viewing Test Results

After stopping a test, you can see the test results as part of Zerto reports. Refer to Recovery Reports on page 370, on page 299.

Live Disaster Recovery Testing

This section describes how to use the basic Zerto recovery operations to perform live disaster recovery tests, in different situations.

When performing a live DR test you need to consider the following:

• The purpose of the live DR test:
  • Do you only want to verify that the VMs can recover properly?
    - Or -
  • Do you want to conduct a full DR test that will include running user traffic against the recovered VMs?
• The length of time you want to test the recovery, a few hours or several days.
• Whether the changes to the recovered machine need to be retained after the test or can they be discarded?
• Whether you are willing to accept temporary downtime of the application.
• Whether you want to simulate an actual disaster at the protected site, for example by simulating a network outage or bringing down the protected site.

The following flowchart shows the testing decision flow:

Viewing Test Results
During any live test, Zerto recommends that you only maintain one working version of the same virtual machine.

As such, the first step in any test, except for a Failover Test or Clone, is to make sure that the protected virtual machines are shut down before starting to test recovered machines.

During a Zerto Move operation the first step Zerto performs is to shut down the protected machines, to ensure data integrity.

However, a Zerto Failover operation assumes that the protected virtual machines are no longer accessible (the total site disaster scenario) and does not attempt to shut them down at the beginning of the operation.

In a live test using a Failover operation you have to manually shut down the virtual machines to be tested at the beginning of the test in order to prevent potential split-brain situations where two instances of the same applications are live at the same time.

If you want to perform a live DR test that includes a simulated disaster you can simulate the disaster, for example, by disconnecting the network between the two sites. In this type of test, once the disaster is simulated a Move operation cannot be used, since it requires both sites to be healthy, while a Failover operation can be used.

Basic Verification – User Traffic Is Not Run against the Recovered VMs

Basic testing that the virtual machines can recover is done using either a Failover Test operation or an uncommitted Move operation, using the Rollback setting.
Using a Failover Test Operation

You use a Failover Test operation if recovering the virtual machines in a sandbox, using the test network specified in the VPG definition for network isolation, is sufficient for a test. The Failover Test operation is described in The Failover Test Operation on page 268 and in Starting and Stopping Failover Tests on page 273.

See the following sections:

• Using a Failover Test Operation: Recommended Procedure for a Live DR Test on page 281
• Using a Failover Test Operation: Failover Test Considerations on page 281

Using a Failover Test Operation: Recommended Procedure for a Live DR Test

1. Change the VPG Failover Test Network to the production network used at the recovery site.
2. Manually shut down the virtual machines in the VPG.
3. Insert a new checkpoint. This avoids potential data loss since the virtual machines are shut down and the new checkpoint is added after all I/Os have been written to disk.
4. Optionally simulate a disaster, for example by disconnecting the two sites.
5. Perform a test failover on the VPG, choosing the checkpoint you added in step Insert a new checkpoint. This avoids potential data loss since the virtual machines are shut down and the new checkpoint is added after all I/Os have been written to disk. on page 281.
6. Verify that the test machines are recovered as expected.
7. Run user traffic against the virtual machines.
8. Stop the failover test.
9. Reconnect the sites.

Using a Failover Test Operation: Failover Test Considerations

• You do not have to shut down the protected virtual machines, and changes from the test phase are not kept or applied to the protected applications.
• You can recover to a specific point-in-time.
• You can use an isolated network to enable testing in a sandbox environment and not a live DR environment. This is the recommended practice.
• During the testing period, every change is recorded in a scratch volume.
  • Therefore, since both the scratch volume and virtual machines tested are on the same site, performance can be impacted by the increased I/Os during the failover test.
  • In addition, the longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done.
  • The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed.
• The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal.

• At the end of the test, if you powered off the virtual machines in the protected site, you can power them back on and continue to work without the need to save or replicate back any data changed during the test.

• You can also use a Failover Test operation if you want to simulate an actual disaster for around an hour or less and do not want to save any changes on the recovery site.

Using an Uncommitted Move Operation

Use a Move operation with the commit/rollback policy set to rollback after the test period, if you need to test the recovery of virtual machines in the recovery site production environment. The Move operation is described in The Move Operation on page 269 and in Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 286

**Note:** Committing the Move operation requires failing the migrated virtual machines back to the production site after a Delta Sync has been performed on the committed machines in the recovery site.

Procedure

The Move operation is described in detail in The Move Process on page 286. The following procedure highlights specific steps to enable using the Move functionality for a DR test.

1. In the Move wizard, in the EXECUTION PARAMETERS tab, for commit policy, select None.

2. Either power off the relevant virtual machines or check the Force Shutdown checkbox, in the EXECUTION PARAMETERS tab, to make sure that the virtual machines are shut down, if they cannot be powered off using Microsoft Integration Services.

3. After testing the machines in the recovery site you can roll back the Move operation, which will return the virtual machines to their pre-test state.

• Changes from the pre-commit phase are not kept or applied to the protected applications.

• The virtual machines are allocated disks and connected to the network for a full test of the environment.

• The protected machines are turned off until the end of the test, ensuring that there are no conflicts between the protected site and recovery site.

• During the testing period, every change is recorded in a scratch volume to enable rolling back.

  • Therefore, since both the scratch volume and virtual machines being moved are on the same site, performance can be impacted by the increased IOs during the testing period.

  • In addition, the longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done.

  • The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed.

  • The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal.
• You can only recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal, at the start of the Move operation.

Run User Traffic Against the Recovered VMs

Testing actual user traffic against recovered virtual machines can be done using a Clone, Move, or Failover operation, as follows:

**Move operation:** When you can shut down the protected virtual machines but you do not want or need to simulate an actual disaster.

**Failover operation:** When you want to simulate an actual disaster.

**Clone operation:** When the protected application has to run throughout the test.

Using a Move Operation

Use a Move operation when you can shut down the protected virtual machines but you do not want to simulate an actual disaster. After the virtual machines have been recovered in the target site, they are used as the protected machines for as long as the test lasts. The Move operation is described in The Move Operation on page 269 and in Moving Protected Virtual Machines to a Remote Site on page 288, on page 226.

See the following sections:

• Using a Move Operation - Recommended Procedure for a Live DR Test on page 283
• Using a Move Operation - Move Considerations on page 283

Using a Move Operation - Recommended Procedure for a Live DR Test

1. To enable using the Move functionality for a DR test, in the Move wizard, in the EXECUTION PARAMETERS tab, for commit policy, select None.

2. Move the VPG back to the original protected site. A Delta Sync is performed to copy the new transactions performed on the virtual machines in the recovery site back to the original protected site.

Using a Move Operation - Move Considerations

• You can test the moved machines before they are committed.

• You can test for as long as you want.

• The virtual machines are allocated disks and connected to the network for a full test of the environment.

• The originally protected disks are maintained for a faster failback when reverse replication is specified.

• The protected machines are turned off until the move is committed and then they are removed from the protected site. This ensures that there are no conflicts between the protected site and recovery site.

• You must test to the last checkpoint, taken after the protected virtual machines are shut down.

• An actual disaster is not simulated.
• During the testing period, if reverse replication is not specified, there is no protection for the recovered machines.

Using a Failover Operation

Use a Failover operation when you can shut down the protected virtual machines and you want to simulate an actual disaster. After the virtual machines have been recovered in the target site they are used as the protected machines for as long as the test lasts.

Using a Failover operation to test DR requires specific steps to ensure that the virtual machines are gracefully migrated to the target site, similar to a Move operation and that, like a Move operation, they can be verified prior to committing the failover. The Failover operation is described in the Failover Operation on page 269, on page 210 and in Initiating Failover Live on page 298, on page 236.

See the following sections:

• Using a Failover Operation - Recommended Procedure for a Live DR Test on page 284
• Using a Failover Operation - Failover Considerations on page 285

Using a Failover Operation - Recommended Procedure for a Live DR Test

1. Manually shut down the virtual machines.

2. Insert a new checkpoint. This avoids potential data loss since the virtual machines are shut down and the new checkpoint is added after all I/Os have been written to disk.

3. Optionally simulate a disaster, for example by disconnecting the two sites.

4. Perform a live failover on the VPG, specifying the commit policy and choosing the checkpoint you added in step Insert a new checkpoint. This avoids potential data loss since the virtual machines are shut down and the new checkpoint is added after all I/Os have been written to disk. on page 284. Choose a commit policy that will give you the necessary time to check that the failed over virtual machines have been successfully recovered to the correct point-in-time and if they are not, you are able to roll back the failover.

5. Continue to use the recovered virtual machines.

6. The VPG is in a Needs configuration state, because there is no access to the protected site.

After testing the recovered virtual machine you can finalize the live DR test and fail the virtual machines back to the original protected site:

1. Reconnect the sites.

2. Enable protection for the virtual machines by editing the VPG and clicking DONE.

3. Zerto uses the original disks to preseed the volumes and expedite the synchronization between the two sites, using a Delta Sync.

   • The time it will take for the Delta Sync to complete is based on total size of the disks and storage performance at both sites.

   • After the synchronization completes, the VPG enters the Meeting SLA state.

4. Perform a Move operation to fail back the virtual machines to the original protected site.
5. In the Move wizard, in the EXECUTION PARAMETERS tab, for commit policy, set the commit policy to enable basic testing before the move is committed.

The virtual machines are recovered at the original protected site, and the VPG enters a Delta Sync phase before it enters a Meeting SLA state.

Using a Failover Operation - Failover Considerations

- The originally protected disks are maintained for a faster failback.
- Using the Failover operation for testing is non-intuitive.
- Testing by using the Failover operation requires performing manual procedures, such as shutting down the protected virtual machines.
- During the testing period, there is no protection for the recovered machines.

Using a Clone Operation

Use the Clone operation when the protected application must continue to run throughout the test. Create a clone of the virtual machines in a VPG on the recovery site to a specific point-in-time. The clone is a copy of the protected virtual machines on the recovery site, while the virtual machines on the protected site remain protected and live. The Clone operation is described in The Clone Operation on page 270 and in Cloning a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 309, on page 246.

The cloned virtual machines are independent of Zerto. At the end of the test you can remove these machines or leave them.

- You use the Clone operation when the source application has to continue throughout the test.
- You can create a clone of the virtual machines in a VPG on the peer site to a specific point-in-time.
- The clone is a copy of the protected virtual machines on the recovery site, while the virtual machines on the protected site remain protected and live.
- The Clone operation is described above, and in the Zerto Virtual Manager Administration Guide for your environment.
- The cloned virtual machines are independent of Zerto. At the end of the test you can remove these machines or leave them.

Using a Clone Operation - Clone Considerations

- You can clone to a specific point-in-time.
- There is no protection for the cloned machines.
- After use of the clone ends, no changes made to the cloned virtual machines are applied to the protected virtual machines.
- The original virtual machines on the source site are live and online throughout the test.
Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site

This section describes a planned migration of a VPG to a remote site. The following topics are described in this section:

- **The Move Process on page 286**
- **Moving Protected Virtual Machines to a Remote Site on page 288**
- **Reverse Protection For a Moved VPG on page 294**

**Note:** You cannot perform a move while a retention process is running.

### The Move Process

Use the Move operation to move groups of protected virtual machines from a protected site to a recovery site in a planned migration.

When you perform a planned migration of virtual machines to a recovery site, Zerto assumes that both sites are healthy and that you plan to relocate the virtual machines in an orderly fashion without loss of data.

**Note:** To recover virtual machines on the recovery site during disaster recovery, see Managing Failover Live on page 296.

The MOVE operation has the following basic steps:

- Shutting down the protected virtual machines gracefully. This ensures data integrity.
  
  If the machines cannot be gracefully shut down, for example, when VMware Tools or Microsoft Integration Services is not available, you must manually shut down the machines before starting the Move operation or forcibly power off the virtual machines as part of the Move operation. If the machines cannot be gracefully shut down automatically and are not shut down manually and the Move operation does not forcibly power them off, the Move operation stops and Zerto rolls back the virtual machines to their original status.

- Inserting a clean checkpoint. This avoids potential data loss since the virtual machines are not on and the new checkpoint is created after all I/Os have been written to disk.

- Transferring all the latest changes that are still in the queue to the recovery site, including the new checkpoint.

- Creating the virtual machines in the recovery site and attaching each virtual machine to its relevant virtual disks, based on the last checkpoint.

**Note:** The virtual machines are created without CD-ROM or DVD drives, even if the
protected virtual machines had CD-ROM or DVD drives. Also, as long as the virtual machines are created, the operation is considered successful, even if the virtual machines are not created with their complete definition, for example re-IP cannot be performed.

VHDX disks are always recovered in the recovery site with dynamic disks. VHD disks are recovered in the recovery site by default with the same configuration as in the protected site.

- Preventing automatically moving virtual machines to other hosts: Setting failover clustering to prevent Dynamic Optimization. This prevents automatic Live Migration of the affected virtual machines during the Move operation.

- Powering on the virtual machines making them available to the user. If applicable, the boot order defined in the VPG settings is used to power on the machines.

**Note:** If the virtual machines do not power on, the process continues and the virtual machines must be powered on manually. The virtual machines cannot be powered on automatically in a number of situations, such as when there are not enough resources in the resource pool, or the required MAC address is part of a reserved range, or there is a MAC address conflict or IP conflict, for example, if a clone was previously created with the MAC or IP address.

- Committing the Move operation. The default is to automatically commit the Move operation without testing. However, you can also run basic tests on the machines to ensure their validity to the clean checkpoint. Depending on the commit/rollback policy that you specified for the operation, the operation is committed, finalizing the move, or rolled back, aborting the operation.

- If Keep Source VMs is not selected, the protected virtual machines are removed from the inventory.

**Note:** If Keep Source VMs is not selected, and the virtual machines are already protected in other VPGs, continuing with the operation will cause the virtual machines to be deleted from other VPGs that are protecting them and to the journals of these VPGs to be reset. If no other virtual machines are left to protect, the entire VPG will be removed.

- Promoting the data from the journal to the machines. The machines can be used during the promotion and Zerto ensures that the user sees the latest image, even if this image, in part, includes data from the journal.

**Note:** Virtual machines cannot be moved to another host during promotion. If the host is rebooted during promotion, make sure that the VRA on the host is running and communicating with the Zerto Virtual Manager before starting up the recovered virtual machines.

- If reverse replication is specified, the virtual disks used by the virtual machines in the protected site are used for the reverse protection. A Delta Sync is performed to make sure that the two copies, the
new recovery site disks and the original protected site disks, are consistent. A Delta Sync is required since the recovered machines can be updated while data is being promoted.

If reverse replication is not specified, the VPG definition is saved but the state is Needs configuration and the virtual disks used by the virtual machines in the protected site are deleted. Thus, in the future if reverse protection is required, the original virtual disks are not available and a full synchronization is required.

Note: If reverse protection is specified, the Keep Source VMs option is grayed out because the virtual disks of the VMs are used for replication and cannot have VMs attached. If Keep Source VMs is selected before reverse protection is specified, the Keep Source VMs selection is canceled.

A move differs from a failover in that with a move you cannot select a checkpoint to restore the virtual machine to. Also, to ensure data integrity, the protected virtual machines are powered off completely and a final checkpoint created so that there is no data loss before the move is implemented.

You can initiate the Move operation from either the protected site or recovery site.

Moving Protected Virtual Machines to a Remote Site

You can move the virtual machines in a virtual protection group (VPG) to a remote site, where the virtual machines are replicated. As part of the process you can also set up reverse protection, where you create a VPG on the remote site for the virtual machines being moved, pointing back to the original site. This is commonly used, for example, when the protected site has planned downtime.

To initiate a move:

1. In the Zerto User Interface select ACTIONS > MOVE VPG.

The Move wizard is displayed.

2. Select the VPGs to move.

At the bottom, the selection details show the amount of data and the total number of virtual machines selected.
The Direction arrow shows the direction of the process: from the protected site to the peer, recovery, site.

3. Click NEXT.

The EXECUTION PARAMETERS step is displayed.

You can change the following values to use for the recovery:

- **Commit Policy**
- **Force Shutdown** policy
  Reverse Protection settings
- **Keep Source VMs** settings

You can also see if a boot order and scripts are defined for the VPG.

4. To change the commit policy, click on the field or select the VPG and click **EDIT SELECTED**.
   a. Select **None** if you do not want an automatic commit or rollback. You must manually commit or roll back.

   If some VMs in a VPG fail to recover properly and Auto-Commit was selected for the operation, the commit policy will change to None. You must manually commit or rollback.

   b. To test before committing or rolling back, specify an **amount of time** to test the recovered machines, in minutes.

   This is the amount of time that the commit or rollback operation is delayed, before the automatic commit or rollback action is performed.

   During this time period, check that the new virtual machines are OK and then commit the operation or roll it back.

   The **maximum** amount of time you can delay the commit or rollback operation is 1440 minutes, which is 24 hours.

   Testing that involves I/O is done on **scratch volumes**.

   - The more I/Os generated, the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is
reached, at which point no more testing can be done.

- The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed.
- The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal.

5. To specify the shutdown policy, double-click the Force Shutdown field. If the virtual machines cannot be gracefully shut down, for example if Microsoft Integration Services is not installed on one of the virtual machines in the VPG, the Move operation fails unless you specify that you want to force the shutdown. If a utility is installed on the protected virtual machines, the procedure waits five minutes for the virtual machines to be gracefully shut down before forcibly powering them off.

6. To specify reverse protection, where the virtual machines in the VPG are moved to the recovery site and then protected in the recovery site, back to the original site, double-click the Reverse Protection field and click the REVERSE link.

The Edit Reverse VPG wizard is displayed.

You can edit the reverse protection configuration. The parameters are the same as described when you create a VPG, described in To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in Hyper-V: on page 59, with the following differences:

- You cannot add or remove virtual machines to the reverse protection VPG.
- By default, reverse replication is to the original protected disks. You can specify a different storage to be used for the reverse replication.
- If Microsoft Integration Services is available, for each virtual machine in the VPG, the IP address of the originally protected virtual machine is used. Thus, during failback the original IP address of the virtual machine on the site where the machine was originally protected is reused. However, if the machine does not contain the utility, DHCP is used.
- When reverse protection is specified for a VPG residing on a vCD site that is replicating to either a vSphere or Hyper-V site, the boot order settings will not reserve the start delay vApp settings for virtual machines with the same order number.

7. To prevent the protected virtual machines from being deleted in the protected site, select the Keep source VMs checkbox.

!!! Important:

- The virtual machines will be removed from the other VPGs that are protecting them if the following conditions apply:
  - The virtual machines are already protected in other VPGs
  - Reverse protection is specified
  - Keep Source VMs is not checked
  - If there are no other virtual machines left to protect, the entire VPG will be removed.

Protecting virtual machines or vCD vApps in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site
and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

8. Click **NEXT**.
   - A warning appears informing the user that the **virtual machines** will be **removed** from the **other VPGs** that are protecting them.
   - If there are no other virtual machines left to protect, the **entire VPG will be removed**.
   - When reverse protection is specified for a VPG residing on a vCD site that is replicating to either a vSphere or Hyper-V site, the boot order settings will not reserve the start delay vCD vApp settings for virtual machines with the same order number.

The **MOVE** step is displayed. The topology shows the number of VPGs and virtual machines being moved to each peer site. In the following example, 2 VPGs will be moved to Site6-Ent2-R2, and they contain 5 virtual machines; and 1 VPG will be moved to Site5-Ent2-P2-R2 and it contains 2 virtual machines.

9. Click **START MOVE** to start the migration.

   A warning message appears, presenting a summary of your Commit Policy.

10. Review the Commit Policy summary, and either click **Change Settings**, or click **START MOVE** to start the migration.

11. If a commit policy was set with a timeout greater than zero, as described in step **Moving Protected Virtual Machines to a Remote Site on page 288**, you can check the moved virtual machines on the recovery site before they are removed from the protected site.
Note: If a virtual machine exists on the recovery site with the same name as a virtual machine being migrated, the machine is moved and named in the peer site with a number added as a suffix to the name, starting with the number 1.

The status icon changes to orange and an alert is issued, to warn you that the procedure is waiting for either a commit or rollback.

All testing done during this period, before committing or rolling back the Move operation, is written to thin-provisioned virtual disks, one per virtual machine in the VPG. These virtual disks are automatically defined when the machines are created on the recovery site for testing. The longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done. The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed. The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal. Using these scratch volumes makes committing or rolling back the Move operation more efficient.

Note: You cannot take a snapshot of a virtual machine before the Move operation is committed and the data from the journal promoted to the moved virtual machine disks, since the virtual machine volumes are still managed by the VRA and not directly by the virtual machine. Using a snapshot of a moved machine before the Move operation has completed will result in the creation of a corrupted virtual machine.

12. Check the virtual machines on the recovery site, then either:

- Wait for the specified Commit Policy time to elapse, and the specified operation, either Commit or Rollback, is performed automatically.

- Or, in the specific VPG tab, click the Commit or Rollback icon ( ⇔ ▼ ).

- Click Commit to confirm the commit and, if necessary set, or reset, the reverse protection configuration. If the protected site is still up and you can set up reverse protection, you can reconfigure reverse protection by checking the Reverse Protection checkbox and then click the Reverse link. Configuring reverse protection here overwrites any of settings defined when initially configuring the failover.

- Click Rollback to roll back the operation, removing the virtual machines that were created on the recovery site. If the source VM was powered off, it will power back on when the VPG rolls back. If the source VM is powered on, it will remain as powered on after the rollback. The Rollback dialog is displayed to confirm the rollback.
You can also commit or roll back the operation in the TASKS popup dialog in the status bar or under MONITORING > TASKS.

After the virtual machines are up and running and committed in the recovery site, the powered off virtual machines in the protected site are removed from the protected site. Finally, data is promoted from the journal to the moved virtual machines.

**Note:** If virtual machines are protected in several VPGs, reverse protection is selected and Keep source VMs is not checked, the virtual machines are deleted from the protected site. This will result in the removal of these virtual machines from other VPGs that are protecting them and to the journals of these VPGs to be reset. If no other virtual machines are left to protect, the entire VPG will be removed.

Protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

During promotion of data, you cannot move a host on the moved virtual machines. If the host is rebooted during promotion, make sure that the VRA on the host is running and communicating with the Zerto Virtual Manager before starting up the recovered virtual machines.

**Note:** If the virtual machines do not power on, the process continues and the virtual machines must be manually powered on. The virtual machines cannot be powered on automatically in a number of situations, such as when there are not enough resources in the resource pool or the required MAC address is part of a reserved range or there is a MAC address conflict or IP conflict, for example, if a clone was previously created with the MAC or IP address.

The following conversions are done to a protected virtual machine when it is recovered in vCenter Server:
• Virtual machines are recovered in vCenter Server with the highest hardware version supported by the vCenter Server host version under which the virtual machine is recovered.

• A Generation 1 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with BIOS with the highest supported hardware version.

• A Generation 2 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with UEFI. The host in vCenter must support hardware version 8 or higher. Also the following restrictions apply for Generation 2 virtual machines:
  • The secure boot option for the machine in Hyper-V must be disabled.
  • The boot disk must be less than 2TB if the recovery host version is lower than ESXi 5.5.

• All IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks. The boot disk is ported to a disk on a SCSI controller with location 0:0.

• Recovered virtual machines use the VMware Virtual E1000 network adapter.

Reverse Protection For a Moved VPG

When moving the virtual machines in a VPG you specify whether you want reverse protection from the recovery site back to the original protected site.

Reverse Protection Specified

When you specify reverse protection, the virtual machines are moved to the recovery site and then protected using the values specified during the move. Data is promoted from the journal to the moved virtual machines and then synchronization with the original site is performed so that the VPG is fully protected. The synchronization performed uses the original protected disks and is either a Delta Sync or, if there is only one volume to synchronize, a Volume Delta Sync. A sync is required since the recovered machines can be updated while data is being promoted.

Reverse Protection Not Specified

If you do not specify reverse protection, the protected disks are removed along with the protected virtual machines at the end of the procedure. In this case, if you want to move the virtual machines back again to the original site, you will not be able to use the original disks and an initial synchronization will have to be performed. The VPG definition is kept with the status Needs Configuration and the reverse settings in the VPG definition are not set.

Clicking EDIT VPG displays the Edit VPG wizard with the settings filled in, using the original settings for the virtual machines in the VPG from the original protected site, except for the volumes, since the last step of the Move operation is to delete the virtual machines from the original protected site inventory, including the disks. To start replicating the virtual machines in the VPG, specify the disks to use for replication and
optionally, make any other changes to the original settings and click **DONE**. An initial synchronization is performed.

**Notes:**

- If virtual machines are protected in **several VPGs**, reverse protection is selected and Keep source VMs is not checked, the virtual machines are deleted from the protected site. This will result in the **removal of these virtual machines from other VPGs** that are protecting them and to the journals of these VPGs to be reset. If no other virtual machines are left to protect, the **entire VPG will be removed**.

Protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

- You can edit the VPG definition from either of the sites, the site where the VPG virtual machines were initially protected or the site they were moved to.

- When reverse protection is specified for a VPG residing on a vCD site that is replicating to either a vSphere or Hyper-V site, the boot order settings will not reserve the start delay vApp settings for virtual machines with the same order number.
Managing Failover Live

This section describes how to perform a failover to the recovery site after an unforeseen disaster. The following topics are described in this section:

- The Failover Live Process on page 296
- Initiating Failover Live on page 298
- Reverse Protection for a Failed Over VPG on page 307
- Initiating Failover Live During a Test on page 308

Note: If you need to perform a failover while a retention process is running, the retention process is aborted to enable the failover to run.

The Failover Live Process

Use the Failover operation following a disaster to recover protected virtual machines to the recovery site.

Note: You can also move virtual machines from the protected site to the recovery site in a planned migration. For details, see Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 286.

When you set up a failover you always specify a checkpoint to which you want to recover the virtual machines. When you select a checkpoint - either the last automatically generated checkpoint, an earlier checkpoint, or a tagged checkpoint - Zerto makes sure that the virtual machines at the remote site are recovered to this specified point-in-time. By setting a commit policy that enables checking the recovered machines before committing the failover, you can check the integrity of the recovered machines. If the machines are OK, you can commit the failover. Otherwise, you can roll back the operation and then repeat the procedure using a different checkpoint.

The Failover operation has the following basic steps:

- If the protected site or Zerto Virtual Manager is down, the process continues with the next step.
  
  If the protected site or Zerto Virtual Manager is still running, the failover requirements are determined:
  
  - If the default is requested, doing nothing to the protected virtual machines, the Failover operation continues with the next step.
  
  - If shutting down the protected virtual machines is requested and the protected virtual machines do not have Microsoft Integration Services available, the Failover operation fails.
  
  - If forcibly shutting down the protected virtual machines is requested, the protected virtual machines are shut down and the Failover operation continues.

Creating the virtual machines at the remote site in the production network and attaching each virtual machine to its relevant virtual disks, configured to the checkpoint specified for the recovery. The virtual machines are created without CD-ROM or DVD drives, even if the protected virtual machines had CD-
ROM or DVD drives. Also, the operation is considered successful, even if some of the virtual machines in a VPG fail to be created on the recovery site or are created without their complete settings, for example re-IP cannot be performed.

**Note:** If the virtual machines fail to be created on the recovery site in Public Cloud, the failover operation will not succeed.

The original protected virtual machines are not touched since the assumption is that the original protected site is down.

VHDX disks are always recovered in the recovery site with dynamic disks. VHD disks are recovered in the recovery site by default with the same configuration as in the protected site.

- Preventing automatically moving virtual machines to other hosts: Setting failover clustering to prevent Dynamic Optimization. This prevents automatic live migration of the affected virtual machines during the Failover operation.
- Powering on the virtual machines making them available to the user. If applicable, the boot order defined in the VPG settings is used to power on the machines.

**Note:** If the virtual machines do not power on, the process continues and the virtual machines must be manually powered on. The virtual machines cannot be powered on automatically in a number of situations, such as when there are not enough resources in the resource pool or the required MAC address is part of a reserved range or there is a MAC address conflict or IP conflict, for example, if a clone was previously created with the MAC or IP address.

- The default is to automatically commit the Failover operation without testing. However, you can also run basic tests on the machines to ensure their validity to the specified checkpoint. Depending on the commit/rollback policy that you specified for the operation after testing either the operation is committed, finalizing the failover, or rolled back, aborting the operation.
- If the protected site is still available, for example, after a partial disaster, and reverse protection is possible and specified for the Failover operation, the protected virtual machines are powered off and removed from the inventory. The virtual disks used by the virtual machines in the protected site are used for the reverse protection. A Delta Sync is performed to make sure that the two copies, the new target site disks and the original site disks, are consistent. A Delta Sync is required since the recovered machines can be updated while data is being promoted.

If reverse protection is selected, and the virtual machines are already protected in other VPGs, continuing with the operation will cause the virtual machines to be deleted from other VPGs that are protecting them and to the journals of these VPGs to be reset. If no other virtual machines are left to protect, the entire VPG will be removed.

Protecting virtual machines or a vCD vApp in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

**Note:** If reverse protection is not possible, the original protected site virtual machines are not
powered off and removed.

- The data from the journal is promoted to the machines. The machines can be used during the promotion and Zerto ensures that the user sees the latest image, even if this image, in part, includes data from the journal.

**Note:** Virtual machines cannot be moved to another host during promotion. If the host is rebooted during promotion, make sure that the VRA on the host is running and communicating with the Zerto Virtual Manager before starting up the recovered virtual machines.

---

**Failback After the Original Site is Operational**

To fail back to the original protected site, the VPG that is now protecting the virtual machines on the recovery site has to be configured and then a Delta Sync is performed with the disks in the original protected site. Once the VPG is in a protecting state the virtual machines can be moved back to the original protected site, as described in *Migrating a VPG to the Recovery Site on page 286*, on page 225.

**Initiating Failover Live**

You can initiate a failover, whereby the virtual machines in the virtual protection group (VPG) or specific virtual machines in a virtual protection group (VPG) are replicated to a set checkpoint in the recovery site. As part of the process you can also set up reverse replication, whereby you create a virtual protection group on the recovery machine for the virtual machines being replicated, pointing back to the protected site.

You can initiate a failover to the last checkpoint recorded in the journal, even if the protected site is no longer up. You can initiate a failover during a test, as described in *Initiating Failover Live During a Test on page 308*, on page 245.

If you have time to initiate the failover from the protected site you can. However, if the protected site is down, you initiate the failover from the recovery site. You cannot select specific VMs in a VPG for failover if the protected site is down.

**Note:** Any VPGs that are in the process of being synchronized, cannot be recovered, unless the synchronization is a bitmap synchronization.

**To initiate a failover:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface set the operation to LIVE and click **FAILOVER**.

   The Failover wizard is displayed.
2. Select the VPGs to failover. By default, all VPGs are listed.
   a. To select specific VMs in a VPG, click the icon next to each VPG to get a list of VMs. The Select VMs to Failover dialog is displayed. By default, all VMs are selected.

   ![Select VMs to Failover](image)

   a. Select the VMs to failover.

   ![Select VMs to Failover](image)

   **Note:** Selecting specific VMs in a VPG to failover is not supported when replicating from a vCD site.

   At the bottom, the selection details show the amount of data and the total number of virtual machines selected.

   The Direction arrow shows the direction of the process: **From** the protected site **To** the peer, recovery, site.
3. Click **NEXT**. If specific VMs are selected for failover, a warning will appear informing the user to review the Pre-recovery and Post-recovery Scripts.

The EXECUTION PARAMETERS step is displayed.

You can change the following values to use for the recovery:

- **Commit Policy**
- **Checkpoint** to use
- **Force Shutdown**
- **Reverse Protection** settings

You can also see if a boot order and scripts are defined for the VPG.

4. By default, the last checkpoint added to the journal is displayed in the Checkpoint column.

- To use this checkpoint, proceed to the next step.
- To change the checkpoint, click the link that appears as the checkpoint.

A window appears, displaying a list of the VPGs’ checkpoints.

**Latest:** Recovery is to the latest checkpoint. This ensures that the data is crash-consistent for the recovery.

When selecting the latest checkpoint, the checkpoint used is the latest at this point.

If a checkpoint is added between this point and starting the failover, this later checkpoint is not used.
Latest Tagged Checkpoint: The recovery operation is to the latest checkpoint added in one of the following situations:

- By a user.
- When a failover test was previously performed on the VPG that includes the virtual machine.
- When the virtual machine was added to an existing VPG after the added virtual machine was synchronized.

5. To use a checkpoint which is not the latest checkpoint, or the latest tagged checkpoint, choose Select from all available checkpoints. By default, this option displays all checkpoints in the system. You can choose to display only automatic, or tagged checkpoints, or any combination of these types.

6. Click OK. If the selected VMs were not protected when the selected checkpoint was taken, a warning will appear informing the user that these VMs cannot be recovered. If all selected VMs cannot be recovered, an error will appear.

7. To change the commit policy, click on the field or select the VPG and click EDIT SELECTED.

- Select None if you do not want an automatic commit or rollback. You must manually commit or roll back. If some VMs in a VPG fail to recover properly and Auto-Commit was selected for the operation, the commit policy will change to None. You must manually commit or rollback.

- To test before committing or rolling back, specify an amount of time to test the recovered machines, in minutes.

  This is the amount of time that the commit or rollback operation is delayed, before the automatic commit or rollback action is performed.

  During this time period, check that the new virtual machines are OK and then commit the operation or roll it back.

  The maximum amount of time you can delay the commit or rollback operation is 1440 minutes, which is 24 hours.

Testing that involves I/O is done on scratch volumes.

- The more I/Os generated, the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done.
- The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed.
- The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal.

To specify the shutdown policy, double-click the VM Shutdown field and select the shutdown policy:

**No (default)**: The protected virtual machines are not touched before starting the failover. This assumes that you do not know the state of the protected machines, or you know that they are not serviceable.
Yes: If the protected virtual machines have Microsoft Integration Services available, the virtual machines are gracefully shut down, otherwise the Failover operation fails. This is similar to performing a Move operation to a specified checkpoint.

Force Shutdown: The protected virtual machines are forcibly shut down before starting the failover. This is similar to performing a Move operation to a specified checkpoint. If the protected virtual machines have Microsoft Integration Services available, the procedure waits five minutes for the virtual machines to be gracefully shut down before forcibly powering them off.

8. To specify reverse protection, where the virtual machines in the VPG are moved to the recovery site and then protected in the recovery site, back to the original site, double-click the Reverse Protection field and click the REVERSE link.

The Edit Reverse VPG wizard is displayed.

You can edit the reverse protection configuration. The parameters are the same as described when you create a VPG, described in To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in Hyper-V: on page 59, with the following differences:

- You cannot add or remove virtual machines to the reverse protection VPG.
- By default, reverse replication is to the original protected disks. You can specify a different storage to be used for the reverse replication.
- If Microsoft Integration Services is available, for each virtual machine in the VPG, the IP address of the originally protected virtual machine is used. Thus, during failback the original IP address of the virtual machine on the site where the machine was originally protected is reused. However, if the machine does not contain the utility, DHCP is used.
- When committing the failover, you can reconfigure reverse protection, regardless of the reverse protection settings specified here.
- When reverse protection is specified for a VPG residing on a vCD site that is replicating to either a vSphere or Hyper-V site, the boot order settings will not reserve the start delay vApp settings for virtual machines with the same order number.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- The <strong>virtual machines</strong> will be <strong>removed</strong> from the <strong>other VPGs</strong> that are protecting them if the following conditions apply:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The virtual machines are already protected in other VPGs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Reverse protection is specified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- If there are no other virtual machines left to protect, the <strong>entire VPG will be removed</strong>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Protecting virtual machines or vCD vApps in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

9. Click **NEXT**.

- A warning appears informing the user that the **virtual machines** will be **removed** from the
other VPGs that are protecting them.

- If there are no other virtual machines left to protect, the entire VPG will be removed.

10. Click **OK**. If a virtual machine is deleted from other VPGs, the journals of these VPGs are reset.

The FAILOVER step is displayed. The topology shows the number of VPGs and virtual machines being failed over to each recovery site. In the following example, 2 VPGs will be failed over to Site6-Ent2-R2, and they contain 5 virtual machines; and 1 VPG will be failed over to Site5-Ent2-P2-R2 and it contains 2 virtual machines.

11. Click **START FAILOVER**.

A warning message appears, presenting a summary of your Commit Policy.

12. Review the Commit Policy summary, and either click **Change Settings**, or click **START FAILOVER** to start the failover.

If a commit policy was set with a timeout greater than zero, you can check the failed over virtual machines on the recovery site before committing the failover operation.
The failover starts, by creating the virtual machines in the recovery site to the point-in-time specified: either the last data transferred from the protected site or to one of the checkpoints written in the journal.

**Note:** If a virtual machine exists on the recovery site with the same name as a virtual machine being failed over, the machine is created and named in the peer site with a number added as a suffix to the name, starting with the number 1.

If the original protected site is still up and reverse replication configured to use the protected virtual machines virtual disks, these virtual machines are powered off.

The status icon changes to orange and an alert is issued, to warn you that the procedure is waiting for either a commit or rollback.

All testing done during this period, before committing or rolling back the failover operation, is written to thin-provisioned scratch virtual disks. These virtual disks are automatically defined when the machines are created on the recovery site for testing. The longer the test period the more scratch volumes are used, until the maximum size is reached, at which point no more testing can be done. The maximum size of all the scratch volumes is determined by the journal size hard limit and cannot be changed. The scratch volumes reside on the storage defined for the journal. Using these scratch volumes makes committing or rolling back the failover operation more efficient.

**Note:** You cannot take a snapshot of a virtual machine before the failover operation is committed and the data from the journal promoted to the moved virtual machine disks, since the virtual machine volumes are still managed by the VRA and not...
directly by the virtual machine. Using a snapshot of a recovered machine before the failover operation has completed will result in a corrupted virtual machine being created.

13. Check the virtual machines on the recovery site, then either:

- Wait for the specified **Commit Policy** time to elapse, and the specified operation, either **Commit** or **Rollback**, is performed automatically.
- Or, in the specific VPG tab, click the Commit or Rollback icon (✓ ▼).

  a. If you clicked the **Commit** icon, the Commit window is displayed to confirm the commit and, if necessary set, or reset, the reverse protection configuration.

     - If the protected site is still up and you can set up reverse protection, you can reconfigure reverse protection by selecting the **Reverse Protection** checkbox and then click the **Reverse** link.
     - Configuring reverse protection at this point **overwrites** any of settings defined when initially configuring the move.
     - If specific VMs in a VPG are selected, a new VPG will be created in addition to the original VPG. The additional VPG includes only the VMs selected for recovery. The new VPG name is displayed as **{Original-VPG-Name-Partial}**. The original VPG will remain intact with its history.

     - **(On-Premise Only)** If some VMs in a VPG fail to recover properly, a warning will appear informing the user which VMs failed to recover entirely and which recovered without their complete settings. The user will be prompted to proceed or roll back the VMs which failed to recover. If you choose to proceed, a new VPG will be created in addition to the original VPG. The additional VPG includes **only** the VMs that were recovered successfully. The new VPG name is displayed as **{Original-VPG-Name-Partial}**.

     **Note:**  **{Original-VPG-Name-Partial} is only created in cases where some VMs in a VPG fail to recover entirely.**

     b. If you clicked the **Rollback** icon, this rolls back the operation, removing the virtual machines that were created on the **recovery site** and reboots the machines on the protected site.

The **Rollback** window is displayed to confirm the rollback.

You can also commit or roll back the operation via the TASKS popup dialog in the status bar, or by selecting **MONITORING > TASKS**.

If the original protected site is still up and reverse replication is configured to use the virtual disks of the protected virtual machines, these virtual machines are removed from this site, unless the original protected site does not have enough storage available to fail back the failed over virtual machines. Finally, data is promoted from the journal to the recovered virtual machines.
**Note:** If Reverse Protection is selected and the virtual machines are already protected in other VPGs, the virtual machines are deleted from the protected site and the journals of these VPGs are reset. This will result in the removal of these virtual machines from other VPGs that are protecting them, or the removal of the entire VPG, if no other virtual machines are left to protect.

**Note:** Protecting virtual machines in several VPGs is enabled only if both the protected site and the recovery site, as well as the VRAs installed on these sites, are of version 5.0 and higher.

During promotion of data, you cannot move a host on the recovered virtual machines. If the host is rebooted during promotion, make sure that the VRA on the host is running and communicating with the Zerto Virtual Manager before starting up the recovered virtual machines.

By default the virtual machines are started with the same IPs as the protected machines in the protected site. If you do not specify reverse protection, the original machines still exist in the protected site and this can create clashes. In this case, Zerto recommends ensuring that a different IP is assigned to the virtual machines when they start, when configuring each virtual machine NIC properties in the VPG, during the definition of the VPG. For details, refer to To create a virtual protection group (VPG) to recover in Hyper-V: on page 59 if you have defined the new virtual machines so that they will be assigned different IPs, Zerto changes the machine IPs. Changing IPs can take several seconds.

**Note:** If the virtual machines do not power on, the process continues and the virtual machines must be manually powered on. The virtual machines cannot be powered on automatically in a number of situations, such as when there is not enough resources in the resource pool or the required MAC address is part of a reserved range or there is a MAC address conflict or IP conflict, for example, if a clone was previously created with the MAC or IP address.

The following conversions are done to a protected virtual machine when it is recovered in vCenter Server:

- Virtual machines are recovered in vCenter Server with the highest hardware version supported by the vCenter Server host version under which the virtual machine is recovered.

- A Generation 1 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with BIOS with the highest supported hardware version.

- A Generation 2 virtual machine is recovered in vCenter Server with EUFI. The host in vCenter must support hardware version 8 or higher. Also the following restrictions apply for Generation 2 virtual machines:
  - The secure boot option for the machine in Hyper-V must be disabled.
  - The boot disk must be less than 2TB if the recovery host version is lower than ESXi 5.5.
  - All IDE disks are converted to SCSI disks. The boot disk is ported to a disk on a SCSI controller with location 0:0.
  - Recovered virtual machines use the VMware Virtual E1000 network adapter.
Reverse Protection for a Failed Over VPG

When you specify reverse protection, the virtual machines are recovered on the recovery site and then protected using the values specified during the failover. The original virtual machines are removed from the original protected site and then on the target site the data is promoted from the journal to the recovered virtual machines and then synchronization with the original site is performed so that the VPG is fully protected. The synchronization used is either a Delta Sync or if there is only one volume to synchronize, a Volume Delta Sync is performed. A sync is required since the recovered machines can be updated while data is being promoted.

Notes:

- For the Failover operation to complete successfully, when reverse protection is specified, the original protected site must have enough storage available to fail back the failed over virtual machines.
- When reverse protection is specified for a VPG residing on a vCD site that is replicating to either a vSphere or Hyper-V site, the boot order settings will not reserve the start delay vApp settings for virtual machines with the same order number.
- If you do not specify reverse protection, the VPG definition is kept with the status Needs Configuration and the reverse settings in the VPG definition are not set.

- Clicking EDIT VPG displays the Edit VPG wizard with the settings filled in, using the original settings for the virtual machines in the VPG from the original protected site, except for the volumes. To start replicating the virtual machines in the VPG, specify the disks to use for replication and optionally, make any other changes to the original settings and click DONE.

Reverse Protection With One-to-Many

Zerto enables you to protect virtual machines in a maximum of three VPGs. These VPGs cannot be recovered to the same site.

If Reverse Protection is selected, and the virtual machines are already protected in other VPGs, the following occurs:

- The virtual machines are deleted from the protected site.
- The replication of other VPGs containing these machines is paused.
- The recovery of all the virtual machines, including the virtual machine removed from the protected site, is possible.

To resume replication do the following:
1. Open the Edit VPG wizard.
2. Select the virtual machine that was previously deleted from the protected site.
3. Remove the virtual machine from the VPG.

If the protected VPG contains a vCD vApp, and the vCD vApp is protected in other VPGs, **Reverse Protection** is selected, the following occurs:

- The vCD vApp is **deleted** from the protected site.
- The vCD vApp is **deleted from the other VPGs**, and therefore **can no longer be recovered**

VPGs enter a state of pause and pause replication if the following conditions apply:

- The ZVM on the protected and recovery sites are of version 5.5 and higher.
- The VRA installed on the recovery site is of version 5.5 and higher.

Protecting virtual machines or a vCD vApp in several VPGs is enabled if:

- The protected site and the recovery site are of version 5.0 and higher
- The VRAs installed on these sites are of version 5.0 and higher

**What Happens When the Protected Site is Down**

If the protected site is down, you can initiate the failover from the recovery site, as described above in To initiate a failover: on page 298.

The tab for a specific VPG tab for a VPG shows that recovery is possible.

If the Zerto Virtual Manager service is down the actual machines that are being protected can still be up, but they are only recoverable to the last checkpoint written before the Zerto Virtual Manager service went down.

When there is no connection with the protected site, the status for recovered VPGs is red with an Error status and green while recovery is being performed. If the protected site restarts so that reverse replication is possible, the status changes to orange.

**Initiating Failover Live During a Test**

Replication continues during a test. If you need to initiate a failover during a test, you initiate the failover. The test stops to enable the failover and then a normal failover is performed, as described in Initiating Failover Live on page 298, on page 236. Any changes made to test the failover are not replicated, as only changes to the protected machines in the VPG are replicated.

**Note:** You cannot initiate a failover while a test is being initialized or closed.
Cloning a VPG to the Recovery Site

You can create a clone of each virtual machine in a VPG. The clone is a copy of the protected virtual machine, located on the recovery site, while the virtual machine on the protected site remains protected and live.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:

• The Clone Process on page 309
• Cloning Protected Virtual Machines to the Remote Site on page 309

Note: You cannot clone virtual machines in a VPG test while a retention process is running. When the recovery site is VMware vCloud Director, the clone is created in vCenter Server and the virtual machines have to be manually moved into vCD.

The Clone Process

Use the Clone operation to create a copy of the VPG virtual machines on the recovery site. The virtual machines on the protected site remain protected and live.

The Clone operation has the following basic steps:

• Creating the cloned disks at the recovery site with the data from the journal to the specified checkpoint.
• Creating the virtual machines at the recovery site in the move/failover network and attach each virtual machine to its relevant cloned disks, configured to the checkpoint specified for the clone.

Note: The virtual machines are created without CD-ROM or DVD drives, even if the protected virtual machines have CD-ROM or DVD drives. (CD-ROM is not relevant for vSphere environments).

The cloned machines are named with the names of the protected machines, with the timestamp of the checkpoint used to create the clone. The cloned virtual machines are not powered on and are not protected by Zerto.

VHDX disks are always cloned in the recovery site with dynamic disks. VHD disks are cloned in the recovery site by default with the same configuration as in the protected site.

Cloning Protected Virtual Machines to the Remote Site

You might want to create a clone if you need to have a copy of the virtual machines saved to a specific point-in-time, for example, when a VPG enters a Replication Paused state, or when testing a VPG in a live DR test.

To clone a VPG:
1. In the Zerto User Interface, in the **VPGs** tab click the name of the VPG to be cloned.

   A new tab is added to the Zerto User Interface, with the name of the VPG that you clicked. The tab displays data about the VPG.

   **Note:** If the VPG was previously viewed, and the tab for this VPG is still displayed, you can access the details by selecting the tab.

2. Select the new tab and click **MORE > Offsite Clone**.

   The `{VPG-Name}: Offsite Clone` dialog is displayed.

   a. To clone specific VMs, click **ADVANCED**.

      The `{VPG-Name}: Select VMs to Clone` dialog is displayed. By default, all VMs are selected.

   b. Select the VMs to clone.

      **Note:** Zerto Version 6.0 supports cloning specific VMs if installed on the protected site only.

3. If you intend to use the last checkpoint, which is displayed in the dialog, go to step Select the recovery storage to use for the cloned virtual machines. on page 312.

   To select the checkpoint, click **SELECT A CHECKPOINT**.
The {VPG-Name}: Checkpoints dialog is displayed.

When selecting the point to recover to:

- The refresh button is initially grayed out and is enabled for clicking after 5 seconds. It is also grayed out for 5 seconds after being clicked, before being re-enabled.
- A Click the refresh button to view the latest checkpoints reminder is displayed 10 seconds after the refresh button is clicked to remind the user that there is a new Latest Checkpoint.
- If the user has scrolled to, and selected, a checkpoint anywhere in the checkpoints list, clicking the refresh button will automatically return the user to the selected checkpoint in the list.

4. Select the checkpoint to use. Click the refresh button to refresh the list. You can choose from one of the following checkpoints:

5. By default, the last checkpoint added to the journal is displayed in the Checkpoint column

- To use this checkpoint, proceed to the next step.
- To change the checkpoint, click the link that appears as the checkpoint.

A window appears, displaying a list of the VPGs' checkpoints.

**Latest:** Recovery is to the latest checkpoint. This ensures that the data is crash-consistent for the recovery.

When selecting the latest checkpoint, the checkpoint used is the latest at this point.

If a **checkpoint is added** between this point and **starting the failover**, this **later** checkpoint is **not used**.

**Latest Tagged Checkpoint:** The recovery operation is to the latest checkpoint added in one of the following situations:

- By a user.
• When a failover test was previously performed on the VPG that includes the virtual machine.
• When the virtual machine was added to an existing VPG after the added virtual machine was synchronized.

6. To use a checkpoint which is not the latest checkpoint, or the latest tagged checkpoint, choose Select from all available checkpoints. By default, this option displays all checkpoints in the system. You can choose to display only automatic, or tagged checkpoints, or any combination of these types.

7. Click OK.

8. Select the recovery storage to use for the cloned virtual machines.

   **Note:** All the cloned virtual machines use a single storage, that is accessible by all the recovery site VRAs used by the VPG.

9. Click CLONE.

   The cloning starts and the status is displayed in the VPG details tab.

   ![VPG Details Tab](image)

   The cloned machines are assigned the names of the protected machines with the addition of the timestamp of the checkpoint used for the clone. The cloned virtual machines are not powered on.

When cloning to VMware vSphere environments:

• The cloned virtual machines are created in the ZertoRecoveryFolder folder, and not the recovery folder defined in the VPG.
• The cloned virtual machines use a single datastore.
• The VMDKs are renamed (1).vmdk, (2).vmdk, etc.

• When the recovery site is VMware vCloud Director, the clone is created in vCenter Server and the virtual machines have to be manually imported into vCD.

• If the protected virtual machine has RDMs attached, these disks are always cloned as thin-provisioned VMDKs to the datastore specified in the Recovery Datastore field in the Edit VM dialog in the REPLICATION step in the Edit VPG wizard.

When cloning to Microsoft Hyper-V environments:

• The cloned virtual machines use a single storage.

• The VHDs are renamed (1).vhdx, (2).vhdx, etc.
Recovering Files and Folders

You can recover specific files and folders from the recovery site for virtual machines that are being protected by Zerto. You can recover the files and folders from a specific point-in-time. Thus, you can recover files and folders for a virtual machine for as far back as the journal history is configured.

This section describes how to recover files and folders. The following topics are described in this section:

• The File and Folder Recovery Process, below
• Recovering Files and Folders, on page 381

The File and Folder Recovery Process

Use the RESTORE FILE operation to recover specific files and folders from the recovery site.

When you set up file and folder recovery, you always specify a checkpoint to which you want to recover the files and folders. When you select a checkpoint – either the last automatically generated checkpoint, an earlier automatically generated checkpoint, or a tagged checkpoint - Zerto makes sure that the files and folders replicated at the remote site are recovered to this specified point-in-time.

The file and folder operation has the following basic steps:

1. Select the virtual machine that is protected, on which the files or folders to recover are located.
2. Select the checkpoint, at which the files and folders will be recovered.
3. Mount the selected virtual machine.
4. Select the files and folders on the virtual machine to recover.
5. Download the selected files and folders.
   • The files are downloaded to the machine where you run the Zerto User Interface.
   • Make sure that this machine has enough space for the recovered files.
6. Unmount the selected virtual machine.

Zerto does not support mounting the same virtual machine twice, for example if you want a file from two different checkpoints.

Considerations:

• You cannot recover files or folders from a virtual machine when a test failover, live failover, move, clone, or retention process is being performed on a VPG that contains the virtual machine.
• You cannot recover files or folders from the Zerto plugin.

For additional file and folder recovery considerations or known issues, see the Release Notes > Known Issues > File Level Restore.
Recovering Files and Folders

The procedure to recover files and folders involves the following steps:

1. Mounting the Virtual Machine that Contains the Required Files and Folders on page 315

   **Note:** While the virtual machine is mounted:
   - If you start a live failover or move, Zerto Virtual Manager forcibly unmounts the virtual machine so the live failover or move can be performed.
   - *(On-premise environments)* Scheduled retention processes do not start.
   - You can perform a test failover or clone.

2. Downloading the Files and Folders from the Virtual Machine on page 317

   **Note:** When downloading, you may see grayed out files. These grayed out files are not supported files, and therefore cannot be selected. For a list of unsupported files see Zerto Virtual Replication - Interoperability Matrix for All Versions.

Mounting the Virtual Machine that Contains the Required Files and Folders

Before you can recover files or folders, you must first select the virtual machine and checkpoint in time from which you will recover the files or folders.

To mount a virtual machine that includes files and folders to restore:

1. From either the protected or recovery site, select **ACTIONS > RESTORE FILE**.

   The File and Folder Restore wizard is displayed.

   ![File and Folder Restore Wizard](image)

   The list of all protected virtual machines is displayed. You can only recover files or folders from one virtual machine at a time.
2. Select the virtual machine on which the file or folder is located and click **NEXT**.

   The CHECKPOINT step is displayed. By default, all checkpoints are displayed.

   ![Checkpoint Step](image)

3. Select the checkpoint from which to recover the file or folder.
   
   - **Auto**: Checkpoints generated by the Zerto Virtual Manager are displayed.
   
   - **Tagged**: Checkpoints that were added by a user, or were added by the Zerto Virtual Manager when a failover test was performed on the VPG that included the virtual machine, or when the virtual machine was added to an existing VPG after the virtual machine was synchronized.

4. Click **NEXT**.

   The MOUNT step is displayed. The settings you selected are displayed.

   ![Mount Step](image)

5. Click **START MOUNT** to mount the virtual machine
   
   - When the first part of the restore process is done, icons appear next to the completed task.
     
     - By clicking the folder icon (_folder_ ) you can browse the folders and files on the virtual machine.
     
     - By clicking the unmount icon ( _unmount_ ) you can unmount the virtual machine without restoring any files or folders.
6. Continue with Downloading the Files and Folders from the Virtual Machine on page 317.

Downloading the Files and Folders from the Virtual Machine

In this procedure you select the files and folders. The files are downloaded to the machine where you run the Zerto User Interface. Make sure that this machine has enough space for the recovered files.

To download folders or files:

1. Click the folder icon (️).

The File and Folder Restore dialog is displayed showing the VM and the point in time selected.
2. Click **NEXT**.

The FILE/FOLDER step is displayed.

3. Select the files and folders you want to download.

**Note:**

- Grayed out files are not supported therefore cannot be selected. For a list of unsupported files, see the Interoperability Matrix. When hovering over a grayed out item, a message is displayed when there is an error parsing a supported file system. The error does not fail the entire mount task.

- When a selected folder contains unsupported files, only the supported files will successfully download. Meaning, only the supported files will appear in the download folder.

- For NTFS, Zerto will show the drive letter of the volume as it appears in Windows.

- For Linux and other scenarios where drive letter cannot be calculated, Zerto will present (Volume #1-Filesystem type-label (if it exists).

The selected files or folders are displayed in the right pane of the dialog. The number of items selected is displayed and the size of the selected files is also displayed.
4. Click **NEXT**.

The **DOWNLOAD** step is displayed. It shows the files and folders you selected for downloading.

By default, when you select multiple files or one or more folders, the data is compressed before it is downloaded. If you select only one file, for download, you can choose whether or not the file is compressed.

5. Click **START DOWNLOAD**.

The files and folders are downloaded by default to the downloads folder on the computer where
you run the Zerto User Interface.

When a selected folder contains unsupported files, only the supported files will successfully
download. Meaning, only the supported files will appear in the download folder.

---

**Note:** Saving the files and folders to a network share is dependent on the browser used to
display the Zerto User Interface and the settings for this browser.

- When you select one file to download, and do not compress the file, the name of the downloaded file is the name of the file. For example, if you download a file called **Important-file.docx**, the name of the file on your computer will be **Important-file.docx**.

- When you choose one file and choose to compress it, or you select multiple files, the files are zipped into a file called **ZertoDownloads.zip**.

6. Unmount the virtual machine after the files or folders are downloaded. To unmount the virtual
machine, click the unmount icon ( ).

**Searching for Files/Folders and Restoring their VMs or VPGs**

Search and Restore allows the user to quickly search for files and folders in specific VMs and restore either
the virtual machine or VPG once the desired restore point is identified.
To use Search and Restore, the VM’s File System must first be indexed.

Use the following procedures to first index the VM’s file system, and then to run Search and Restore:

1. Configuring File System Indexing on page 320
2. Running Search and Restore Operations on page 322

Configuring File System Indexing

Zerto can index the VM's file system so the VM's file and folder names can be easily and quickly searched for. To do so, the user must perform the following procedures:

1. First, set an Indexing Repository. See, Setting an Indexing Repository on page 320.

Setting an Indexing Repository

Zerto's indexed data is saved in a Repository. The Indexing Repository is set through the Site Settings. Before you proceed, read the Considerations: on page 320.

Considerations:

• All VMs File System Indexing meta-data is saved on a single Repository.
• File System Indexing meta-data can be saved on an SMB Repository only. Make sure an SMB Repository is already configured in Creating a New Repository for Retention on page 334.
• The same SMB Repository can be used as an indexing Repository and as a long-term retention Repository. Or, a dedicated SMB Repository can be used for File System Indexing meta-data only.

To set an indexing Repository:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETTING ( ) in the top right of the header and select Site Settings.
   The Site Settings window is displayed, with the default tab, Site Information, open
2. Click LTR Settings tab
3. Choose an SMB Repository from the Indexing Repository drop-down menu. You can change the indexing Repository to a different SMB Repository at any point. The change will affect only future
Enabling Virtual Machines for File System Indexing

Enabling virtual machines for indexing can be done when you first create the VPG to protect virtual machines. You can also enable virtual machines for indexing by editing an existing VPG.

**Note:** Indexing, like any other VPG task or operation, blocks any other operation on the VPG, except for Failover.

**Considerations:**

- File System Indexing processes are launched after all the VPG VMs have completed their retention process operations. See Step Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs on page 338 in Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs on page 338.
- File System Indexing is considered successful only if the retention operations are successful. If a retention operation of a VPG fails, the indexing of the VMs within that VPG will also fail.
- Failure to index a VM’s file system does not impact the retention set itself.
- Up to 100 millions entries (Files or Folders) can be indexed per ZVM (under optimal, well scheduled indexing operations).
- You can index 3 virtual machines in parallel and up to 1 per recovery host.

**To enable virtual machines for file system indexing:**

1. Click the **File System Indexing** drop-down menu. The list of protected virtual machines appear. By default, all VMs are not selected.

**Note:** Enabling indexing can be done only if Long Term Retention is enabled.
2. Select the virtual machines to index.

3. Click **DONE**.


Indexing Execution

The index will run after the retention process for all the VMs in the VPG had completed successfully. The indexing task is automatically created and can be stopped manually by going to **Tasks > Abort**.

Running Search and Restore Operations

Running Search and Restore includes the following:

- Performing a Search for files and folders within the virtual machines which were configured for File System Indexing.
- Selecting the files and folders in a retention set and restore on the recovery site.
- Downloading files and folders from the journal where the retention set resides and to restore on the recovery site.

**Considerations:**

- When running multiple Search operations, make sure to monitor the ZVM resources during these operations.

Run a Search Operation

➢ **To run a search for files and folders:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface select **ACTIONS > SEARCH AND RESTORE**.

   The Search and Restore window is displayed.
Only VMs that were successfully indexed appear in the VM in a VPG search field.

2. You can specify the following values, which are then applied to the Search:

   • **VM in VPG**: Type the name of the virtual machine.
   • **Retention Set Date**: Specify the date range of the search. The default range is the last 7 days.
   • **File/folder name**: Type the file or folder name to search for. You can use the wildcard * at the end, middle or the beginning of a word.

3. Click the Search Icon.

   The Search results appear. The Search is limited to 500 results at a time.
The Search results specify the name of the file or folder and the path.

4. Select the file or folder. A list of revisions of that file or folder is displayed according to the **retention set date** previously selected.

The revisions display a list of restore points of the retention sets. The revisions view specifies the following:

- **Date Modified:** The date in which the file or folder was modified.
- **Retention Set Date:** The date of the restore point.
- **Size:** The size of the file. The size of a folder is not displayed.
- **Actions:** Select either Restore VM or Restore VPG.

To Restore a VM or a VPG, choose a restore point and click the Restore VM or Restore VPG icon. Continue to Restoring a VM or VPG from Search.

To download a file or folder, choose a restore point and click the Download icon. Continue to Downloading Files/Foldes from Search.
Restoring a VM or VPG from Search

To restore a single virtual machine or multiple virtual machines from a VPG:

1. Choose a restore point and click the Restore VM or Restore VPG icon.
   The Restore window is displayed on the VM SETTINGS step.

2. If you choose Restore VPG, the list of virtual machines that can be restored is displayed.

2. You can specify the following which are then applied to all the virtual machines to be restored:
   - **Restore on Host**: The IP address of the host where you want the VPG restored.
   - **Restore on Datastore**: The datastore to use for the restored VPG files.
   - **Power On**: Select this if you want the restored virtual machine/s to be powered on.
     - Or -
     - Alternatively, you can use the recovery host and storage specified for each virtual machine in the VPG definition by clicking **APPLY VPG CONFIGURATION**.

3. To change the information in a field, click the field and update the information.

4. To change the host or datastore information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.
   The Configure VM Settings window is displayed.

You can specify the following values, which are then applied to the virtual machine/s to be restored:
• **Restore on Host:** The host where you want the virtual machine/s restored.

• **Restore on Datastore:** The datastore to use for the restored virtual machine/s.

• **Power On:** Select this if you want the restored virtual machine/s to be powered on.

5. To specify the volume information for each virtual machine, from the Actions column, click **Volumes**.

The Volumes dialog is displayed:

![Volumes dialog](image)

6. To edit information in a field, click the field and update the information.

7. To edit information for several datastores at the same time, select the datastores and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Edit Selected Volumes dialog is displayed:

![Edit Selected Volumes dialog](image)

• If more than one datastore is selected, the path is not displayed.

8. Specify the datastore settings.

• **Datastore / Raw Disk:** The storage or RDM disk where the virtual machine files will be restored.

• **Thin:** Whether the virtual machine disks will be thin-provisioned or not.
9. Click **SAVE**.

10. In the Volumes dialog, click **DONE**.

11. To specify the NIC information for each virtual machine, from the Actions column, click **NICs**.

   The NICs window is displayed:

![NICs window](image)

12. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.

13. To edit information for several virtual NICs at the same time, select the NICs and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

   The Edit NIC dialog is displayed.

![Edit NIC dialog](image)

14. Specify the NIC settings.

   - **NIC Name:** The name of the selected NIC.
   - **Network:** The network to use for the restored virtual machine.
   - **Create new MAC address:** The Media Access Control address (MAC address) to use. The default is to use the same MAC address for the restored virtual machine that was used in the protected site.
   - Select the checkbox to create a new MAC address on the restore site.
   - **Change vNIC IP Configuration:** Whether or not to keep the default virtual NIC (vNIC) IP configuration.
   - You can only change the vNIC IP after the restore has completed with VMware Tools installed.
• If you select a **static** IP connection, you must set the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. Optionally, change the preferred and alternate DNS server IPs and the DNS suffix.

• If you select **DHCP**, the IP configuration and DNS server configurations are assigned automatically, to match the protected virtual machine. You can change the DNS suffix.

  • **IP Address:** The IP for the restored virtual machine. This can be the same IP as the original protected virtual machine.
  • **Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for the network. The default value is **255.255.255.0**.
  • **Default Gateway:** The default mask for the network.
  • **Preferred DNS Server:** The IP address of the primary DNS server.
  • **Alternate DNS Server:** The IP address of the alternate DNS server.
  • **DNS Suffix:** The DNS name excluding the host.

15. Click **OK**.

16. Click **DONE**.

17. Click **NEXT**.

   The SUMMARY step is displayed. Review the details of the restore.

18. If this is the retention set which you want to restore, click **RESTORE**.

   The virtual machines are created from the Repository at the recovery site.

**Downloading Files/Folders from Search**

After running a Search operation, you can select the files and folders to download for retention sets that are still available in the journal. The files are downloaded to the machine where you run the Zerto User Interface. Make sure that this machine has enough space for the recovered files.

➢ **To download files/folders from Search:**
1. Choose a restore point, then click **Download**.

   ![Search and Restore](image)

   This initiates the Mount process of the VM where the retention set exists.

2. Click **OK** to mount the virtual machine
   - When the mount completes, icons appear next to the completed task.
     - By clicking the folder icon (👍) you can download the selected files or folder.
     - By clicking the unmount icon (👎) you can unmount the virtual machine without restoring any files or folders.

3. Click the folder icon.

   The **DOWNLOAD** step is displayed. It shows the files and folders you selected for downloading.
To start the download, continue to Click START DOWNLOAD. on page 331. If you wish to download additional files and folders from the mounted VM, continue to To download additional files and folders, click Previous. on page 330.

4. To download additional files and folders, click Previous.

The FILE/FOLDER step is displayed. The selected file or folder is already displayed in the right pane of the dialog.

5. Select the files and folders you want to download.

**Note:**

- Graded out files are not supported therefore cannot be selected. For a list of unsupported files, see the Interoperability Matrix. When hovering over a grayed out item, a message is displayed when there is an error parsing a supported file system. The error does not fail the entire mount task.

- When a selected folder contains unsupported files, only the supported files will successfully download. Meaning, only the supported files will appear in the download folder.

- For NTFS, Zerto will show the drive letter of the volume as it appears in Windows.

- For Linux and other scenarios where drive letter cannot be calculated, Zerto will present {Volume #1-Filesystem type-label (if it exists)}.

6. Click NEXT.

The DOWNLOAD step is displayed. It shows the files and folders you selected for downloading.

By default, when you select multiple files or one or more folders, the data is compressed before it is downloaded. If you select only one file, for download, you can choose whether or not the
file is compressed.

7. Click **START DOWNLOAD**.

The files and folders are downloaded by default to the downloads folder on the computer where you run the Zerto User Interface.

When a selected folder contains unsupported files, only the supported files will successfully download. Meaning, only the supported files will appear in the download folder.

**Note:** Saving the files and folders to a network share is dependent on the browser used to display the Zerto User Interface and the settings for this browser.

- When you select one file to download, and do not compress the file, the name of the downloaded file is the name of the file. For example, if you download a file called *Important-file.docx*, the name of the file on your computer will be *Important-file.docx*.

- When you choose one file and choose to compress it, or you select multiple files, the files are zipped into a file called *ZertoDownloads.zip*.

8. Unmount the virtual machine after the files or folders are downloaded. To unmount the virtual machine, click the unmount icon (*`).
Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention

Zerto enables recovering VPGs from a Repository to the recovery site.

This section contains the following information and procedures:

Long Term Retention - Overview on page 332
Workflow: Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention on page 333
Creating a New Repository for Retention on page 334
Editing an Existing Repository for Retention on page 337
Deleting an Existing Repository for Retention on page 337
Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs on page 338
Monitoring Your Long Term Retention Status on page 343
Searching for Files/Folders and Restoring their VMs or VPGs on page 319
Restoring VMs or VPGs from a Repository on page 348
Storing Retention Sets on page 353

Note: If you are upgrading Zerto, and if your site was already configured with Long Term Retention, or retention configurations, review Long Term Retention known issues and limitations, and see the guide, Upgrading Zerto Virtual Replication.

Long Term Retention - Overview

Using Zerto’s data retention to restore data, IT users are able to define a Retention Policy for their organization, where data can be retained for extended periods of time. The user defines what data is saved where, and for how long the data should be retained, according to the organizations regulation policy. Each VPG is equipped with its own retention policy.

When the user needs to restore the data, they can then select a specific point in time and perform a VPG level restore.

To support advanced VM-level or file-level restore scenarios, Zerto offers the capability to index files and folders of selected VMs that are enabled for retention. This allows users to search for the necessary files and folders and to perform a one-click restore of the VMs or VPGs containing those files and folders.

For further details, refer to (On-premise environments) What is Zerto’s Long Term Retention? on page 47.

What does the Repository Contain?
The Repository contains retention sets, where each retention set has it’s own mapping file (DOM file).

How does the Long Term Retention process work?
When Long Term Retention is first configured, and the first reading of the data has occurred, the retention set consists of:

- All the data copied to the Repository.

When the second reading and any subsequent readings after a full retention of the data occurs, the retention set consists of:

- All the data from the first reading, but not including any original data which was marked as changed during the second reading.
- The changed data from the second reading.

Each incremental retention set is independent of previous incremental and full retention sets, and gives a complete and total picture of the data at the point in time of the reading.

**What happens when the Retention Policy period is overdue?**

Retention sets are kept for the retention period specified as part of the Retention Policy configuration. Once the retention expires, the expired retention sets will be deleted from the Repositories.

**Before You Begin**

For additional file and folder recovery considerations or known issues, see the Release Notes > Known Issues > Long Term Retention.

**Workflow: Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Link to Procedure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Create and configure Repositories for retention</td>
<td>Before you can enable and use Long Term Retention, you must define the Repository where the retention sets will reside.</td>
<td>Creating a New Repository for Retention on page 334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Enable Long Term Retention for the VPG by defining the Retention Policy</td>
<td>Do this either when you create and configure a VPG, or when you edit a VPG.</td>
<td>Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs on page 338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>(Ad hoc) Manually run the retention process</td>
<td>Manually run the retention process ad hoc, as needed.</td>
<td>Manually Running the Retention Process on page 342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Monitor your long term retention status</td>
<td>Via the RETENTION STATUS tab</td>
<td>Storing Retention Sets on page 353</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Creating a New Repository for Retention

Disaster recovery using Zerto enables recovering from a disaster to any point between the moment just before the disaster and a specified amount of time in the past up to 30 days. The recovery is done in real time at the recovery site with a minimal RTO.

If you need to extend the recovery ability to more than 30 days, Zerto provides Long Term Retention that enables saving the protected data in a state where they can be easily deployed.

The data is saved in a Repository for a defined retention period. Each VPG will have retention sets created according to a fixed schedule. Repositories are external network connected storage resources, such as Purpose Built Backup Appliances (PBBA) or NAS storage systems.

The retention process is managed by the ZVM, and the Data Streaming Service (DSS) performs all the data path operations. During the retention process, the DSS communicates with the VRA on the recovery site. The retention sets are fixed points saved either daily, weekly, monthly or yearly in the Repository. Before you can start a retention process for VPGs, you must first create one or more Repositories for the retention process.

Zerto keeps the retention sets in Repositories. As the retention process is running on the recovery site, the repositories are connected to the recovery VRAs. Zerto can connect to these repositories using NFS, SMB (CIFS) or HPE StoreOnce Catalyst protocols, where the underlying storage can be either standard storage appliances or Purposely Built Backup Appliances (PBBAs) such as ExaGrid or HPE StoreOnce.

Once the repository has been configured, it can be selected as a target in the VPG retention policy configuration. Before you proceed, read the Considerations: on page 334.

Considerations:

- HPE StoreOnce Catalyst Considerations:
  - The Catalyst Store on the HPE StoreOnce appliance must support LBW as the “Transfer policy”.
  - Catalyst API server version should be v9 and above.
  - The Catalyst Store on the HPE StoreOnce appliance must allow access to the recovery VRA. The default setting is No Access. A user with Administrator Role can enable access through the Catalyst User Interface.
  - The Catalyst Store on the HPE StoreOnce appliance must have credentials already defined.
These credential are used when setting up the Repository in the Zerto User Interface.

- The HPE StoreOnce Catalyst repository requires increasing the VRAs RAM to 4GB. 1GB will be allocated for Catalyst usage.

To create a repository for Long Term Retention:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETUP > REPOSITORIES > NEW REPOSITORY.

The New Repository window is displayed.

2. In the General area, specify the following:
   - **Name**: A unique name for the repository.
   - **Storage Type**: The type of storage can be a network share, selected PBBAs or other de-duplicating appliance. See the [Interoperability Matrix](#) for supported versions.

   - **Network Share**
• Other De-Duplicating Storage Appliances

| Purposely Built Backup Appliances (PBBAs): | HPE StoreOnce  
|                                           | ExaGrid        
|                                           | Dell EMC DataDomain |

• Connection Type:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Connection Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NFS</td>
<td>The network share is connected on top of NFS protocol.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMB</td>
<td>The network share is connected on top of SMB (CIFS) protocol. Username and password must be provided to access the share.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Username:** The username can be entered using either of the following formats:
- username
- domain\username

**Password:** Password to access the Network Share.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HPE StoreOnce Catalyst</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Username:</strong></td>
<td>The username can be entered using either of the following formats:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- domain\username</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Password:** Password to access the Catalyst store.

**Catalyst Server:** IP of the HPE StoreOnce appliance that holds the Catalyst store.

**Catalyst store name:** The Catalyst store name in HPE StoreOnce appliance.

3. In the Location area, define the **Path**. This is the path where the Repository will reside. This field does not apply to HPE StoreOnce Catalyst connection type. Zerto recommends using an empty folder when creating a new Repository.

   The path must be accessible from the VRA, so if the Repository is on a different domain, the domain must be included in the path.

4. In the Properties area, you can check the **Set as default repository** checkbox. This will use the Repository as the default when defining the Retention policy in a VPG.

5. **Click SAVE.** The repository is created.
After setting up a Repository, you can protect virtual machines for longer periods of times, enabling Zerto’s Long Term Retention.

6. To define an additional Repository, repeat this procedure.

7. When using Zerto Cloud Manager, you must also add the Repository to either the vCenter resources or vCD resources in the Zerto Cloud Manager. For details, see the Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

8. Proceed with Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs on page 338.

Editing an Existing Repository for Retention

You can change the Repository name, or define the Repository as the default repository.

➢ To edit a Repository:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETUP tab, REPOSITORIES sub-tab.

2. Select the Repository to edit and click MORE > Edit.

   The Edit Repository window is displayed.

3. Edit any of the following settings:

   • Name: Specify a unique name for the Repository.

   • Set as default repository: Select to use the Repository as the default when defining the Retention policy in a VPG.

4. Click SAVE. The updated definition of the Repository is saved.

Deleting an Existing Repository for Retention

Deleting a Repository disconnects it from the Zerto. When a Repository is deleted, the retentions set can no longer be restored or found through a Search operation.

➢ To delete a Repository:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETUP tab, REPOSITORIES sub-tab.

2. Select the Repository to delete and click MORE > Delete.

   A warning message appears informing the user that the Retention sets in that Repository will no longer be restorable.

3. Click OK to delete the Repository.
Enabling Long Term Retention for the VPGs

Following is the procedure for enabling Long Term Retention for a VPG.

**Note:** Long Term retention is not available when the VPG is recovered to a Public Cloud.

**Note:** When needed, you can manually run the retention process ad hoc. See Manually Running the Retention Process on page 342

Requirements

- Verify that a Repository was created where the retention sets will be saved. Repositories are created and configured via the SETUP tab as described in Creating a New Repository for Retention on page 334.

- When using Long Term Retention, make sure the VRA is configured with 2 vCPUs.

Long Term Retention can be enabled at the same time when you first create the VPG to protect virtual machines.

You can also enable Long Term Retention by editing an existing VPG.

To enable Long Term Retention for a VPG:

1. Toggle **Long Term Retention** from OFF to ON.

   The options on the screen become available.

**Note:** When a VPG is recovered to a Public Cloud, Long Term Retention is not available.
2. Select the **Target Repository** from the drop-down list. This is the name of the Repository where the Retention sets are written. The **Connection Type** and **Path** of that Repository appear after selecting the **Target Repository**.

3. Select the VMs to index from the **File System Indexing** drop-down list. For details on file system indexing, see Configuring File System Indexing on page 320.

4. Run all retention processes at: The time to start the Retention process. The time is shown in UTC and is according to the Zerto Virtual Manager clock in the production site. All **Daily**, **Weekly**, **Monthly** or **Yearly** retentions will run at this time.

5. **Daily** and **Monthly** retentions are toggled ON by default and the default Retention settings for **Schedule**, **Type** and **Keep For** appear. By default, all Retention processes are scheduled to run on the same day.

6. Toggle the **Weekly** or **Yearly** retentions from OFF to ON. The default Retention settings for **Schedule**, **Type** and **Keep For** appear. The Retention setting **Keep For** is the length of time to keep the Retention sets. For details of how this affects the number of Retention sets saved, see Storing Retention Sets on page 353.

   **Note:** Daily or Weekly Retentions must be configured. Weekly or Monthly retentions must be configured to **Full**.

7. If you do not want to use the default settings, click the edit icon next to each Retention setting and configure the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

   Click the edit icon. The Daily Retention window is displayed.

   - **Run at**: The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Daily Retention window.

   - **Keep For**: Define the number of days to keep the Daily Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weekly</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click the edit icon. The Weekly Retention window is displayed.</td>
<td>• <strong>Every:</strong> Run a Retention process <em>every</em> selected day of the week.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Type:</strong> Select <strong>Full</strong> or <strong>Incremental</strong> from the drop-down menu.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Full:</strong> All the data is copied to the Repository.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Incremental:</strong> Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Run at:</strong> The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Weekly Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of weeks to keep the Weekly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention

## Monthly

Click the edit icon. The Monthly Retention window is displayed.

### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Monthly**           | • Run a Retention process on the **first**, **second**, **third**, **fourth** or **last** selected day of each month. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each month.  
• Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific date of the month up to the 28th and last. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the 12th of each month.  
• **Type:** Select **Full** or **Incremental** from the drop-down menu.  
• **Full:** All the data is copied to the Repository.  
• **Incremental:** Only the changes from the last Retention process are copied.  
• **Run at:** The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Monthly Retention window.  
• **Keep for:** Define the number of months to keep the Monthly Retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention. |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Yearly</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Click the edit icon. The Yearly Retention window is displayed.</td>
<td>Run a Retention process on the <strong>first</strong> or <strong>last</strong> selected day of the year. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process on the last Sunday of each year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Or, you can run a Retention process on a specific <strong>day</strong> and <strong>month</strong> of the year. For example, you can choose to run a Retention process every 12th of July.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Run at: The time set to run all Retention processes. This field cannot be edited from the Yearly Retention window.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Keep for:</strong> Define the number of years to keep the Yearly retentions. A rotation of the Retention process will be performed to enforce the predefined Retention.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. **Retries**: Select **Automatic retry after failure** to automatically rerun the Retention process, if the operation fails.
   - If you select this option, you must also define **Number of attempts**, and the **Wait time between retries**.

**Manually Running the Retention Process**

After initializing the VPG, Zerto periodically checks that the schedule to run a Retention process has not passed. At the scheduled Retention process time, the job is run and the Retention set is stored in the specified Repository.

At any time, you can decide that you need to run the Retention process, without waiting for the scheduled time. Use the following procedure to do this.

**To manually run the Retention process:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click one of the following tabs: **VPGs / VMs / RETENTION STATUS**.
2. Select one or more VPGs for the Retention process, and click **MORE>Run retention process**.
3. Click **OK**. The retention process starts.
   - You can monitor the progress in the RETENTION STATUS tab and the TASKS pane.
• During the Retention process you cannot perform operations on the VPG without first aborting the job.
• If you start a live failover during the Retention process, you are then prompted to abort the Retention process job.
• Scheduled Retention process runs for the VPG are skipped, until the manual Retention process run ends.

Monitoring Your Long Term Retention Status

You can monitor retention status of the VPG via the SETUP tab, or via the RETENTION STATUS tab.

Monitoring Retention Status via the SETUP Tab on page 343
Monitoring Retention Status via the RETENTION STATUS Tab on page 344

Monitoring Retention Status via the SETUP Tab

In the SETUP tab > REPOSITORIES sub-tab, view details of all the Repositories which were defined, and which can be used for retention. All the Repositories created for the site are displayed in this tab.

For each Repository, the following information is displayed:

**Star:** A highlighted star indicates that this is the default Repository.

**Repository Name:** The name of the Repository. This field contains icons that you can click to edit or delete the Repository.

**Repository Type:** The type of Repository.

**Connectivity:** Whether the Repository is connected or not.

**Path:** The path to the Repository.

**VPGs:** The VPG which uses this Repository for Long Term Retention.

**Restore Points:** The restore points for the retention sets out of the total retention sets saved to the Repository.
Tip:
In this window you can also create a new Repository by clicking NEW REPOSITORY.

Monitoring Retention Status via the RETENTION STATUS Tab

In the RETENTION STATUS tab, view details of all the Repositories, either according to VPGs, or according to VMs, which are used for Retention. All the Repositories created for the site are displayed in this tab.

See the following:
- RETENTION STATUS tab, VPGs Sub-tab on page 344
- RETENTION STATUS tab, VMs Sub-tab on page 346

RETENTION STATUS tab, VPGs Sub-tab
View details of the retention jobs by VPG.
You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.
By default, the GENERAL view is selected. In addition to filtering and sorting of columns, you can click RUN DETAILS to view information on the retention processes sessions.

RETENTION STATUS tab, VPGs Sub-tab - GENERAL View on page 344
RETENTION STATUS tab, VPGs Sub-tab - RUN DETAILS View on page 345

RETENTION STATUS tab, VPGs Sub-tab - GENERAL View
The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:
Zerto Virtual Manager Administration Guide Microsoft Hyper-V Environment - Rev01 U2
Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention

VPG Name: The name of the VPG.
Repository Name: The name of the Repository where the Repository set are to be stored.
Repository Site: The site where the VPG Repository is located. The retention sets are stored on a network shared drive which is accessible from this site.
Status: The status of the job: Running or Scheduled.
VPG Size: The size of the VPG in the last run, which is stored on disk.
Result of Last Run: The result of the last run: Full success, Partial success, or Failed.
Restore Points: The restore points for the retention sets out of the total retention sets run for the VPG.

See also Adding or Removing Columns from the View on page 345.

RETENTION STATUS tab, VPGs Sub-tab - RUN DETAILS View

The following information is displayed in the RUN DETAILS view:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VPG Name: The name of the VPG.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Result of Last Run:</strong> The result of the last run: Full success, Partial success, or Failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time of Last Run: The time of the last run. If a retention process has not yet run on this VPG, the field is empty.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Next Scheduled Run: The time of the next scheduled run.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Successful Run: The date and time of the last successful retention process.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

See also Adding or Removing Columns from the View on page 345.

Adding or Removing Columns from the View

Click the configuration icon ( □ ), then click Show/Hide Columns to display a window with a list of additional columns which can be added to the view.
Repository Site: The site where the VPG is retained. The retention sets are stored on a network shared resource which is accessible from this site.

Status: The status of the job: Running or Scheduled.

ZORG: A name given to an organization by a cloud service provider. For details refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

No. of Volumes: The number of volumes protected by the VPG.

Repository Name: The name of the Repository where the retention set is stored.

Protected Site: The name of the site.

Last Run Size: The size of the last retention set performed by Zerto Virtual Manager.

VPG Size: The size of the VPG in the last run, which is stored on disk.

Restore Points: The restore points for the retention sets out of the total retention sets run for the VPG.

No. of VMs: The total number of virtual machines protected by the VPG.

RETENTION STATUS tab, VMs Sub-tab

View details of the retention sets by virtual machine.

You can filter information in columns via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column.

![Retention Status Table]

RETENTION STATUS tab, VMs Sub-tab - GENERAL View

The following information is displayed in the GENERAL view:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VM Name</td>
<td>The name of the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPG Name</td>
<td>The name of the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protected Site</td>
<td>The name of the site where the VPG is protected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repository Site</td>
<td>The site where the virtual machine is backed up. The retention sets are stored on a network shared drive which is accessible from this site.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Status:
The status of the retention set.

### Repository Name:
The name of the Repository where the retention set is stored.

### VM Size:
The size of the VMs stored on disk.

### Result of Last Run:
The result of the last run: **Full success**, **Partial success**, or **Failed**.

### Restore Points:
The restore points for the retention sets out of the total retention sets run for the VPG.

### RETENTION STATUS tab, VMs Sub-tab - RUN DETAILS View

The following information is displayed in the RUN DETAILS view:

- **VM Name:** The name of the Virtual machine.
- **VPG Name:** The name of the VPG.
- **Protected Site:** The name of the site where the VPG is protected.
- **Result of Last Run:** The result of the last run: **Success**, **Partial success**, or **Failed**.
- **Time of Last Run:** The time of the last run.
- **Next Scheduled Run:** The time of the next scheduled run.
- **Last Successful Run:** The date and time of the last successful retention process.

#### MORE Options

- Click **MORE > Stop Retention Process** to abort a running job. Any virtual machine volumes already stored in the repository are not removed and the job status is partial if there are any stored volumes.

- Click **MORE > Run Retention Process** to start a job for a selected VPG, outside of the schedule for that VPG.

### Adding or Removing Columns from the View

- Click the configuration icon (.), then click **Show/Hide Columns** to display a window with a list of additional columns which can be added to the view.
VPG Name:
Repository Site: The site where the VPG is restored. The retention sets are stored on a network shared resource which is accessible from this site.
Repository Name: The name of the Repository where the retention sets are to be stored.
ZORG: A name given to an organization by a cloud service provider. For details refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.
Status: The status of the retention set: Running or Scheduled.
Last Run Size: The size of the last retention set performed by Zerto Virtual Manager.
VM Size: The size of the VM in the last run, which is stored on disk.
Restore Points: The restore points for the retention sets out of the total retention sets run for the VPG.
# of Volumes: The number of volumes associated with the VM.

Restoring VMs or VPGs from a Repository

Use Restore to recover the VPG's virtual machines on the recovery site from a retention set. The virtual machines on the protected site remain protected and live.

You restore a VPG to the recovery site, by specifying the VPG with retention.

(vCloud Director only) When the recovery site, where the retention sets are stored, is managed by a cloud service provider using vCloud Director, only the cloud service provider can initiate the restore. When you restore a VPG to a recovery vCD site, the retained VMs are created in a vCenter Server and the virtual machines have to be manually imported into vCD.

Data Flow: Restoring from Long Term Retention Repositories

The Restore operation has the following basic steps:

1. The ZVM (via the VRA) finds the specified retention set in the Repository.
2. The ZVM creates the virtual machines under the designated host and storage on the recovery site.
   The host and storage can be the same as the recovery host and storage specified in the VPG, or it can be any other host and associated storage in the site.
3. ZVM uses the VRA to restore the disks from the Repository to the specified datastores.

   Note: If any issues occur while restoring the retained volumes, as long as there are still volumes to restore, the restore process can continue to restore the remaining volumes.

4. If requested, the restored virtual machines are powered on, and IP Settings are configured.

Restoring VMs or VPGs

Use the following procedure to restore a VM or a VPG from the repository.
To restore a single virtual machine or multiple virtual machines from a VPG:

1. In the Zerto User Interface select **ACTIONS > RESTORE**. The Restore wizard is displayed.

   ![Restore Wizard Image]

2. Select a VM to restore from the Restore from VM drop-down list or type the VM name. Or, select a VPG to restore from the Restore from VPG drop-down list or type the VPG name. If a VM/VPG was renamed, both the original and new names will appear.

   The drop-down lists include VMs or VPGs that are currently configured or were configured/deleted on your site. VMs or VPGs marked with an arrow are VMs/VPGs that were configured on your site and are no longer protected.

3. Click **NEXT**.

   The RESTORE SETTINGS step appears, displaying all the available retention sets for the selected virtual machine or the VPG.

   ![Restore Settings Image]

4. From the list of available retention sets, select the retention set to restore, where:
   - **Point in Time:** The date and time the retention set was performed.
   - **Restore Site:** The recovery site where the virtual machine or VPG reside.
• **VMs:** The number of virtual machines that were retained in this retention set.

• **Volumes:** The number of volumes that were retained in this retention set, out of the total number of volumes for the virtual machine/s.

• **Repository:** The name of the repository where the retention set is stored.

• **ZORG:** *(ZCM sites only)* The Zerto organization for which the retention set was created. This field only has a value if the Zerto Cloud Manager is connected to the site. For details, see *Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide*.

5. When you select a retention set to restore, the list of virtual machines in the retention set appear, displaying the following information:

   **VM Name:** The name of the virtual machine.
   
   **# of volumes to be restored:** The number of volumes retained, out of the total number of volumes for the virtual machine.
   
   **Provisioned VM Size:** The total size of the virtual machine.

6. Click **NEXT**.

   The VM SETTINGS step is displayed.

   When restoring a VPG, the list of virtual machines that can be restored is displayed.

7. You can specify the following which are then applied to the virtual machine/s to be restored:

   • **Restore on Host:** The host where you want the virtual machine/s restored.
   
   • **Restore on Datastore:** The datastore to use for the restored virtual machine/s.
   
   • **Power On:** Select this if you want the restored virtual machine/s to be powered on.

   - **Or** -

   • Alternatively, you can use the recovery host and storage specified for each virtual machine in the VPG definition by clicking **APPLY VPG CONFIGURATION**.
8. To change the information in a field, click the field and update the information.

9. To change the host or datastore information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Configure VM Settings window is displayed.

You can specify the following values, which are then applied to the virtual machine/s to be restored:

- **Restore on Host**: The host where you want the virtual machine/s restored.
- **Restore on Datastore**: The datastore to use for the restored virtual machine/s.
- **Power On**: Select this if you want the restored virtual machine/s to be powered on.

10. To specify the volume information for each virtual machine, from the Actions column, click **Volumes**.

The Volumes dialog is displayed:

11. To edit information in a field, click the field and update the information.

12. To edit information for several datastores at the same time, select the datastores and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

The Edit Selected Volumes dialog is displayed.
• If more than one datastore is selected, the path is not displayed.

13. Specify the datastore settings.

• **Datastore / Raw Disk:** The storage or RDM disk where the virtual machine files will be restored.

• **Thin:** Whether the virtual machine disks will be thin-provisioned or not.

14. Click **SAVE**.

15. In the Volumes dialog, click **DONE**.

16. To specify the NIC information for each virtual machine, from the Actions column, click **NICs**.

   The NICs window is displayed:

   ![NICs window](image)

17. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.

18. To edit information for several virtual NICs at the same time, select the NICs and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

   The Edit NIC dialog is displayed.
19. Specify the NIC settings.

- **NIC Name:** The name of the selected NIC.
- **Network:** The network to use for the restored virtual machine.
- **Create new MAC address:** The Media Access Control address (MAC address) to use. The default is to use the same MAC address for the restored virtual machine that was used in the protected site.
- **Change vNIC IP Configuration:** Select the checkbox to create a new MAC address on the restore site.
- **IP Address:** The IP for the restored virtual machine. This can be the same IP as the original protected virtual machine.
- **Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for the network. The default value is 255.255.255.0.
- **Default Gateway:** The default mask for the network.
- **Preferred DNS Server:** The IP address of the primary DNS server.
- **Alternate DNS Server:** The IP address of the alternate DNS server.
- **DNS Suffix:** The DNS name excluding the host.

20. Click **OK**.

21. Click **DONE**.

22. Click **NEXT**.

   The SUMMARY step is displayed. Review the details of the restore.

23. If this is the retention set which you want to restore, click **RESTORE**.

   The virtual machines are created from the Repository at the recovery site.

**Storing Retention Sets**

Retention sets are kept on the configured Repository for the retention period specified as part of the Retention Policy configuration.
The same retention set might be marked as a relevant copy for several retention periods. For example, it can be a retention set used for both a monthly copy as well as a yearly one.

Once a retention-set expires (i.e. all configured retention periods are not referencing it), it is removed from the system. Once a day, Zerto scans the Repository and deletes retention sets which expired.
Troubleshooting

You can handle problems related to the WAN connecting the protecting or recovery sites, or other problems using a variety of diagnostic and troubleshooting tools.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:

• Ensuring the Zerto Virtual Manager is Running on page 355
• Troubleshooting Needs Configuration Problems on page 355
• Troubleshooting GUI Problems on page 356
• Troubleshooting VRA Problems on page 356
• Handling Lack of Storage Space for Recovered Virtual Machines on page 357
• Zerto Diagnostics Utility on page 357
• Collecting Zerto Logs on page 357

For details about Zerto Virtual Manager alarms, alerts, and events, refer to Zerto Guide to Alerts and Events.

Ensuring the Zerto Virtual Manager is Running

If you have problems accessing the Zerto User Interface, check under Windows Services, on the machine where Zerto is installed, that the Zerto Virtual Manager Windows service is started.

Troubleshooting Needs Configuration Problems

When the VPG status changes to Needs Configuration, the settings in the VPG need to be checked and, when necessary, updated.
The following scenarios result in the VPG status changing to Needs Configuration:

- A protected disk resize operation fails, for example when there is not enough disk space.
- Shrinking a protected disk.
- When a volume is added to a protected virtual machine and the added volume has no matching storage or not enough room on the recovery storage.
- When a volume is added to a protected virtual machine and the VPG settings are not updated because of a site disconnection or a SCVMM error. In some situations, after the sites reconnect, the state corrects itself automatically.
- When performing a Failover or Move operation, if you do not specify reverse protection.

Troubleshooting GUI Problems

Host is Not Displayed in List of Hosts in the Manage VPG Dialog

If the installation of a VRA completes successfully, but the allocation of the IP takes too long, when attempting to specify the host to recover a VPG, the host where the VRA is installed does not appear in the list, you must uninstall and then re-install the VRA.

Troubleshooting VRA Problems

VPG Syncing Takes a Long Time – Network Problems

Check the network. If the firewall configuration is modified, the VRA TCP connections must be reset. After a VRA disconnect and reconnect the system can wait for up to fifteen minutes before syncing the sites after the reconnection.

Host is Not Displayed in List of Hosts in the Manage VPG Dialog

If the installation of a VRA completes successfully, but the allocation of the IP takes too long, when attempting to specify the host to recover a VPG, the host where the VRA is installed does not appear in the list, you must uninstall and then re-install the VRA.

VRA Crashes During Promotion

If a VRA is promoting data to a recovery virtual machine and the VRA fails, the VRA starts up automatically but you might have to restart the virtual machine manually and then the promotion will continue.
Cannot Install a VRA After Uninstalling a VRA on the Host

Uninstalling a VRA sometimes leaves a zagentid folder and you cannot install a new VRA, because of an old, unused, zagentid folder. Delete the zagentid folder manually.

**Note:** This only happens if a file was manually added to the zagentid folder.

Handling Lack of Storage Space for Recovered Virtual Machines

If a recovery virtual machine does not have enough space on the recovery site, the promotion of data to the recovered virtual machine hangs. If this occurs you should add more space to the machine and then start the machine. The promotion will then continue.

Zerto Diagnostics Utility

Zerto includes a diagnostics utility to help resolve actual and potential problems. Using the diagnostics tool, you can do the following:

- Collect logs to help Zerto support resolve problems. The Zerto Virtual Manager must be running on each site for which you want logs. See [To collect logs for Zerto support to use when troubleshooting: on page 359](#).
- Collect local Zerto Virtual Manager logs. Use this option if the Zerto Virtual Manager is not running. See [To collect local Zerto Virtual Manager logs when the Zerto Virtual Manager is not running: on page 364](#).
- Check the connectivity between Zerto components. See [To check connectivity between Zerto Virtual Manager components: on page 244](#).
- Reconfigure the Zerto Virtual Manager, including the IP addresses of the vCenter Server and of the machine running the Zerto Virtual Manager, and the SSL certificate used when accessing the Zerto User Interface. See [Reconfiguring the Zerto Virtual Manager Setup on page 245](#).
- Export VPG settings to an external file and import these settings.
- Reconfigure access to the Microsoft SQL Server that is used by the Zerto Virtual Manager. This database was specified during the installation of Zerto. See [Reconfiguring the Microsoft SQL Server Database Used by the Zerto Virtual Manager on page 248](#).

**Note:** A separate installation kit is available for download from the Zerto Support Portal downloads page that installs the Zerto Diagnostics utility as a standalone utility on any Windows machine that has Microsoft .NET Framework 4.7.2 installed.

Collecting Zerto Logs

Virtual replication logs can be collected to help Zerto support resolve problems related to Zerto. Zerto logs can be collected in the following ways:
Using Remote Log Collection on page 358
Using the Zerto Diagnostics Application on page 359

Using Remote Log Collection

Remote Log Collection allows customers to authorize Zerto support engineers to collect logs from their environment. By using remote log collection customers can avoid having to use the Diagnostic Tool on their ZVM server in order to collect logs for analysis, a potentially complex and time-consuming procedure.

To enable Remote Log Collection:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETTINGS in the top right of the header and select Remote Support.

   The Remote Support dialog is displayed.

2. Click the drop down menu to display the remote log collection options.

3. Select the remote log collection option you wish to allow:
   - **Never**: Remote log collection is not allowed (default). If remote log collection is currently allowed, the remote connection will be terminated if you select this option.
   - **For the next 30 days**: Remote log collection is allowed. This permission will automatically terminate in 30 days unless terminated by selecting the Never option.
   - **Only for the duration of a specific case**: You will be prompted to select the Case number from the drop-down list. The list contains all the active cases opened under the account that the Zerto Virtual Manager is registered to.
Remote log collection will be allowed for as long as the case is active or until remote log collection is terminated by selecting the **Never** option.

4. Click **Save**.

**Using the Zerto Diagnostics Application**

You can collect logs using the diagnostics tool to help Zerto support resolve problems when the Zerto Virtual Manager is running or when the Zerto Virtual Manager is not running.

- When the Zerto Virtual Manager is running, see **To collect logs for Zerto support to use when troubleshooting: on page 359**. This option enables you to specify the logs that you want to collect, generated by Zerto, for example VRA logs, as well as logs generated by VMware, for example, vCenter Server logs or host logs. The Zerto generated logs can be filtered by any alerts issued and by the VPGs that require analysis to identify problems.

- When the Zerto Virtual Manager is not running, see **To collect local Zerto Virtual Manager logs when the Zerto Virtual Manager is not running: on page 364**.

**To collect logs for Zerto support to use when troubleshooting:**

1. Open the Zerto Diagnostics application. For example, via Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics.

   The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Collect the Zerto logs for use by Zerto support option.
3. Click **Next**.

The Initialize dialog is displayed.

4. Specify the following and click **Next**.

**IP / Host Name:** The IP of the Zerto Virtual Manager where the log collection runs from. Logs are collected from this site and from the paired site.

**Port:** The port used for inbound communication with the Zerto Virtual Manager.

**Your Company Name:** A name to identify the log collection for the customer. This information is used by Zerto support. An account name must be entered. After this information is added, it is displayed in subsequent uses of the diagnostics utility.

**Email:** An email address for use by Zerto support when analyzing the logs. An email address must be entered. After this information is added, it is displayed in subsequent uses of the diagnostics utility.

**Timeframe:** The amount of time you want to collect logs for. The more time, the bigger the collection package.

**Case Number:** The case number assigned by Zerto support, if one already exists. Optional.

**Description:** An optional free text description of the reason for collecting the logs.

After clicking Next the utility connects to Zerto and if any alerts have been issued, they are displayed in the Select Alerts dialog.

If there are no alerts, this dialog is skipped.
5. Select any alerts that need analyzing from the list and click **Next**.

   The Select VPGs dialog is displayed.

6. Select the VPGs that you want analyzed and click **Next**.

   The Customize dialogs are displayed. These dialogs can generally be left with their default values.

   The following Customize dialogs are displayed:
   - The Select Sites dialog
   - The Select VRA Hosts dialog
   - The Select vSphere Logs dialog (not applicable when all the sites are SCVMM sites)
   - The Select vCloud Director Logs dialog (not applicable when all the sites are SCVMM sites)

   The Select Sites dialog is displayed, with the list local site and all the sites paired to it listed.
Those sites that are either protecting or used for recovery for any of the selected VPGs from the previous dialog are automatically selected.

**Note:** Zerto Virtual Manager logs from both sites are collected when both sites are trusted sites otherwise only logs from the local site are collected.

7. Verify that the sites that need analyzing are selected and click **Next**.

   The Select VRA Hosts dialog is displayed.

   Those hosts with VRAs that are used to protect or recover any of the selected VPGs are automatically selected.

   You can change the collection criteria using the plus and minus buttons. The expected size of the collection package is updated dependent on the selected VRAs.

8. Verify that the host with VRAs that need analyzing are selected and click **Next** until the Save Log Destinations dialog is displayed.
9. Specify destination for the files that you want collected.

**Destination:** The name and location where the log collection will be saved.

**Automatically upload files to Zerto FTP Server:** When this option is checked, the log collection is automatically uploaded to a specified FTP site.

If you choose to upload the log collection to a site that you specify, make sure that the site is up.

10. Specify the FTP site to send the collection and the protocol to use, either FTP or HTTP.

11. Click **Next**.

The Review dialog is displayed.

Check that you have specified everything you want to collect and if you want to make changes, click **Back** to change the selection.

12. Click **Start**.

The data is collected and stored in the destination file which, by default, is timestamped. If specified, the collection is also sent to an FTP site.

**Note:** The log collection is performed on the server. Canceling the collection in the GUI does not stop the collection from continuing on the server and a new log collection cannot be run until the running collection finishes.

When the log collection has completed the result is displayed. For example:
13. Click **Done** to return to the Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog.

14. Send the log to Zerto support, unless the Automatically upload files to Zerto FTP Server option was specified, in which case it is automatically sent to Zerto.

**To collect local Zerto Virtual Manager logs when the Zerto Virtual Manager is not running:**

1. Open the Zerto Diagnostics application. For example, via Start > Programs > Zerto > Zerto Diagnostics.

   The Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog is displayed.

2. Select the Local Zerto Virtual Manager diagnostics option and click **Next**.

   You are prompted to use the first option to collect more comprehensive diagnostics. If you continue, the Initialize dialog is displayed.

3. Specify the details that you want collected.

   **IP / Host Name:** The IP of the Zerto Virtual Manager where the log collection runs from. Logs are collected from this site and from the paired site.

   **Port:** The port used for inbound communication with the Zerto Virtual Manager.

   **Your Company Name:** A name to identify the log collection for the customer account. This information is used by Zerto support. An account name must be entered.

   **Email:** An email address for use by Zerto support when analyzing the logs. An email address must be entered.
**Timeframe:** The amount of time you want to collect logs for. The more time, the bigger the collection package.

**Case Number:** An optional field for the case number assigned to the issue by Zerto.

**Description:** An optional free text description of the reason for collecting the logs.

4. Click **Next**.
   The Save Log Destinations dialog is displayed.

5. Specify the details that you want collected.
   **Destination:** The name and location where the log collection will be saved.
   **Automatically upload files to Zerto FTP Server:** When this option is checked, the log collection is automatically uploaded to a specified FTP site.

   If you choose to upload the log collection to a site that you specify, make sure that the site is up before clicking **Finish**.

   The data is collected and stored in the destination file which, by default, is timestamped. If specified, the collection is also sent to an FTP site.

6. Click **Next**.
   The collection progress is displayed. When the log collection has completed the result is displayed.

7. Click **Done** to return to the Zerto Diagnostics menu dialog.

8. Send the log to Zerto support, unless the Automatically upload files to Zerto FTP Server option was specified, in which case it is automatically sent to Zerto.

**Understanding the Logs**

If problems arise with Zerto Virtual Manager, you can view the Zerto Virtual Manager logs to see what is happening.

The current log is called logfile.csv and resides in the `<Zerto_Install_Dir>\Zerto\logs` folder, where Zerto_Install_Dir is the folder specified during the installation.

When the log reaches 10MB its name is changed to log.nnnn.csv, where nnnn is a number incremented by one each time logfile.csv reaches 10MB. Up to 150 log files are kept.
The log file has the following format:

```
FFFF, yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss, ####, LVL, Component, API, Message
```

where:

- **FFFF** - A HEX code. For internal use.
- **yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss** - Timestamp for the message.
- **####** - Number for internal use.
- **LVL** - Severity level of the message. The more messages written to the log the bigger the impact on performance. The number of messages written to the log decreases from Debug to Error. The level can be one of the following:
  - **Debug**: All messages are written to the log. This level should only be specified during testing.
  - **Info**: Information messages.
  - **Warn**: Warning messages such as a reconnect ion occurred.
  - **Error**: Error messages that need handling to find the problem.
- **Component** - The specific part in the Zerto Virtual Manager that issued the message.
- **API** - The specific API that issued the message.
- **Message** - The message written in the log.

The following is a sample from a log:

```
Collecting Zerto Logs
```
07f4c878,2010-12-01 19:54:42.7987,Info,9,Zerto.Infra.ZvmReaderWriterLock,LogLock,Synchronizer: Enter Writer,
07f4c878,2010-12-01 19:54:42.7987,Debug,9,Zerto.Zvm.VraConnector.VraNetworkConnector,Connect,try to connect 106.16.223.86:4005 ...,
07f4c878,2010-12-01 19:54:43.0643,Debug,17,Zerto.Zvm.ZvmServices.CrossSiteService,Ping,Ping,
07f4c878,2010-12-01 19:54:43.0643,Debug,17,Zerto.Zvm.ZvmServices.PingService,Ping,Ping called,
07f4c878,2010-12-01 19:54:43.8612,Error,9,Zerto.Zvm.VraConnector.VraNetworkConnector,ClearAndThrow,connection is closed: No connection could be made because the target machine actively refused it 106.16.223.86:4005,
07f4c878,2010-12-01 19:54:43.8612,Warn,9,Zerto.Zvm.ZvmServices.ReconnectingConnectorProxy,GetConnector,forgot,
Zerto Reports

Zerto includes reporting for the following:

- Outbound Protection Over Time on page 368
- Protection Over Time by Site on page 369
- Recovery Reports on page 370
- Resources Report on page 371
- Monthly Usage Report on page 377
- VPG Performance on page 377

Outbound Protection Over Time

Information about how much data is actually being protected against the amount configured for any of the sites can be displayed in the Outbound Protection Over Time report under the REPORTS tab.

The data displayed can be up to 30 minutes old, since the Zerto Virtual Manager collects the relevant data every 30 minutes.

You can filter the information by the following:

- From and To: The dates for which you want information.
- Recovery Site: Select the site for which you want information or select all sites. If all sites are selected, All is displayed. The drop-down list displays all sites paired with the local site.

Click APPLY to apply the selected filtering and produce the report.
Click **RESET** to reset the display to the default values.

### Protection Over Time by Site

Information about the virtual machines and the amount of data on the recovery site can be displayed in the Protection Over Time by Site report under the REPORTS tab. When the report is displayed for the first time, information is shown per 30 minute intervals.

The data displayed can be up to 30 minutes old, since the Zerto Virtual Manager collects the relevant data every 30 minutes.

You can filter the information by the following:

- **From** and **To**: Select the dates for which you want information.
- **Protected Site**: Select the sites for which you want information. The list displays all sites paired with the local site.
- **Resolution**: Select the resolution for the report: daily, weekly, monthly, or All.
- Click **APPLY** to apply the selected filtering and produce the report.
- Click **RESET** to reset the display to the default values.

| Note: | By default, the Protection Over Time By Site report is only available for the last 90 days. |

Differences might occur between the value displayed in the Used Journal column in this report and the value displayed in the Recovery Journal Used Storage column retrieved from vCenter or Hyper-V in the Resources report.

The Used Journal value displayed here is calculated by the VRA, based on internal journal allocations for each recovery volume.
vCenter and Hyper-V Resources reports are expected to display a larger size than in this report, and may reach up to 500MB per virtual machine higher than reported in this report.

Recovery Reports

Information about recovery operations — failover tests, moves, and failovers — can be displayed in Recovery Reports under the REPORTS tab.

The information includes the name of the user who initiated the report, which recovery operation, the point in time, protected and the recovery sites involved, when the recovery operation was started, when it ended, the time it took to bring up the machines in the recovery site, the RTO, whether the operation succeeded or not, the VPG recovery settings, the virtual machine recovery settings, and detailed recovery steps, and any notes added during a failover test.

Recovery Reports are always kept, and never deleted.

You can filter the tests by the following:

- **Dates:** The dates for which you want information. Only operations performed between these dates are displayed.
- **VPG:** Select the VPGs for which you want information. The number of VPGs you selected is displayed. If you select All, the total number of VPGs is shown.
- **Type:** Select the recovery operations for which you want information: Failover, Move, Failover Test. If more than one operation is selected, the number of recovery operations you selected is displayed.
- **Status:** Select the statuses for which you want information: Success, Failed. If more than one status is selected, the number of statuses you selected is displayed.

Click **APPLY** to apply the selected filtering.

Click **RESET** to reset the display to the default values.
Click **EXPORT** and choose PDF or ZIP to generate a report.

The report displays information by VPG, and then by virtual machine within the VPG.

The VPG information includes who initiated the operation, the type of operation, the start time and the end time of the operation, the recovery host, storage, network, any boot order information, etc.

The information for each machine includes the steps taken during the operation, such as creating a virtual machine and scratch volumes for testing, when each process began and ended, and whether the operation succeeded or not.

**Note:** When FOT is still in progress, the end time in the Recovery Report appears as **NA**.

The Recovery operation start time and Recovery operation end time values are shown in UTC according to the Zerto Virtual Manager clock in the recovery site. The Point in time value takes the checkpoint UTC time, which was created in the protected site, and converts it to the recovery site time zone.

**Branding the Recovery Report**

A branded logo can be placed in the report in the top left corner by adding the logo as a .png file to the `<ZertoInstallFldr>\Zerto\Zerto Virtual Replication\gui\` folder with the name `provider_logo.png`.

The folder ZertoInstallFldr is the root folder where Zerto in the recovery site is installed. For example, `C:\Program Files\Zerto`.

**Resources Report**

Information about the resources used by the virtual machines being recovered to a particular site is displayed in the Resources report under the **REPORTS** tab. The information is collected at fixed times that are defined in the **Reports** tab of the **Site Settings** dialog in the recovery site. Information for the report is saved for 90 days when the sampling period is hourly and for one year when the sampling period is daily.

The report collects the resource information for the virtual machines being recovered to the site where the report is run.

If no virtual machines are recovered to the site where the report is run, the report is empty.

You can filter the information by the following:

**From** and **To:** The dates for which you want information.

Click **EXPORT** to generate the report, which is produced as an Excel file.

The information presented in this report is divided into three tabs:

**Details Tab on page 372:** Shows information for each protected virtual machine.

**Performance Tab on page 376:** Shows bandwidth and throughput information for each virtual machine in a table and in a graph.

**Target Host Tab on page 376:** Shows information per host in the recovery site.
Using a REST API to Generate a Report

Zerto exposes a REST API to produce resource data. The report is generated by passing a URL. For details about the ResourcesReport API (and all other Zerto REST APIs), see the Zerto Virtual Replication RESTful API Reference Guide.

Details Tab

The Details tab includes the names and IDs of the virtual machines being protected and, for each virtual machine, the timestamp for the information, where it is protected, the CPU used, the memory used by the host and the guest, the storage used, and other information.

Interpreting the Details Tab

The Details tab provides a breakdown of every protected virtual machine, identified by its internal identifier and name in the hypervisor manager. The report also includes the name of the VPG that is protecting the virtual machine and information such as the protected and recovery sites, the protected and recovery vCD Org, cluster, etc.

The Timestamp column displays the time when the last sample, as defined in the Reports tab of the SiteSettings dialog, was taken.

The VPG Type column is one of:

- VC2VC: vCenter to vCenter replication
- VC2VCD: vCenter to vCloud Director replication
- VCD2VCD: vCloud Director to vCloud Director replication
- VCD2VC: vCloud Director to vCenter replication

The ZORG column defines organizations set up in the Zerto Cloud Manager that use a cloud service provider for recovery.

The Bandwidth (Bps) and Throughput (Bps) columns display the average between two consecutive samples. With daily samples, these figures represent the average daily bandwidth and throughput. For hourly samples, the timestamp represents an average between the sample at the timestamp and the previous sample. A value of -1 means that the system failed to calculate the value, which can happen for several reasons, for example:

- Sites were disconnected when the sample was collected. Although the protected site measures the throughput and bandwidth, the recovery site logs the results.
- The bandwidth or throughput values at the time of the sample was lower than the bandwidth or throughput value in the previous sample. This can happen, for example, if the protected site VRA is rebooted since the sample values are not stored persistently by the VRA.
- If valueInLastSample does not exist, since currentValue is the first sample for the virtual machine, the data is not calculated.

Bandwidth is calculated as: (currentValue - valueInLastSample)/elapsedTtime

For example:
A virtual machine is placed in a VPG

A sample is generated. The total transmitted bytes is zero since the virtual machine was just placed in the VPG

The VM is writing data at 1MB/minute

The virtual machine lowers its write rate to 0.5MB/minute

A new sample is calculated. Current value of total data transmitted is 45MB:

\[
\text{Bandwidth} = \frac{(45\text{MB} - 0)}{(60\text{ minutes})} = 0.75\text{MB/minute} = 13107\text{Bps}
\]

The following describes the fields in the Details tab.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active Guest Memory (MB)</strong></td>
<td>The active memory of the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bandwidth (Bps)</strong></td>
<td>The average bandwidth used between two consecutive samples, in bytes per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consumed Host Memory (MB)</strong></td>
<td>The amount of host memory consumed by the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU Limit (MHz)</strong></td>
<td>The maximum MHz available for the CPUs in the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU Reserved (MHz)</strong></td>
<td>The MHz reserved for use by the CPUs in the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU Used (MHz)</strong></td>
<td>The MHz used by the CPUs in the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CrmId</strong></td>
<td>The CRM identifier specified in Zerto Cloud Manager for an organization that uses a cloud service provider for recovery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory (MB)</strong></td>
<td>The virtual machine defined memory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Memory Limit (MB)</strong></td>
<td>The upper limit for this virtual machine’s memory allocation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memory Reserved (MB)</td>
<td>The guaranteed memory allocation for this virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number Of vCPUs</td>
<td>The number of CPUs for the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number Of Volumes</td>
<td>The number of volumes attached to the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Journal Provisioned Storage (GB)</td>
<td>The amount of provisioned journal storage for the virtual machine. The provisioned journal size</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reported can fluctuate considerably when new volumes are added or removed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Journal Used Storage (GB)</td>
<td>The amount of journal storage used by the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In on-premise environments, differences might occur between the value displayed in the Used Journal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>column in the Protection Over Time by Site report and the value displayed here, which is retrieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>from vCenter or Hyper-V.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The Used Journal value displayed in the Protection Over Time by Site report is calculated by the VRA,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>based on internal journal allocations for each recovery volume.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vCenter and Hyper-V Resources reports are expected to display a larger size than in the Protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Over Time by Site report, and may reach up to 500MB higher per virtual machine than reported in the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Protection Over Time by Site report.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Volumes Provisioned Storage (GB)</td>
<td>The amount of provisioned storage for the virtual machine in the target site. This value is the sum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>of volumes’ provisioned size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Volumes Used Storage (GB)</td>
<td>The amount of storage used by the virtual machine in the target site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Profile</td>
<td>The service profile used by the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Cluster</td>
<td>The source cluster name hosting the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Host</td>
<td>The source host name hosting the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Organization VDC</td>
<td>The name of the source vDC organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Resource Pool</td>
<td>The source resource pool name hosting the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Site</td>
<td>The source protected site name, defined in the Zerto User Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source vCD Organization</td>
<td>The name of the source vCD organization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Resources Report
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source Volumes Provisioned Storage (GB)</strong></td>
<td>The amount of provisioned storage for the virtual machine in the source site. This value is the sum of volumes’ provisioned size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source Volumes Used Storage (GB)</strong></td>
<td>The amount of storage used by the virtual machine in the source site. This value is the sum of the volumes’ used size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Source VRA Name</strong></td>
<td>The name of the source VRA used to send data to the recovery site.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Cluster</strong></td>
<td>The target cluster name hosting the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Datastores</strong></td>
<td>The target storage used by the virtual machine if it is recovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Host</strong></td>
<td>The target host name hosting the virtual machine when it is recovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Organization vDC</strong></td>
<td>The name of the target vDC organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Resource Pool</strong></td>
<td>The target resource pool name where the virtual machine will be recovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Site</strong></td>
<td>The target site name, defined in the Zerto User Interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target Storage Policy</strong></td>
<td>The target vCD storage policy used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target vCD Organization</strong></td>
<td>The name of the target vCD organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target VRA Name</strong></td>
<td>The name of the VRA managing the recovery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Throughput (Bps)</strong></td>
<td>The average throughput of the VM used between two consecutive samples, in bytes per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timestamp</strong></td>
<td>The date and time the resource information was collected. The value can be converted to an understandable date using code similar to the following: var date = new Date(jsonDate); or code similar to the Perl code example, jsonDateToString($), described in Zerto Virtual Replication RESTful API Reference Guide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VM Hardware Version</strong></td>
<td>The VMware hardware version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VM Id</strong></td>
<td>The internal virtual machine identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VM Name</strong></td>
<td>The name of the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VPG Name</strong></td>
<td>The name of the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VPG Type</strong></td>
<td>The VPG type:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCVpg</td>
<td>VMware vCenter Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCvApp</td>
<td>Deprecated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCDvApp</td>
<td>VMware vCloud Director vApp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PublicCloud</td>
<td>Amazon WebServices or Microsoft Azure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HyperV</td>
<td>Microsoft SCVMM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ZORG</strong></td>
<td>The name assigned to an organization using a cloud service provider for recovery. The name is created in the Zerto Cloud Manager. For details, see the Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Performance Tab**

The Performance tab shows bandwidth and throughput information for each virtual machine per sampling period in a table and in a graph. The Performance tab enables the user to view the total bandwidth and throughput per sampling period.

The graph allows the user to view performance trends over time per VM.

For full explanation of the bandwidth and throughput information, refer to the Details Tab on page 372.

You can filter information by date and VM name.

The following describes the fields in the Performance tab:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>parameters</th>
<th>description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time Stamp (Row Labels)</td>
<td>For explanation see the Details tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth (Bps)</td>
<td>The average bandwidth of the VM used between two consecutive samples, in bytes per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Throughput (Bps)</td>
<td>The average throughput of the VM used between two consecutive samples, in bytes per second.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Bandwidth</td>
<td>The total bandwidth of all VMs during the measured period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Throughput</td>
<td>The total throughput of all VMs during the measured period.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Target Host Tab**

The Target Host tab shows information per host in the recovery site. This enables the user to perform capacity planning on the recovery host. You can filter information by time and by host.

The following describes the fields in the Target Host tab.
### Table: Parameters and Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameters</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active Guest Memory (MB)</td>
<td>The active memory of the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPU Used (MHz)</td>
<td>The MHz used by the CPUs in the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Host</td>
<td>The Target Host's IP address or DNS name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Bandwidth</td>
<td>The total bandwidth of all VMs replicating to the host during the measured period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total Throughput</td>
<td>The total throughput of all VMs replication to the host during the measured period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vCPUs</td>
<td>The number of CPUs for the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMs</td>
<td>The number of VMs protected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volumes</td>
<td>The number of volumes attached to the virtual machine.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Monthly Usage Report

Information about usage can be displayed in the **Monthly Usage** report under the **REPORTS** tab. The Monthly Usage Report can only be viewed with a cloud license.

The information is organized by organization and within each organization by site, then virtual protection group (VPG) and then by the virtual machines in each VPG.

This report is mostly used by cloud service providers.

You can filter the information by the following:

- **Year**: The year of interest.
- **Month**: Select the month to review.

For each month, the usage report displays the number of virtual machines protected during the month and the average number per day in the month. For example, if fifteen virtual machines are protected in a few VPGs starting on the 28th of the month in a thirty day month, the total days will be 30 (two days multiplied by fifteen machines) and the VM Count will be 1 (Total days divided by the number of days in the month).

Click **EXPORT** to a CSV or ZIP file to generate the report.

The ZIP file option saves the report as a zipped CSV file in a zipped file called **UsageReport.zip**.

### VPG Performance

Performance graphs for all VPGs or for an individual VPG can be seen in the **VPG Performance** report under the **REPORTS** tab. These graphs show more detailed resolution than the corresponding graphs in the **DASHBOARD** tab.
You can specify the VPGs whose performance should be displayed. When you request information about multiple VPGs, each VPG is shown in a different color, with a key at the top of the report that maps each color to the VPG it represents.

Position the cursor on a graph line to see exact information about that point.

Click **APPLY** to apply the selected filtering and produce the report.

Click **RESET** to reset the display to the default values.
Zerto and Microsoft Hyper-V Features

This chapter section describes the interaction between Zerto and commonly used Microsoft Hyper-V features such as live migration, dynamic optimization, and failover clustering.

The following topics are described in this chapter section:

- Stopping and Restarting the SCVMM on page 379
- Dynamic Disks on page 379
- Hyper-V High Availability (HA) on page 380
- Clusters on page 380
- Failover Clustering and Fault Tolerance on page 380
- Pass-through Disks on page 380
- Performance and Resource Optimization or Dynamic Optimization on page 381
- Multi-Pathing and Storage Failures on page 381
- Availability Sets and Anti-Affinity Rules on page 381
- Live Migration on page 381
- Quick Storage Migration on page 382
- SCVMM and Host Maintenance Mode on page 382
- User Management on page 382
- Hyper-V Replica on page 382
- Restart Zerto Virtual Manager After SCVMM Upgrade on page 382
- Resiliency to Hyper-V Environment Changes on page 382

Stopping and Restarting the SCVMM

If a host on which Hyper-V is running is restarted, a Zerto Delta Sync is performed on all protected virtual machines on that host.

Dynamic Disks

Microsoft dynamic disks use multiple hard disks, which can contain many dynamic volumes, to manage data. They enable you to create volumes that span multiple disks and to create fault-tolerant volumes. All volumes on dynamic disks are known as dynamic volumes. Dynamic disks offer greater flexibility for volume management because they use a database to track information about dynamic volumes on the disk. Dynamic disks and volumes rely on the Logical Disk Manager (LDM) and Virtual Disk Service (VDS) for management.
When recovering virtual machines in a VPG, VHDX disks are always recovered in the recovery site with dynamic disks. VHD disks are recovered in the recovery site by default with the same configuration as in the protected site.

**Hyper-V High Availability (HA)**

Highly available virtual machines in Hyper-V reside on highly available storage such as a cluster shared volume (CSV) and can only handle disks residing on this type of storage. Therefore, when Zerto replicates a virtual machine, the type of virtual machine created on the recovery site is determined by the type of storage designated for it.

When high availability is enabled, a copy of each cached object or region is maintained on a separate cache host. The cache cluster manages these copies and supplies them to the application if the primary copies are not available.

High availability is automatically disabled by Zerto while updating recovered virtual machines in the recovery site from the VRA journal. After promotion of data from the journal to the recovered virtual machine completes, high availability is automatically re-enabled.

**Clusters**

A cluster is a group of tightly coupled hosts, called nodes, that work closely together so that in many respects they can be viewed as though they are a single computer. With a cluster, you define two or more physical machines that provide resources for the hosts that are assigned to that cluster. By using clusters, you can achieve high availability and load balancing of virtual machines.

When protecting a virtual machine on a host that is part of a cluster, Zerto recommends that you install a VRA on each host in the cluster, to ensure coverage if the virtual machine is migrated with Live Migration.

**Failover Clustering and Fault Tolerance**

Setting up a failover cluster for Hyper-V hosts makes the virtual machines fault tolerant. The Failover Clustering feature requires you to manually specify the virtual machines that you wish to make fault tolerant. Fault tolerant virtual machines are treated as clustered roles. Virtual machines automatically restart when a node in a cluster unexpectedly failed.

**Pass-through Disks**

Storage on pass-through disks provides the following:

- Very fast performance.
- A very simple storage path because the file system on the host is not involved.
- Better alignment under SAN.
- Lower CPU utilization.
- Support for very large disks.

Zerto cannot protect virtual machines with pass-through disks. Also, a Hyper-V host with a pass-through disk is ignored by the Zerto Virtual Manager.
Performance and Resource Optimization or Dynamic Optimization

Performance and Resource Optimization (PRO) ensures that virtual machine hosts and virtual machines are operating in the most efficient possible manner. PRO generates recommendations for remedial actions based on alerts that the Operations Manager generates. You can configure PRO to implement the pre-defined corrective actions automatically or you can choose to perform these actions manually. During Dynamic Optimization, SCVMM migrates virtual machines within a host cluster to improve load balancing among hosts.

PRO is ignored by Zerto. Dynamic Optimization is automatically disabled by Zerto when updating recovered virtual machines in the recovery site from their journals. After promotion of data from the journal to the recovered virtual machine completes, Dynamic Optimization is automatically re-enabled.

Multi-Pathing and Storage Failures

Hyper-V can use multiple paths to a storage array, which is called multi-pathing. If all paths from a Hyper-V node to the storage array fail, an alternative route using the network LAN can be used to reach the storage. This is called Redirected IO.

Zerto supports Multi Path IOs.

Availability Sets and Anti-Affinity Rules

Availability sets keep virtual machines separate from each other so they do not run on the same host whenever possible. If you create an availability set in SCVMM for two different virtual machines, SCVMM attempts to keep those virtual machines on separate hosts and avoids placing them on the same host. Availability sets implement this by defining anti-affinity rules within a Hyper-V host cluster or in standalone hosts.

VRAs are defined with affinity rules to prevent their migration. Do not change these affinity rules.

During a recovery operation, when new virtual machines are created in the recovery site, migration of these virtual machines is prevented by Zerto-defined affinity rules. Once the recovery process is complete, the affinity rules are deleted and these virtual machines can be migrated.

Live Migration

If you use live migration to migrate a virtual machine, which is part of a VPG, from one host to another host, before moving the virtual machine make sure that:

- The host to which you are moving the virtual machine has a Virtual Replication Appliance (VRA) installed on it, as described in the Zerto Installation Guide.
- The virtual machine is not a test virtual machine running on the recovery site during the performance of a failover test, as described in Testing Recovery on page 272.

Do not migrate a Virtual Replication Appliance (VRA) from one host to another. Also, do not migrate a virtual machine on the recovery site that is being updated from the VRA journal until promotion of data to the virtual machine completes.
Quick Storage Migration

Microsoft quick storage migration enables you to move virtual machine storage from one location to another. The virtual disks of a running virtual machine can be migrated independently of their storage protocols or storage types. Downtime is minimal because quick storage migration takes a snapshot of the virtual machine and transfers data without requiring the virtual machine to be turned off.

Zerto supports quick storage migration for protected virtual machine volumes and for journal volumes in the recovery site, but not for machine volumes in a VPG being promoted.

SCVMM and Host Maintenance Mode

In SCVMM, you can configure maintenance mode for a virtual machine host anytime that you need to perform maintenance tasks on the physical host, such as applying security updates or replacing hardware on the physical host computer.

Before maintaining a host that is being used for recovery, edit VPGs that contain virtual machines that are replicating to this host and change their recovery host. Assuming that you only change the recovery host, the resulting update uses live migration and should be very quick.

User Management

Hyper-V Manager allows users designated as administrators of the management operating system to manage virtual machines on a host. Authorized users can perform management tasks on the host, such as starting and stopping VMs, importing and deploying VMs, and managing snapshots. By default, anyone who is a local administrator of the management operating system can use Hyper-V Manager on the host. In addition, a user can also use Hyper-V Manager to remotely manage Hyper-V on other servers in a domain to which the user has administrative access.

SCVMM may use run-as-account to perform operations on the Hyper-V host. Zerto Virtual Manager also uses the default run-as-account to perform operations on this host.

Hyper-V Replica

Hyper-V Replica asynchronously replicates Hyper-V virtual machines in a primary site to replica virtual machines in a secondary site.

Zerto cannot protect virtual machines that are protected using Hyper-V Replica.

Restart Zerto Virtual Manager After SCVMM Upgrade

Zerto Virtual Manager must be restarted after SCVMM is upgraded.

Resiliency to Hyper-V Environment Changes

NEEDS TO BE APPROVED

SCVMM identifies and manages all its objects: VMs, hosts, networks, data stores, etc. using an internal database. Identifiers are allocated to hosts, virtual machines and other objects incrementally by SCVMM.
Each host has its own database and allocates its own IDs for the objects it holds (VM’s, Volumes, etc.). While the SCVMM database assigns IDs independently, it also receives data fields from the independent hosts’ databases.

When Zerto maps an environment within SCVMM for its configuration and operations, for example when creating a VPG, it acquires and maps the Identifiers of the available virtual machines, and refers to these Identifiers in its own environment management and replication operations.

If a host is removed from inventory and is then re-added, everything that was on it gets a new Identifier. As a result, a virtual machine, protected by Zerto that was running on that host, is allocated a new Identifier by the SCVMM. In order for Zerto to continue protecting virtual machines, Zerto maintains an Identifier map containing the original Identifiers as well as unique persistent identifiers of the hosts and VMs. Zerto Virtual Manager constantly monitors the Hyper-V environment and maps the new identifiers to the same object identified by the original SCVMM identifier. This is done using the unique identifiers.

The mapping of Identifiers can take several minutes.

When system administration tasks require the importing of VPG definitions of a host that was removed and then re-added, it is advisable to wait several minutes from when the host was re-added before performing the import of the VPGs.
The Zerto Virtual Manager User Interface

Configuration and management of the disaster recovery for a site is performed in the Zerto User Interface. The following dialogs and tabs are described in this section:

- About Dialog on page 385
- Add Checkpoint Dialog on page 386
- Add Site Dialog on page 387
- Advanced Journal Settings Dialog on page 389
- Advanced VM Replication Settings Dialog on page 391
- Advanced VM Settings for Cloud Dialog on page 391
- ALERTS on page 392
- Boot Order Dialog on page 392
- Browse for File Dialog on page 393
- Change VM Recovery VRA Dialog on page 393
- Checkpoints Dialog on page 394
- Configure and Install VRA Dialog on page 395
- Configure Paired Site Routing Dialog on page 397
- Configure VM Settings Dialog on page 398
- Edit NIC Dialog on page 398
- Edit Repository Dialog on page 399
- Edit Selected Volumes Dialog on page 400
- Edit VM Dialog on page 400
- Edit VM Settings (AWS) on page 401
- Edit VM Settings (AWS) on page 401
- Edit vNIC Dialog on page 403
- Edit Volumes Dialog on page 404
- Edit VRA Dialog on page 412
- License Dialog on page 413
- New Repository Dialog on page 414
- Offsite Clone Dialog on page 417
- Open Support Ticket Dialog on page 417
• Remote Support Dialog on page 419
• Restore a VPG from Repositories on page 419
• Restore - NICs Dialog on page 425
• Restore - Volumes Dialog, on page 345
• Restore - Edit Selected Volumes Dialog on page 1
• Site Settings Dialog on page 426
• Stop Failover Test Dialog on page 434
• TASKS on page 434

About Dialog

In the About window, you can do the following:

• View the Zerto version being run.
• Enable or disable the **Zerto CALLHOME feature**. The Zerto CALLHOME feature enables support notification and analytics for the following purposes:
  • To improve Zerto.
  • To send notifications to the user when a new Zerto version is available, or when new hypervisor versions are supported by Zerto.
• Enable or disable Zerto to send data to the SaaS platform for monitoring purposes, using the Zerto Mobile App. This action is done by licensed Zerto Virtual Manager users.

When clicking About, the following options appear:

- Enable Support notification and product improvement feedback.
- Enable Zerto SaaS features. Includes Zerto Analytics, Zerto Mobile App and Remote upgrade.

➢ To perform these actions, do the following:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, in the top right of the header, click , and then click **About**.
   The version and build of Zerto installed in the site are displayed.
2. To enable the Zerto CALLHOME feature, click **Enable Support notification and product improvement feedback**. This is selected by default.

   **Note:** For Microsoft Azure and AWS, this option is grayed out.

If the user deselects Enable Support notification and analytics, a warning appears notifying the user that deselecting this option will stop Zerto from sending notifications when new Zerto updates are
available, or when new hosts are supported.

3. If you want Zerto to send information to our Online Services and Zerto Mobile App, and enable remote upgrade, select **Enable Zerto SaaS features. Include Zerto Analytics, Zerto Mobile App and Remote upgrade.** This is selected by default.

   This allows licensed Zerto Virtual Manager users to enable or disable data being sent from the Zerto Virtual Manager to the SaaS platform, thereby enabling site monitoring using the Zerto Mobile App. This also enable automatic script upgrade of Zerto's local ZCA scripts. This means that the scripts, which are responsible for configuration and management tasks, will always be up to date.

   - If the user deselects Enable Online Services and Zerto Mobile, a warning appears notifying the user that deselecting this option will stop Zerto from sending information to Online Services and to the Zerto Mobile Application, rendering these services inoperable for the entire installation.

4. If you want to enable automatic script upgrade of Zerto's local ZCA scripts, select **Enable Zerto SaaS features. Include Zerto Analytics, Zerto Mobile App and Remote upgrade.** This means that the scripts, which are responsible for configuration and management tasks, will always be up to date.

### Add Checkpoint Dialog

![Add Checkpoint Dialog](image)

Checkpoints are recorded automatically every few seconds in the journal. These checkpoints ensure crash-consistency and are written to the virtual machine journals by the Zerto Virtual Manager. Each checkpoint has a timestamp set by the Zerto Virtual Manager. In addition to the automatically generated checkpoints, you can manually add checkpoints to identify events that might influence the recovery, such as a planned switch over to a secondary generator.

The list of VPGs is displayed. You can select more VPGs to add the same checkpoint.
• **Enter a name for the checkpoint:** The name to assign to the checkpoint.
• **Direction:** The direction of the protection.
• **VPG Name:** The name of the VPG.
• **Protected Site Name:** The name of the site where virtual machines are protected.
• **Recovery Site Name:** The name of the site where protected virtual machines are recovered.

You can filter columns in the list via the filter icon next to each column title. You can also sort the list by each column. Clicking the cog on the right side of the table enables you to change the columns that are displayed and to create a permanent view of the columns you want displayed.

### Add Site Dialog

You can pair to any site where Zerto is installed.

Zerto can be installed at multiple sites and each of these sites can be paired to any other site on which Zerto has been installed. Virtual machines that are protected on one site can be recovered to any paired site.

#### To pair to a site:

1. From the **remote** site to which you will pair, in Zerto Virtual Manager > Sites tab, click the button **Generate Pairing Token**.

2. The Generate Pairing Token window opens.

   ![Generate Pairing Token](image)

   - **X9BPBU2TWRKN4AM8ZWS4GPT25Y2BNCP9I**
   - **Copy**
   - **This token can be used to pair a single site. It will expire on Jul 31, 2019**

3. **Click Copy**, to copy the token.

   The token **expires** when the earliest of one of the following conditions is met:
   - 48 hours after clicking Copy
   - At the next ZVM process termination
   - After the token is used to authenticate the pairing request
4. From the site which will initiate the pairing, in the Zerto Virtual Manager > Sites tab, click **PAIR**.

The Add Site window is displayed.

5. Specify the following:

   - **Host name/IP**: IP address or fully qualified DNS host name of the **remote** site Zerto Virtual Manager to pair to.
   - **Port**: The TCP port communication between the sites. Enter the port that was specified during the installation. The default port during the installation was 9081.
   - **Token**: Paste the token which you copied above.

6. Click **PAIR**.

   The sites are paired, meaning that the Zerto Virtual Manager for the local site is connected to the Zerto Virtual Manager at the remote site.

   After the pairing completes the content of the SITES tab updated to include summary information about the paired site.
• **Host name/IP:** IP address or fully qualified DNS host name of the remote site Zerto Virtual Manager to pair to.

• **Port:** The TCP port communication between the sites. Enter the port that was specified during installation. The default port during the installation is 9081.

**Advanced Journal Settings Dialog**

Manage the journal used for recovery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal History</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The time that all write commands are saved in the journal.</td>
<td>• Number of <strong>hours</strong> from 1 to 23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The longer the information is saved in the journal, the more space is required for each journal in the VPG.</td>
<td>• Number of <strong>days</strong> from 1 to 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Default Journal Storage (Hyper-V), or Default Journal Datastore (vSphere)**

The storage/datastore used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG.

**Note:** This field is **not** relevant when replicating to a vCD recovery site.

When you select a specific journal storage/datastore, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in this storage/datastore, regardless of where the recovery storage/datastore is for each virtual machine. All protected virtual machines are recovered to the hosts that can access the specified journal storage/datastore.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Journal Size Hard Limit</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount. The journal is always **thin-provisioned**. **Note:** The Journal Size Hard Limit applies independently both to the Journal History and also to the Scratch Journal Volume.  

For Example: If the Journal Size Hard Limit is configured to a maximum size of 160 GB limit, then during Failover Test, both the Journal History and the Scratch Journal Volume together can take up to 320 GB. Each one with a maximum size of 160 GB limit. | • **Unlimited:** The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.  

If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are not displayed.  

• **Size (GB):** The maximum journal size in GB.  

• The minimum journal size, set by Zerto, is 8GB for Hyper-V and vSphere environments, and 10GB for Microsoft Azure environments.  

• **Percentage:** The percentage of the virtual machine volume size to which the journal can grow.  

• This value can be configured to more than 100% of the protected VM’s volume size. |

| **Journal Size Warning Threshold**        |                                                                                                                                             |
| The size of the journal that triggers a warning that the journal is nearing its hard limit. | • **Unlimited:** The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage/datastore.  

If Unlimited is selected, Size and Percentage options are not displayed.  

• **Size* (GB):** The size in GB that will generate a warning.  

• **Percentage*:** The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that will generate a warning.  

*The values of Size and Percentage must be less than the configured Journal Size Hard Limit so that the warning will be generated when needed.  

In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full. |
1. Click **OK**.

### Advanced VM Replication Settings Dialog

Displays the replication settings for the virtual machines in the VPG. You can choose to edit information in one field by clicking the field and updating the information. You can choose to edit information for several virtual machines at the same time by selecting the virtual machines and clicking **EDIT SELECTED**.

### Advanced VM Settings for Cloud Dialog
Displays the recovery settings for the virtual machines in the VPG. You can choose to edit information in one field by clicking the field and updating the information. You can choose to edit information for several virtual machines at the same time by selecting the virtual machines and clicking **EDIT SELECTED**.

**ALERTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Site Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>site-2 at Zerto</td>
<td>VPG vpg-3 is paused.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site-2 at Zerto</td>
<td>VPG vpg-1 is waiting for commit/rollback.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>site-2 at Zerto</td>
<td>VPG vpg-0 is waiting for commit/rollback.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Monitor the recent alerts by clicking the **ALERTS** area in the status bar at the bottom of the Zerto User Interface. The following information is displayed for the most recent alerts:

- The alert status.
- The site where the alert is issued.
- A description of the alert.

Click **Show All** to access **MONITORING > ALERTS**.

**Boot Order Dialog**
To specify the boot order of virtual machines in a VPG. When machines are started up on recovery, for example, after a move operation, the virtual machines in the VPG are not started up in a particular order. If you want specific virtual machines to start before other machines, you can specify a boot order. The virtual machines are defined in groups and the boot order applies to the groups and not to individual virtual machines in the groups. You can specify a delay between groups during startup.

Initially, virtual machines in the VPG are displayed together under the default group. If you want specific machines to start before other virtual machines, define new groups with one or more virtual machines in each group.

There is no boot order for virtual machines within a group, only between groups.

- **ADD GROUP:** Adds a group. After adding a group you can edit the group name by clicking the Edit icon at the right of the group name and remove the group via the delete icon at the right of the group. You cannot remove the Default group nor a group that contains a virtual machine.

- **Boot Delay:** Specifies a time delay between starting up the virtual machines in the group and starting up the virtual machines in the next group. For example, assume three groups, Default, Server, and Client defined in this order. The Start-up delay defined for the Default group is 10, for the Server group is 100 and for the Client group 0. The virtual machines in the Default group are started together and after 10 seconds the virtual machines in the Server group are started. After 100 seconds the virtual machines in the Client group are started up.

**Browse for File Dialog**

![Browse for File Dialog](image)

To select the folder with the preseeded disk to use. Drill-down to select the disk.

Disks that are not viable for preseeding are grayed out.

**Change VM Recovery VRA Dialog**
To change the recovery host required by the VRA to access the host:

- **VM Name:** The name of the virtual machine.
- **VPG Name:** The name of the VPG.
- **ZORG:** The Zerto name given to the organization, the ZORG, by a cloud service provider. For details, refer to Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.
- **VM Size GB:** The virtual machine size in gigabytes.
- **# of Volumes:** The number of volumes used by the virtual machine.
- **VM Hardware Version:** The hardware version of the virtual machine.
- **Target Host:** The host in which to move the recovery virtual machines.
- **Select the replacement host:** The name of the host to move the recovery virtual machines.
- **Auto Select the replacement host:** Selects the most suitable host to move the recovery virtual machines to.

### Checkpoints Dialog

When selecting the point to recover to, remember the following:
• The refresh button is initially grayed out and is enabled for clicking after 5 seconds. It is also grayed out for 5 seconds after being clicked, before being re-enabled.

• A reminder, **Click the refresh button to view the latest checkpoints** is displayed 10 seconds after the refresh button is clicked to remind the user that there is a new Latest Checkpoint.

• If the user has scrolled to, and selected, a checkpoint anywhere in the checkpoints list, clicking the refresh button will automatically return the user to the selected checkpoint in the list.

Use the following filters:

• **Latest**: Recovery is to the latest checkpoint. This ensures that the data is crash-consistent for the recovery. When selecting the latest checkpoint, the checkpoint used is the latest at this point. If a checkpoint is added between this point and starting the failover, the later checkpoint is **not** used.

• **Latest Tagged Checkpoint**: The recovery operation is to the latest checkpoint added in one of the following situations:
  - By a user.
  - When a failover test was previously performed on the VPG which includes the virtual machine.
  - When the virtual machine was added to an existing VPG after the added virtual machine was synchronized.

• **Select from all available checkpoints**: If you do not want to use the latest checkpoint, latest tagged checkpoint, choose **Select from all available checkpoints**. By default, this option displays all checkpoints in the system. You can choose to display only automatic, or tagged checkpoints, or any combination of these types.

---

**Configure and Install VRA Dialog**

To install a Zerto Virtual Replication Appliance (VRA) on a host:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click **SETUP > VRAs**.
2. Select a host which requires a VRA and click **NEW VRA**.

   The Configure and Install VRA dialog is displayed.
• If you selected a cluster or multiple hosts, the VRA is installed on the first host in the displayed list.

3. Specify the following **Host Details**:  
   - **Host**: The host under which the VRA is installed. The drop-down displays the hosts which do not have a VRA installed, with the selected host displayed by default.
   - **Host Root Password**: For future use.
   - **Storage**: The storage that contains the OS disks of the VRA VM. You can install more than one VRA on the same storage.
   - **Network**: The network used to access the VRA.
   - **VRA RAM**: The amount of memory to allocate to the VRA. The amount determines the maximum buffer size for the VRA for buffering IOs written by the protected virtual machines, before the writes are sent over the network to the recovery VRA. The recovery VRA also buffers the incoming IOs until they are written to the journal. If a buffer becomes full, a Bitmap Sync is performed after space is freed up in the buffer. For details, refer to [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines](#).

   • **VRA Bandwidth Group**: Choose the **VRA Bandwidth Group** from the dropdown list. If you want to create a new VRA group, type in the name of the new group and click **CREATE**. You can then choose the new group from the dropdown list.

You group VRAs together when VRAs use different networks so they can be grouped by network, for example when the protected and recovery sites are managed by the same SCVMM and you want to replicate from the branch site to the main site. Within a group the priority assigned to a VPG dictates the bandwidth used and is applicable within a group and not between groups. Thus, a VPG with a high priority is allocated bandwidth before VPGs with lower priorities. VPGs that are on VRAs with different VRA groups, for example, VPG1 on VRA1 in group1 and VPG2 on VRA2 in group2, do not affect each other, as the priority is relevant only within each group.

4. Specify the following VRA Network Details:
   - **Configuration**: Either have the IP address allocated via a static IP address or a DHCP server. If
you select the **Static** option, which is the recommended option, enter the following:

- **Address**: The IP address for the VRA.
- **Subnet Mask**: The subnet mask for the network. The default value is **255.255.255.0**.
- **Default Gateway**: The default gateway for the network.

5. Click **INSTALL**.

The VRA installation starts and the status is displayed in the **TASKS** popup dialog in the status bar and under **MONITORING > TASKS**.

The VRA displayed name, and DNS name, is **Z-VRA-hostname**. If a virtual machine with this name exists, for example when a previous VRA was not deleted, the VRA name has a number appended to it.

**Configure Paired Site Routing Dialog**

![Configure Paired Site Routing Dialog]

The IP address, subnet mask, and gateway to access the peer site VRAs when access to the peer site VRAs is not via the default gateway.

- **Enable Paired Site Routing**: When checked, enables paired site routing.
- **Address**: The IP address of the **next hop** at the local site, the router, or gateway address that is used to access the peer site network.
- **Subnet Mask**: The subnet mask for the peer site network.
- **Gateway**: The gateway for the peer site network.

These access details are used to access the VRAs on the peer site.

The settings in the **Configure Paired Site Routing** dialog apply to all VRAs installed after the information is saved. Any existing VRA is not affected and access to these VRAs continues via the default gateway. If the default gateway stops being used, you must reinstall the VRAs that were installed before setting up paired site routing.
Configure VM Settings Dialog

Specifies the values to use when restoring the selected virtual machines.

- **Restore on Host**: The IP address of the host where you want the virtual machine restored.
- **Restore on Datastore / Storage**: The datastore/storage to use for the restored virtual machine files.
- **Power On**: Select this if you want the restored virtual machine to be powered on.

Edit NIC Dialog

Specify the NIC settings when restoring a retention set to the recovery site.

- **NIC Name**: The name of the selected NIC.
• **Network:** The network to use for the restored virtual machine.

• **Create new MAC address:** The Media Access Control address (MAC address) to use. The default is to use the same MAC address for the restored virtual machine that was used in the protected site. Check the box to create a new MAC address on the restore site.

• **Change vNIC IP Configuration:** Whether or not to keep the default virtual NIC (vNIC) IP configuration. The vNIC IP is changed after the restore has completed when VMware Tools are installed.
  - If **Static** is selected, the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway must be set.
  - If **DHCP** is selected, the IP configuration and DNS server configurations are assigned automatically, to match the protected virtual machine.

• **IP Address:** The IP for the restored virtual machine. This can be the same IP as the original protected virtual machine.

• **Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for the network. The default value is **255.255.255.0**.

• **Default Gateway:** The default mask for the network.

• **Preferred DNS Server:** The IP address of the primary DNS server to handle Internet protocol mapping.

• **Alternate DNS Server:** The IP address of the alternate DNS server.

• **DNS Suffix:** The DNS name excluding the host.

### Edit Repository Dialog

You can change the Repository name, or define the Repository as the default repository.

> **To edit a Repository:**

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click **SETUP tab, REPOSITORIES sub-tab**.
2. Select the Repository to edit and click **MORE > Edit**.
   
   The Edit Repository window is displayed.

3. Edit any of the following settings:
   - **Name:** Specify a unique name for the Repository.
   - **Set as default repository:** Select to use the Repository as the default when defining the Retention policy in a VPG.

4. Click **SAVE**. The updated definition of the Repository is saved.
Edit Selected Volumes Dialog

If more than one datastore is selected, the path is not displayed.

- **Datastore / Raw Disk / Storage**: The storage or RDM disk where the virtual machine files will be restored.
- **Thin**: Whether the virtual machine disks will be thin-provisioned or not.

Edit VM Dialog

Edit the replication settings for a particular virtual machine in a VPG.

- **Recovery Host**: The cluster, resource pool, or host that will host the recovered virtual machine. If the site is defined in Zerto Cloud Manager, only a resource pool can be specified and the resource pool must also have been defined in Zerto Cloud Manager. For details about Zerto Cloud Manager, see Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

  When a resource pool is specified, Zerto checks that the resource pool capacity is enough for the specified virtual machine.

- **Recovery Storage**: The location where the metadata files for the virtual machine are stored. If a cluster or resource pool is selected for the host, only storage that is accessible by every host in the cluster or resource pool is displayed. When specifying the recovery storage for a virtual machine with a storage cluster, specify storage in the cluster.

- **Journal Size Hard Limit**: The maximum size that the journal can grow, either as a percentage or a fixed amount. The minimum journal size, set by Zerto, is 8GB. The journal is always thin-provisioned.
Unlimited: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage.

Size (GB): The maximum journal size in GB.

Percentage: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size the journal can grow to.

Journal Size Warning Threshold: The size of the journal that triggers a warning that the journal is nearing its hard limit.

Unlimited: The size of the journal is unlimited and it can grow to the size of the recovery storage.

Size (GB): The size in GB that will generate a warning.

Percentage: The percentage of the virtual machine volume size that will generate a warning.

Both the value of Size and Percentage must be less than the configured hard limit so that the warning will be generated when needed. In addition to the warning threshold, Zerto will issue a message when the free space available for the journal is almost full.

Journal Storage: The storage used for the journal data for each virtual machine in the VPG. To change the default, specify a host and then select a storage location accessible by this host to be used as the journal storage. When you select specific journal storage, the journals for each virtual machine in the VPG are stored in it, regardless of where recovery storage is for each virtual machine. In this case, all the protected virtual machines must be recovered to hosts that can access the specified journal storage.

- For Edit VM Setting in AWS, see Edit VM Settings (AWS) on page 401, on page 325.
- For Edit VM Settings in Azure, see Edit VM Settings (AWS) on page 401.

Edit VM Settings (AWS)

Edit the network settings for one or more virtual machines in a VPG that will be recovered to AWS. There are recovery settings for failovers and moves, and for failover tests.

Import Method
• **AWS Import:** The method that has been used in all past implementations.

• **Zerto Import for all volumes:** This is the fastest import method and uses a zImportVM for all volumes. A zImport virtual machine is created, per volume. For each recovered volume, the zImport virtual machine is terminated when all the data has been imported and its disk has been attached to the recovered virtual machine.

• **Zerto Import for data volumes:** Uses the zImport method for data volumes only. This is the default setting and has a faster RTO than AWS Import.

**VPC Network:** A virtual network dedicated to your AWS account.

**Subnet:** A range of IP addresses in your VPC.

**Security Group:** The AWS security to be associated with the virtual machines in this VPG. You can associate one or more security groups with the virtual machines.

**Instance Family:** The instance family from which to select the type. AWS instance families are optimized for different types of applications. Choose the instance family appropriate for the application in the virtual machine protected in the VPG.

**Instance Type:** The instance type, within the instance family, to assign to recovered instances. Different types within an instance family vary primarily in vCPU, ECU, RAM, and local storage size. The price per instance is directly related to the instance size.

**Private IP:** The private IP of an instance from the selected subnet. If you do not set the private IP, during recovery, AWS sets the private IP from the defined subnet range.

### Edit VM Settings (Azure)

Edit the network settings for one or more virtual machines in a VPG that will be recovered to Azure. There are recovery settings for failovers and moves, and for failover tests.

• **VNet:** The virtual network dedicated to your Azure subscription.

• **Subnet:** A range of IP addresses in your VPC.

• **Network Security Group:** The Azure network security to be associated with the virtual machines in this VPG. You can associate one or more network security groups with the virtual machines.
• **Recovery Disk Type:** Select the Azure recovery storage type to which the selected virtual machines will be recovered to; Managed Premium SSD, Managed Standard SSD or Managed Standard HDD. The Virtual Machine Series and Virtual Machine Size fields are updated with the relevant options based on the selected Recovery Disk Type.

• **Virtual Machine Series:** The virtual machine series from which to select the size. Azure virtual machine series are optimized for different types of applications. The default is set to DSv2. You can choose the virtual machine series appropriate for the application being protected in the VPG.

• **Virtual Machine Size:** The virtual machine size, within the virtual machine series, to assign to recovered virtual machines. Different sizes within a virtual machine series vary, for example in a number of cores, RAM, and local storage size. The default is set to Standard_DS1_v2. You can choose the virtual machine size appropriate for the application being protected in the VPG. The price per virtual machine is related to the virtual machine configuration.

• **Private IP:** The private IP of an instance from the selected subnet. If you do not set the private IP, during recovery, Azure sets the private IP from the defined subnet range.

**Edit vNIC Dialog**

Specify the network details to use for the recovered virtual machines after a failover or move operation, in the Failover/Move column, and for the recovered virtual machines when testing replication, in the Test column.

1. In each column, specify the following:
   - **Network:** The network to use for this virtual machine.
   - **Create new MAC address?** Whether the Media Access Control address (MAC address) used on the protected site should be replicated on the recovery site. The default is to use the same MAC address on both sites. Note that if you check this option, to create a new MAC address, and the current IP address is not specified, the protected virtual machine static IP address might not be used for the recovered virtual machine.
Edit Volumes Dialog

- For **Hyper-V** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

![Hyper-V Volumes Dialog]

- For **vSphere** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

![vSphere Volumes Dialog]

- For **vCD** recovery environments, the following window appears. For details, click here.

![vCD Volumes Dialog]
### Volume Source

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| (Hyper-V) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options: | • **Volume Source > Storage**: A new volume is used for replicated data.  
• From the **Storage** drop-down list, specify the storage to use to create disks for the replicated data.  
The storage specified for the replication must have at least the same amount of space as the protected volume and then an additional amount for the journal.  
The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.  
For more details, see *Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines*, in the section **Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V**.  
• **Volume Source > Preseeded volume**: Whether to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.  
Zerto **recommends** using this option particularly for large disks so that the initial synchronization will be faster since a **Delta Sync** can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.  
When **not** using a preseeded disk, the initial synchronization phase must copy the whole disk over the WAN.  
When using a preseeded virtual disk, you select the storage and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk.  
Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.  
Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.  
The storage where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery storage for the replicated data. |
| Storage |  |
| Preseeded volume |  |
(vSphere) Select a **Volume Source** for recovery from one of the drop-down options:

- **Datastore**
- **RDM**
- **Preseeded volume**

**Volume Source > Datastore:** A new volume is used for replicated data.

- Specify the **Datastore** to use to create disks for the replicated data.
- If the **source disk is thin provisioned**, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned.
- The datastore specified for replication must have at least the same amount of space as the **protected volume** and an additional amount for the **journal**.
- The amount of additional space needed for the journal can be fixed by specifying a maximum size for the journal, or can be calculated as the average change rate for the virtual machines in the VPG, multiplied by the length of time specified for the journal history.
- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified.

Then, define the following:

- **Datastore:** The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.

For more details, see *Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines*, in the section **Estimating WAN Bandwidth for VMware and Hyper-V**.
### Setting & Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Volume Source > RDM**: The VMware RDM (Raw Device Mapping) which will be used for the replication.

By default, **RDM is recovered as thin-provisioned VMDK** in the datastore specified in the **VM Recovery Datastore/Storage** field in the Edit VM dialog, and not to RDM.

Only a raw disk with the **same size as the protected disk** can be selected from the list of available raw disks. Other raw disks with different sizes are not available for selection.

The RDM is always stored in the recovery datastore, used for the virtual machine.

The following **limitations** apply to protecting RDM disks:

- RDM disks with an even number of blocks can replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an even number of blocks and to VMDKs.
- RDM disks with an odd number of blocks can only replicate to RDM disks of the same size with an odd number of blocks and not to VMDKs.
- You cannot define an RDM disk to be protected to a cloud service provider via a Zerto Cloud Connector nor if the virtual machine uses a BusLogic SCSI controller, nor when protecting or recovering virtual machines in an environment running vCenter Server 5.x with ESX/ESXi version 4.1 hosts.
(vSphere) Volume Source continued

**Select...**

**Volume Source > Preseeded volume:** Select this when you want to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.

Consider the following, then proceed to define the Datastore and the Path:

- Zerto **recommends** using this option particularly for **large disks** so that the initial synchronization is **faster** since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.

- If a preseeded disk is **not** selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the **whole disk** over the WAN.

- If you use a preseeded virtual disk, you select the datastore and exact location, folder, and name of the preseeded disk, which cannot be an IDE disk. Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

- The datastore where the preseeded disk is placed is also used as the recovery datastore for the replicated data.

- If the preseeded disk is **greater than 1TB on NFS storage**, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out. The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: `esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout>/NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout`

- If the protected disks are **non-default geometry**, configure the VPG using preseeded volumes.

- If the protected disk is an **RDM disk**, it can be used to preseed to a recovery VMDK disk. Zerto makes sure that the VMDK disk size is a correct match for the RDM disk.

- If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the
The Zerto Virtual Manager User Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting &amp; Description</th>
<th>Select...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then, define the following:

- **Datastore**: The Datastore where the preseeded disk is located. Only disks with the same size as the protected disk can be selected when browsing for a preseeded disk.
- **Path**: The full path to the preseeded disk.
**Setting & Description**

**Select...**

| (vCD) Select a Volume Source for recovery from one of the drop-down options:  
| - vCD managed storage policy  
| - Preseeded volume | **Volume Source > vCD managed storage policy**: Zerto will select a datastore, from the list of available datastores, in the selected Storage Policy in which to place the Volume, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.  
  - If there are several valid datastores, the datastore with the most available space is selected.  
  - Zerto recalculates the datastore available space for each volume sequentially, taking into consideration previously allocated volumes.  

**Volume Source > Preseeded volume:**

Select this when you want to copy the protected data to a virtual disk in the recovery site.

- Zerto recommends using this option particularly for **large disks** so that the initial synchronization is **faster** since a Delta Sync can be used to synchronize any changes written to the recovery site after the creation of the preseeded disk.

- If a preseeded disk is **not** selected, the initial synchronization phase must copy the **whole disk** over the WAN.

- The preseeded volume is a virtual disk (the VMDK flat file and descriptor) in the recovery site that has been prepared with a copy of the protected data.

- Browse to the preseed folder configured for the customer and the disk name, of the preseeded disk.

In order to use a preseeded VMDK, do the following:

- Create a folder in vCD to use for the preseeded disks in the datastore you want to use for the customer.

- Specify this datastore as a provider datastore for preseeded disks in the Configure Provider vDCs window, from the Advanced Settings window, as described in Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.

- In the Zerto Cloud Manager specify the Preseed Folder Name for the ZORG, in the Manage ZORG tab.

- Zerto searches for the preseeded folder in the available datastores in the Org vDCs specified in the vCD Cloud Resources for the ZORG in the Zerto Cloud Manager and takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA.

If the virtual machine has more than one preseeded disk, these disks must reside on the same datastore.
### Setting & Description | Select...
---|---
- If the preseeded disk is **greater than 1TB on NFS storage**, the VPG creation might fail. This is a known VMware problem when the NFS client does not wait for sufficient time for the NFS storage array to initialize the virtual disk after the RPC parameter of the NFS client times out.

The timeout default value is 10 seconds. See VMware documentation, [http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1027919), which describes the configuration option to tune the RPC timeout parameter by using the command: `esxcfg-advcfg -s <Timeout> /NFS/SetAttrRPCTimeout`
- If the VPG is being defined for a Zerto Organization, ZORG, the location of the preseeded disk must be defined in the Zerto Cloud Manager. See Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide.
- Zerto supports the SCSI protocol. Only disks that support this protocol can be specified. Virtual machine RDMs in a vCenter Server are replicated as VMDKs in a vCD environment.

### (vCD) continued

**Storage Policy**: Specify the Storage Policy for recovery from one of the options:
- Storage Policy per volume is supported only in vCD supported versions, and when the selected Orgvdc is not configured for fast provisioning.
- Zerto will select a datastore from the selected Storage Policy in which to place these files, unless the datastore is excluded in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.
- The Storage Policies which appear in the drop-down list:
  - Include the **Use VM Default** option (default), which will apply the VM’s storage policy to this volume. This is also the Storage Policy default value.
  - Were defined in VMware vCloud Director and are configured in the Orgvdc.
  - Have at least one Datastore that was not excluded as a Recovery Volume in the Configure Provider vDCs Dialog.
**Setting & Description | Select...**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temp Data disk</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the virtual machine to be replicated includes a temp data disk as part of its configuration.</td>
<td>Specify a mirror disk for replication that is marked as a temp data disk. In this case, data is not replicated to the temp data disk after initial synchronization.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Thin provisioning (vSphere)**

| If the recovery volumes are thin-provisioned or not. | If the source disk is thin provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also thin provisioned. vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports thin-provisioned volumes |

**Dynamic provisioning (Hyper-V)**

| If the recovery volumes are dynamic-provisioned or not. | If the source disk is dynamic provisioned, the default for the recovery volume is also dynamic provisioned. vCD only: Unless the Org vDC only supports dynamic-provisioned volumes |

---

**Edit VRA Dialog**

To change the network settings for a VRA, for example when the gateway to the VRA is changed:

- **Host**: The IP of the host on which the VRA is installed.

  For ESXi 5.5 and later hosts, by default, Zerto Virtual Manager uses a vSphere Installation Bundle, VIB, to connect to the host. When using VIB:

  - The user does not enter a password.
Once a day, Zerto Virtual Manager checks that the VRA and host can connect. If the connection fails, Zerto Virtual Manager re-initiates the connection automatically and notes this in the log.

When using a password, root access is required if the Zerto host component is down and needs an automatic restart. Once a day, Zerto Virtual Manager checks that the password is valid. If the password was changed, an alert is triggered, requesting the user enter the new password.

- (vSphere only) **Use credentials to connect to host:** When unchecked, the Zerto Virtual Manager uses VIB to connect to the host. This field is only relevant for ESXi 5.5 and later.

  **Note:** In Zerto Enterprise Government Edition (EGE), this field is unavailable.

- (vSphere only) **Host Root Password:** When the VRA should connect to the host with a password, select **Use credential to connect to host**, then enter the root user password used to access the host. When the box on the right side is selected, the password is displayed in plain text. This field is only relevant for ESXi 4.x and 5.x hosts. This field is disabled for ESX 4.x hosts.

  **Note:** In Zerto Enterprise Government Edition (EGE), the **Show password** field is unavailable.

- **VRA Bandwidth Group:** The free text to identify the group to which a VRA belongs. If you create a group and then change the name when editing the VRA so that there is no VRA in the site that belongs to the originally specified group, the group is automatically deleted from the system.

To create a new group, enter the new group name over the text **New group** and click **CREATE**.

- **Configuration:** Either have the IP address allocated via a static IP address or a DHCP server. If the VRA was originally installed with a static IP, you cannot change this to DHCP. If the VRA was originally installed to use a DHCP server, you can change this to use a static IP.

- **Address:** The static IP address for the VRA to communicate with the Zerto Virtual Manager.

- **Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for the network. The default value is 255.255.255.0.

- **Default Gateway:** The default gateway for the network.

### License Dialog

The Zerto license includes information such as the number of virtual machines that can be protected and the license expiry date. You can see these details by clicking ![License](image) in the top right of the header and selecting **License**.
The Zerto license includes the following details:

- **License**: The license key itself.
- **License Type**: What is licensed: whether the license restricts the number of virtual machines that can be protected or the number of sockets used.
- **Expiry Date**: The license expiry date.
- **Quantity**: The maximum amount licensed, either virtual machines or sockets, based on the license type. If blank, the quantity is unlimited.
- **Usage**: The sites using the license and the number of protected virtual machines in each site.

A warning is generated when either the license expires or more than the licensed number of virtual machines are being protected. Protection continues but the license should be updated. After getting a new license key you can update Zerto with this key.

**New Repository Dialog**

Zerto keeps the retention sets in Repositories. As the retention process is running on the recovery site, the repositories are connected to the recovery VRAs. Zerto can connect to these repositories using NFS, SMB (CIFS) or HPE StoreOnce Catalyst protocols, where the underlying storage can be either standard storage appliances or Purposely Built Backup Appliances (PBBAs) such as ExaGrid or HPE StoreOnce.

Once the repository has been configured, it can be selected as a target in the VPG retention policy configuration. Before you proceed, read the Considerations: on page 414.

**Considerations:**
HPE StoreOnce Catalyst Considerations:

- The Catalyst Store on the HPE StoreOnce appliance must support LBW as the “Transfer policy”.
- Catalyst API server version should be v9 and above.
- The Catalyst Store on the HPE StoreOnce appliance must allow access to the recovery VRA. The default setting is No Access. A user with Administrator Role can enable access through the Catalyst User Interface.
- The Catalyst Store on the HPE StoreOnce appliance must have credentials already defined. These credentials are used when setting up the Repository in the Zerto User Interface.
- The HPE StoreOnce Catalyst repository requires increasing the VRAs RAM to 4GB. 1GB will be allocated for Catalyst usage.

To create a repository for Long Term Retention:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click SETUP > REPOSITORIES > NEW REPOSITORY.

   ![New Repository Dialog](image)
   
   The New Repository window is displayed.

2. In the General area, specify the following:
• **Name:** A unique name for the repository.

• **Storage Type:** The type of storage can be a network share, selected PBBAs or other de-duplicating appliance. See the Interoperability Matrix for supported versions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Network Share</th>
<th>Other De-Duplicating Storage Appliances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • Purposely Built Backup Appliances (PBBAs): | • HPE StoreOnce
| | • ExaGrid
| | • Dell EMC DataDomain

• **Connection Type:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NFS</th>
<th>The network share is connected on top of NFS protocol.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SMB</td>
<td>The network share is connected on top of SMB (CIFS) protocol. Username and password must be provided to access the share.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Username:</strong> The username can be entered using either of the following formats:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• domain\username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Password:</strong> Password to access the Network Share.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• HPE StoreOnce Catalyst</td>
<td><strong>Username:</strong> The username can be entered using either of the following formats:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• domain\username</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Password:</strong> Password to access the Catalyst store.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Catalyst Server:</strong> IP of the HPE StoreOnce appliance that holds the Catalyst store.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Catalyst store name:</strong> The Catalyst store name in HPE StoreOnce appliance.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. In the Location area, define the **Path**. This is the path where the Repository will reside. This field does not apply to HPE StoreOnce Catalyst connection type. Zerto recommends using an empty folder when creating a new Repository.

   The path must be accessible from the VRA, so if the Repository is on a different domain, the
domain must be included in the path.

4. In the Properties area, you can check the Set as default repository checkbox. This will use the Repository as the default when defining the Retention policy in a VPG.

5. Click SAVE. The repository is created.

After setting up a Repository, you can protect virtual machines for longer periods of times, enabling Zerto's Long Term Retention.

### Offsite Clone Dialog

To create a clone of each virtual machine in a VPG on the recovery site in the production network. The clone is a copy of the protected virtual machines on the recovery site, while the virtual machines on the protected site remain protected and live.

- **SELECT A CHECKPOINT:** Opens the Checkpoints Dialog to select the checkpoint to use to make the clone.

The Using checkpoint field is updated with your selection.

- (On-Premise) **Recovery Datastore:** Select the datastore to use for the recovery virtual machines.
- **Advanced:** Select specific VMs to clone.

For more details, see *Checkpoints Dialog on page 394*.

### Open Support Ticket Dialog

Support cases can be opened directly in the Zerto User Interface.

Creating a support case in the Zerto User Interface simplifies the submission process since much of the information that is required when entering a case using the Zerto Support Portal, such as the version and build numbers, is automatically added to the case when it is submitted via the Zerto User Interface.

In addition, when the case is submitted, a snapshot of the current environment is also attached to the case. The snapshot information includes the lists of alerts, events, tasks, VPGs, and virtual machines that are protected.

This information is used to help Zerto resolve the case quickly and, whenever possible, without the need to request more information from you.
Note: The clocks on the machines where Zerto is installed must be synchronized with UTC and with each other (the timezones can be different). Zerto recommends synchronizing the clocks using NTP. If the clocks are not synchronized with UTC, submitting a support case can fail.

To open a support case:

1. In the Zerto User Interface, click  in the top right of the header and select Open a Case.

   The Open Support Case window for the site opens.

   ![Open Support Case Window]

2. Specify the case details:

   - **Subject**: The subject of the support case.
   - **Type**: The type of case being opened. Available options are:
     - Problem
     - Question
   - **Description**: A description of the problem or question in addition to the information supplied in the subject.
   - **Allow remote log collection**: How many logs is Zerto allowed to collect. Available options are:
     - Only for this case
     - For the next 30 days
     - Never
   - **SSP Email Address**: A valid email address registered with Zerto, with permission to open cases.
3. Click **SUBMIT**.

The case is processed and its progress is displayed. If the email address is not valid, the case is rejected. Once the case submission starts, it cannot be canceled.

**Remote Support Dialog**

Remote Log Collection allows customers to authorize Zerto support engineers to collect logs from their environment. By using remote log collection customers can avoid having to use the Diagnostic Tool on their ZVM server in order to collect logs for analysis, a potentially complex and time-consuming procedure.

- **Never**: Remote log collection is not allowed (default). If remote log collection is currently allowed, the remote connection will be terminated if you select this option.

- **For the next 30 days**: Remote log collection is allowed. This permission will automatically terminate in 30 days unless terminated by selecting the **Never** option.

- **Only for the duration of a specific case**: You will be prompted to select the Case number from the drop-down list. The list contains all the active cases opened under the account that the Zerto Virtual Manager is registered to. Remote log collection will be allowed for as long as the case is active or until remote log collection is terminated by selecting the **Never** option.

**Restore a VPG from Repositories**

Use the following procedure to restore a VM or a VPG from the repository.
To restore a single virtual machine or multiple virtual machines from a VPG:

1. In the Zerto User Interface select **ACTIONS > RESTORE**.
   The Restore wizard is displayed.

2. Select a VM to restore from the Restore from VM drop-down list or type the VM name. Or, select a VPG to restore from the Restore from VPG drop-down list or type the VPG name. If a VM/VPG was renamed, both the original and new names will appear.
   The drop-down lists include VMs or VPGs that are currently configured or were configured/deleted on your site. VMs or VPGs marked with an arrow are VMs/VPGs that were configured on your site and are no longer protected.

3. Click **NEXT**.
   The RESTORE SETTINGS step appears, displaying all the available retention sets for the selected virtual machine or the VPG.

4. From the list of available retention sets, select the retention set to restore, where:
   - **Point in Time**: The date and time the retention set was performed.
   - **Restore Site**: The recovery site where the virtual machine or VPG reside.
• **VMs:** The number of virtual machines that were retained in this retention set.

• **Volumes:** The number of volumes that were retained in this retention set, out of the total number of volumes for the virtual machine/s.

• **Repository:** The name of the repository where the retention set is stored.

• **ZORG:** *(ZCM sites only)* The Zerto organization for which the retention set was created. This field only has a value if the Zerto Cloud Manager is connected to the site. For details, see *Zerto Cloud Manager Administration Guide*.

5. When you select a retention set to restore, the list of virtual machines in the retention set appear, displaying the following information:

- **VM Name:** The name of the virtual machine.
- **# of volumes to be restored:** The number of volumes retained, out of the total number of volumes for the virtual machine.
- **Provisioned VM Size:** The total size of the virtual machine.

6. Click **NEXT**.

The VM SETTINGS step is displayed.

When restoring a VPG, the list of virtual machines that can be restored is displayed.

7. You can specify the following which are then applied to the virtual machine/s to be restored:

- **Restore on Host:** The host where you want the virtual machine/s restored.
- **Restore on Datastore:** The datastore to use for the restored virtual machine/s.
- **Power On:** Select this if you want the restored virtual machine/s to be powered on.

- **Or** -

- Alternatively, you can use the recovery host and storage specified for each virtual machine in the VPG definition by clicking **APPLY VPG CONFIGURATION**.
8. To change the information in a field, click the field and update the information.

9. To change the host or datastore information for several virtual machines at the same time, select the virtual machines and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

   The Configure VM Settings window is displayed.

   ![Configure VM Settings Window]

   You can specify the following values, which are then applied to the virtual machine/s to be restored:
   - **Restore on Host**: The host where you want the virtual machine/s restored.
   - **Restore on Datastore**: The datastore to use for the restored virtual machine/s.
   - **Power On**: Select this if you want the restored virtual machine/s to be powered on.

10. To specify the volume information for each virtual machine, from the Actions column, click **Volumes**.

   The Volumes dialog is displayed:

   ![Volumes Dialog]

   11. To edit information in a field, click the field and update the information.

   12. To edit information for several datastores at the same time, select the datastores and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

   The Edit Selected Volumes dialog is displayed.
13. Specify the datastore settings.
   - **Datastore / Raw Disk**: The storage or RDM disk where the virtual machine files will be restored.
   - **Thin**: Whether the virtual machine disks will be thin-provisioned or not.

14. Click **SAVE**.

15. In the Volumes dialog, click **DONE**.

16. To specify the NIC information for each virtual machine, from the Actions column, click **NICs**.

   The NICs window is displayed:

17. To edit information in one field, click the field and update the information.

18. To edit information for several virtual NICs at the same time, select the NICs and click **EDIT SELECTED**.

   The Edit NIC dialog is displayed.
19. Specify the NIC settings.

- **NIC Name:** The name of the selected NIC.
- **Network:** The network to use for the restored virtual machine.
- **Create new MAC address:** The Media Access Control address (MAC address) to use. The default is to use the same MAC address for the restored virtual machine that was used in the protected site.
- **Change vNIC IP Configuration:** Select the checkbox to create a new MAC address on the restore site.
- **IP Address:** The IP for the restored virtual machine. This can be the same IP as the original protected virtual machine.
- **Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for the network. The default value is **255.255.255.0**.
- **Default Gateway:** The default mask for the network.
- **Preferred DNS Server:** The IP address of the primary DNS server.
- **Alternate DNS Server:** The IP address of the alternate DNS server.
- **DNS Suffix:** The DNS name excluding the host.

20. Click **OK**.

21. Click **DONE**.

22. Click **NEXT**.

The SUMMARY step is displayed. Review the details of the restore.

23. If this is the retention set which you want to restore, click **RESTORE**.

The virtual machines are created from the Repository at the recovery site.

To restore from repositories, see **Using Zerto’s Long Term Retention on page 332**.
Restore - NICs Dialog

When restoring a retention set to the recovery site, this dialog shows the NIC settings for the virtual machines in the VPG. You can choose to edit information in one field by clicking the field and updating the information. You can choose to edit the NIC settings for several virtual machines at the same time by selecting the NICs and clicking **EDIT SELECTED**.

**Restore - Edit Volumes Dialog**

When restoring a retention set to the recovery site, this window shows the datastores for a selected virtual machine in the VPG.

- You can edit information in one field by clicking the field and updating the information.
- You can edit several datastore settings at the same time by selecting the datastores and clicking **EDIT SELECTED**.

**Restore - Edit Selected Volumes Dialog**

Accessed from the Restore wizard, VM Settings tab, Actions column > Volumes link.
In the Volumes dialog select a datastore then click **EDIT SELECTED** to edit information for several datastores at the same time.

The Edit Selected Volumes dialog is displayed.

1. Specify the datastore settings:
   - **Datastore / Raw Disk**: The datastore/storage, or RDM disk where the virtual machine files will be restored.
   - **Path**: This field cannot be edited in this window. The path to the datastore/storage/RDM disk. If more than one datastore is selected, the path is not displayed.
   - **Thin**: Whether the virtual machine disks will be thin-provisioned or not.

2. Click **Save** to return to the Volumes dialog.

**Site Settings Dialog**

Contains site-wide settings:

- Site Information Dialog on page 426
- Performance and Throttling Dialog on page 428
- Policies Dialog on page 431
- Email Settings Dialog on page 432
- Reports Dialog on page 433
- Compatibility Dialog on page 433
- LTR Settings Dialog on page 434
- License Dialog on page 413
- About Dialog on page 385

**Site Information Dialog**

To update information about the local site:

1. In the Zerto User Interface (top right), click **SETTING (≡)** and select **Site Settings**.

The Site Settings dialog is displayed.
• In **vSphere** and **Hyper-V** sites, the following fields are displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SITE DETAILS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name*</td>
<td>site-1 at Zerto</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Location*</td>
<td>site-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Name*</td>
<td><a href="mailto:site-1@zer.to.com">site-1@zer.to.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Email</td>
<td><a href="mailto:site-1@zer.to.com">site-1@zer.to.com</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Phone</td>
<td>066-6666666</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER CREDENTIALS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Username</td>
<td>invalid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Password</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• In **AWS** sites, the following fields are displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SITE DETAILS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name*</td>
<td>ZCA.Ireland.IW2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Location*</td>
<td>Site location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bucket Name</td>
<td>Zerto-6227933741-AWS-4506-9184-5662-4974-4721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Name*</td>
<td>ContactName</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Email</td>
<td>Unconfigured contact email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Phone</td>
<td>540000000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER CREDENTIALS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Access Key ID</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Access Key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• In **Microsoft Azure** sites, the following fields are displayed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SITE DETAILS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Site Name*</td>
<td>QA.Azure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Site Location*</td>
<td>Unconfigured location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Name*</td>
<td>Unconfigured contact info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Email</td>
<td>Unconfigured contact email</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact Phone</td>
<td>Unconfigured contact phone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AZURE SETTINGS</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application Name</td>
<td>Zerto Cloud appliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Client ID</td>
<td>e9a74491-2830-4b61-adbc-420f955929c6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subscription</td>
<td>QA.Azure Team</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Name</td>
<td>QA.Azure-zhang-1-333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage Account Name</td>
<td>storageaccount1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Define general information about the site.

• **(Mandatory) Site Name**: The name used to identify the site.
• (Mandatory) **Site Location:** Information such as the address of the site or a significant name with which to identify the site location.

• (AWS environments only) **Bucket Name:** The name of the bucket that was created when Zerto was installed. This cannot be changed.

• (Mandatory) **Contact Name:** The name of the person to contact if a need arises. Mandatory.

• **Contact Email:** An email address to use if a need arises.

• **Contact Phone:** A phone number to use if a need arises.

3. (On premise environments) To change the **User Credentials** to access the vCenter or Hyper-V SCVMM server from the Zerto Virtual Manager:

   • **User Name:** The administrator name used to access the vCenter or SCVMM server. The name can be entered using either of the following formats:
     - *username*
     - *domain\username*

   • **Password:** The password used to access the vCenter or SCVMM server for the given user name. To ensure security, after saving the settings, the password field is cleared.

4. (Azure environments only) **Azure Settings:**

   • **Application Name:** The name used to access Azure.

   • **Client ID:** A unique identifier that is associated with the access name.

   • **Subscription:** The subscription associated with the user.

   • **Resource Name:** The name of the resource the user created.

   • **Storage Account Name:** The name of the storage account created or selected for this site during installation. (TA14986)

5. (AWS environments only) **AWS Settings:**

   • **Access Key ID:** A unique identifier that is associated with a secret access key.

   • **Secret Access Key:** A key that is used with the access key ID.

6. Click **SAVE**.

**Performance and Throttling Dialog**

➢ To configure bandwidth:
• **Click Throttling.**

![Image of Zerto Virtual Manager Administration Guide Microsoft Hyper-V Environment - Rev01 U2 The Zerto Virtual Manager User Interface](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BANDWIDTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bandwidth Throttling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Limited" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Time-based Throttling" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Click SHOW ADVANCED SETTINGS**

• **Bandwidth Throttling:**

Define this to control the amount of traffic going out of your site. When defined, this is the maximum bandwidth that Zerto uses from this site to **all peer** recovery sites.

If you do not specify bandwidth throttling, the default is for Zerto to automatically assign the bandwidth used per VPG, based on using the maximum available and then prioritizing the usage according to the priority set for the VPGs sending data over the WAN.

**Note:** For minimum bandwidth requirements, see [Zerto Scale and Benchmarking Guidelines](image).

• **By default, Limited is selected.**

• **In the text box, set the MB/sec. The valid range is from 0 to 1300 MB/sec.**

• **With 0 MB/sec, Zerto automatically assigns the bandwidth used per VPG, based on using the maximum available and then prioritizing the usage according to the priority set for the VPGs sending data over the WAN.**

• **Enter the MB/sec when the value required is 100 MB/sec or more.**

• **Time-based Throttling:**

Define this to throttle the bandwidth during specific times. For example, during the daily peak transaction period you can change the bandwidth throttling, to override the general setting.
### BANDWIDTH

Bandwidth Throttling

- **Limited**: Select to define the limit, then define:
  - **From**: The hour and the minute to start the throttling, using a 24-hour clock.
  - **To**: The hour and the minute to end the throttling, using a 24-hour clock.

- **Click Show advanced settings...**

**Important:**

Advanced settings must **only** be changed in coordination with **Zerto support**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>From</th>
<th>00</th>
<th>:</th>
<th>00</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>00</td>
<td>:</td>
<td>00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• **Enable IO throttling**: If a host is handling too many IOs, then the IOs begin to get high latencies. To offset this the VRA sends fewer concurrent IOs. The latency is measured by taking the average latency for all IOs over a set period of time. For example, when the period is 5000 milliseconds and the bad IO latency is 40, the average latency is calculated every 5 seconds, and if the average latency exceeds 40, the VRA sends fewer concurrent IOs.

• **Bad IO Latency VM**: The threshold above which the latency is considered high, and therefore bad.

• **Requested Duration (ms)**: The period of time used to measure the average latency.

### Policies Dialog

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DISASTER AND RECOVERY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Failover/Move Commit Policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Timeout (Minutes)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRE/POST RECOVERY OPERATIONS SCRIPTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Default Script Execution Timeout</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REPLICATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Replication Pause Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the **Disaster and Recovery** area:

• **Failover/Move Commit Policy**: The commit policy to use during a failover or move operation. The value set here is the default for all failover or move operations from this point on but can be changed when defining a failover or move operation. The following options are available:

  • **None**: The failover or move operation must be manually committed or rolled back by the user.

  • **Commit**: After the time specified in the **Default Timeout** field, the failover or move operation is committed. During the specified time you can check the recovered VPG virtual machines, and you can manually commit or roll back.

  • **Rollback**: After the time specified in the **Default Timeout** field the failover or move operation is rolled back, unless you manually commit it or roll it back before the time out value is reached. During the specified time you can check the recovered VPG virtual machines.

• **Default Timeout**: The time-out in minutes after which a Commit or Rollback is performed. A value of zero indicates that the system automatically performs the commit policy, without waiting for any user interaction.

• **Default Script Execution Timeout**: The length of time in seconds after which a script times out.

In the **Replication** area:

• **Enable Replication to Self**: Enable the same site to be used as both the protected and recovery site.
• **Replication Pause Time:** The time to pause when synchronizing a VPG if continuing the synchronization will cause all the checkpoints in the journal to be removed.

• **For incoming replication, copy the BIOS UUID of the protected VM to the recovered VM:** Select this to preserve the BIOS UUID of the protected VM after recovery operations, in the recovery ZVM Site Settings window.

**Note:**
- Preserving of the BIOS UUID is **not supported** in Clone and Self-Replication recovery operations.
- Preserving of the BIOS UUID is **not supported** in Public Cloud.
- Cross replication is **not** supported.

**Email Settings Dialog**

Define an email address to receive Zerto alerts and retention reports.
• **SMTP Server Address**: The SMTP server address. The Zerto Virtual Manager must be able to reach this address.

• **SMTP Server Port**: The SMTP server port, if it was changed from the default, 25.

• **Sender Account**: A valid email address for the email sender name.

• **To**: A valid email address where you want to send the email.

• **SEND TEST EMAIL** button: Tests that the email notification is set up correctly. A test email is sent to the email address specified in the To field.

• **Enable sending alerts**: Check to be notified by email about any Zerto alerts issued. An email is sent when the alert is issued, and after it has been successfully handled and the alert is no longer valid.

### Reports Dialog

Configures the Resource Report.

• **Sampling Rate**: When to take resource samples to identify resource usage, either daily at a specific hour and minute or hourly at a specific minute within each hour. Note that collecting a sample hourly provides a higher resolution picture of replication traffic than if samples are only collected once a day.

• **Sampling Time**: The time that the sample is taken.

### Compatibility Dialog

Lists supported host versions.

---

Site Settings Dialog
LTR Settings Dialog

**Indexing Repository**: The Repository where all the VMs’ File System Indexing meta-data is stored.

Stop Failover Test Dialog

Stops the testing of the selected VPG.

- **Result**: Whether the test passed or failed.
- **Notes**: A description of the test. For example, defines where external files that describe the tests are saved. Notes are limited to 255 characters.
- Clicking the **Stop** button stops the testing. After stopping a test, the virtual machines in the recovery site are powered off and then removed, and the checkpoint that was used for the test has the following tag added to identify the test: Tested at startDateAndTimeOfTest.

**TASKS**

Monitor the recent tasks by clicking the **TASKS** area in the status bar at the bottom of the Zerto User Interface. The following information is displayed for the most recent tasks:
The task status.

The name of the task.

A description of the task.

Also, actions, such as stopping a failover test, can be performed from this dialog.

Click **SHOW ALL** to access MONITORING > TASKS.
## Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Access Key (AWS)</strong></td>
<td>An alphanumeric text string that uniquely identifies the AWS account owner. No two accounts can have the same AWS Access Key.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amazon Web Services (AWS)</strong></td>
<td>A collection of remote computing services, also called web services, that make up a cloud computing platform by Amazon.com. The most central and well-known of these services are Amazon EC2 and Amazon S3. The service is advertised as providing a large computing capacity (potentially many servers) much faster and cheaper than building a physical server farm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Asynch Replication</strong></td>
<td>See Replication, Asynchronous on page 444.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Backup</strong></td>
<td>See Long Term Retention on page 441 on page 440.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bare Metal</strong></td>
<td>A computer system or network in which a virtual machine is installed directly on hardware rather than within the host operating system (OS).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Bitmap Sync**  
Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, dependent on when the promotion for the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or full sync, etc. on page 439 | A change tracking mechanism of the protected machines during a disconnected state when Zerto starts to maintain a smart bitmap in memory to track and record changed storage areas. Since the bitmap is kept in memory, Zerto does not require any LUN or volume per VPG at the source side.  

The bitmap is small and scales dynamically, containing references to the areas of the source disk that have changed but not the actual I/O. The bitmap is stored locally on the VRA within the available resources. For example, when a VRA goes down and is then rebooted.  

When required, Zerto starts to maintain a smart bitmap in memory, to track and record storage areas that change. When the issue that caused the bitmap sync is resolved, the bitmap is used to check updates to the source disks and send any updates to the recovery site. A bitmap sync occurs during the following conditions:  

- Synchronization after WAN failure or when the load over the WAN is too great for the WAN to handle, in which case the VPGs with the lower priorities will be the first to enter a Bitmap Sync.  
- When there is storage congestion at the recovery site, for example when the VRA at the recovery site cannot handle all the writes received from the protected site in a timely fashion.  
- When the VRA at the recovery site goes down and is then rebooted.  

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are still possible. If a disaster occurs requiring a failover during a bitmap synchronization, you can recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal.  

**Note:** For the synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the source data to replicate to the target recovery disks. |
| **Bucket (AWS)**  
Amazon buckets are like a container for your files. You can name your buckets the way you like but it should be unique across the Amazon system. |  |
| **Business Continuity & Disaster Recovery (BC/DR)**  
An organization's ability to recover from a disaster and/or unexpected event and resume or continue operations. A disaster recovery, DR, plan is a subset of a Business Continuity plan. Organizations should have a business continuity, BC, plan in place that outlines the logistics and business operations. The key metrics to be measured in a disaster recovery environment are the Recovery Point Objective (RPO) on page 444 and Recovery Time Objective (RTO) on page 444. |  |
| **Business Continuity Management (BCM)** | Holistic management process that identifies potential threats to an organization and the impacts to business operations that those threats, if realized, might cause, and which provides a framework for building organizational resilience with the capability for an effective response that safeguards the interests of its key stakeholders, reputation, brand and value-creating activities. (ISO 22313, formerly BS 25999-1). |
| **Business Continuity Plan** | Contains the instructions, procedures and guidelines that are developed and maintained in readiness for use during and after any potentially disruptive event in order to enable the organization to continue to deliver its critical activities at an acceptable, predefined level. |
| **Business Impact Analysis (BIA)** | The process of analyzing business functions and processes and the effects that a business disruption might have upon them. |
| **Checkpoint** | Zerto ensures crash consistency by writing checkpoints to the journal every few seconds. These checkpoints ensure write order fidelity and crash-consistency to each checkpoint. During recovery you pick one of these crash-consistent checkpoints and recover to this point. Additionally, checkpoints can be manually added by the administrator, with a description of the checkpoint. For example, when an event is going to take place that might result in the need to perform a recovery, you can pinpoint when this event occurs as a checkpoint in each journal. |
| **Cloud Service Provider (CSP)** | A service provider that offers customers storage or software services available via a private (private cloud) or public network (cloud). Usually, it means the storage and software is available for access via the Internet. Typically Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS), Software as a Service (SaaS), or Platform as a Service (PaaS) - are offered to their customers. Zerto enables them to offer Disaster Recovery As A Service (DRaaS) on page 439 and In-Cloud DR (ICDR) on page 440, too. |
| **Crisis Management Plan** | Provides the overall coordination of the organization’s response to a crisis (which is a critical event that needs to be handled appropriately to prevent a damaging impact to the organization’s profitability, reputation or ability to operate). |
### Delta Sync

The *Delta Sync* uses a checksum comparison to minimize the use of network resources. A Delta Sync is used when the protected virtual machine disks and the recovery disks should already be synchronized, except for a possible few changes to the protected disks, for example, when the target recovery disk is defined as a preseeded (not available in the cloud) disk or after a VRA upgrade, or for reverse protection after a move or failover.

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal but recovery operations are still possible. If a disaster occurs requiring a failover during a delta synchronization, you can recover to the last checkpoint written to the journal.

It is **not possible** to perform a move during a delta sync.

#### Note:

For the synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the source data to replicate to the target recovery disks.

### Disaster

The occurrence of one or more events which, either separately or cumulatively, activate disaster recovery.

### Disaster Recovery

The ability to restart operations after an interruption to the business according to a plan that ensures an orderly and timely restoration.

### Disaster Recovery Plan

The disaster recovery, DR, plan is a component of the Business Continuity plan that details the process and procedures to recover the organization’s resources to continue business operations. The Technology DR plan focuses on the IT disaster recovery. Also see [Business Continuity Plan on page 438](#).

### Disaster Recovery As A Service (DRaaS)

A disaster recovery solution that incorporates a service provider to replace or augment the organization’s data protection implementation. In a DRaaS scenario, the customer may manage and have complete control over the production data. The Cloud Service Provider (CSP) may provide a partial or completely managed service. In either case, the CSP must ensure the availability of the data and adapt as the customers infrastructure changes. An advantage of this model is the CSP has dedicated resources skilled in DR operations.

### DRS (vSphere)

Enables balancing computing workloads with available resources in a VMware vCenter cluster.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Management</td>
<td>Covers the immediate response to a situation or set of circumstances that present a clear and present threat to the safety of personnel or other assets of the organization.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estimated Recovery Time (ERT)</td>
<td>This is the estimated timings based on full resource provision available during a live invocation. This time typically sits between the Net Recovery Time on page 443 and the Recovery Time Achieved (RTA) on page 444 time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESX/ESXi (vSphere)</td>
<td><em>Bare-metal</em> hypervisor from VMware, meaning it installs directly on top of the physical server and partitions it into multiple virtual machines that can run simultaneously, sharing the physical resources of the underlying server. ESXi is the most recent version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extended DR</td>
<td>Includes the ability to configure both disaster recovery and Long Term Retention for the protected virtual machines in the VPG, according to a user-defined data retention policy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyper-V</td>
<td>A hybrid hypervisor, which is installed in the operating system. However, during installation it redesigns the operating system architecture and becomes just like a next layer on the physical hardware.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypervisor</td>
<td>The host for multiple VMs in a virtualized environment. vSphere, ESX/ESXi, is the VMware brand hypervisor. The hypervisor is the virtualization architecture layer that allows multiple operating systems, termed guests, to run concurrently on a host computer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypervisor Manager</td>
<td>The tool used to manage the host. For example VMware vCenter Server and Microsoft SCVMM.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/O (Input/Output)</td>
<td>Describes any operation, program, or device that transfers data to or from a computer. Typical I/O devices are printers, hard disks, keyboards, and mouses. In fact, some devices are basically input-only devices (keyboards and mouses); others are primarily output-only devices (printers); and others provide both input and output of data (hard disks, diskettes, writable CD-ROMs). In computer architecture, the combination of the CPU and main memory (memory that the CPU can read and write to directly, with individual instructions) is considered the brain of a computer, and from that point of view any transfer of information from or to that combination, for example to or from a disk drive, is considered I/O.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In-Cloud DR (ICDR)</td>
<td>A disaster recovery solution that incorporates a service provider to replace or augment the organization’s data protection implementation. When customers leverage an ICDR service, the CSP hosts the production and DR sites. The virtual machines (VMs) are typically replicated from one CSP datacenter to another CSP datacenter as a managed service or as managed co-located datacenters. The customers have the ability to interact with their applications as if they were locally hosted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary Term</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Sync</td>
<td>Synchronization performed after creating the VPG to ensure that the protected disks and recovery disks are the same. Recovery operations cannot occur until after the initial synchronization has completed. Adding a virtual machine to a VPG is equivalent to creating a new VPG and an initial synchronization is performed. In this case, any checkpoints in the journal become unusable and only new checkpoints added after the initial synchronization completes can be used in a recovery. The data in the journal however remains and is promoted to the recovered virtual machine as part of a recovery procedure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note</td>
<td>For the synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the source data to replicate to the target recovery disks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iSCSI</td>
<td>An Internet Protocol (IP)-based storage networking standard for linking data storage facilities. By carrying SCSI commands over IP networks, iSCSI is used to facilitate data transfers over intranets and to manage storage over long distances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Journal</td>
<td>Every write to a protected virtual machine is intercepted by Zerto and a copy of the write is sent, asynchronously, to the recovery site, while the write continues to be processed on the protected site. On the recovery site the write is written to a journal managed by the Virtual Replication Appliance. Each protected virtual machine has its own journal. Each journal can expand to a size specified in the VPG definition and automatically shrinks when the expanded size is not needed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long Term Retention</td>
<td>Providing Zerto customers a comprehensive Data Protection solution - preserve their virtualized environment production data, for a long period - from months to several years.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The data is copied from the Recovery site, to a local or remotely attached storage repository, without any impact on production data or performance, via a single management platform.

Data Retention is enforced by built-in scheduling and retention mechanisms. Data can later be restored easily, and with minimal RTO.

<p>| LUN | Disk drives are the foundation of data storage, but operating systems cannot use physical disk storage directly. The platters, heads, tracks and sectors of a physical disk drive must be translated into a logical space, which an OS sees as a linear address space comprised of fixed-size blocks. This translation creates a logical entity that allows operating systems to read/write files. Storage networks must also partition their physical disks into logical entities so that host servers can access storage area network (SAN) storage. Each logical portion is called a logical unit number (LUN). A LUN is a logical entity that converts raw physical disk space into logical storage space, which a host server's OS can access and use. Any computer user recognizes the logical drive letter that has been carved out of their disk drive. For example, a computer may boot from the C: drive and access file data from a different D: drive. LUNs do the same basic job. |
| Level of Business Continuity | The reduced level of service that has been agreed if there is an interruption to business operations. |
| Managed Service Provider (MSP) | See Cloud Service Provider (CSP) on page 438. |
| Maximum Tolerable Data Loss | The maximum tolerable data loss an organization can endure without compromising its business objectives. |
| Maximum Tolerable Outage (MTO) | The maximum time after which an outage will compromise the ability of the organization to achieve its business objectives. |
| Maximum Tolerable Period of Disruption | The duration after which an organization's viability will be irrevocably threatened if product and service delivery cannot be resumed. |
| <strong>NAS</strong>       | A network-attached storage (NAS) device is a server that is dedicated to nothing more than file sharing. NAS does not provide any of the activities that a server in a server-centric system typically provides, such as e-mail, authentication or file management. NAS allows more hard disk storage space to be added to a network that already utilizes servers without shutting them down for maintenance and upgrades. With a NAS device, storage is not an integral part of the server. Instead, in this storage-centric design, the server still handles all of the processing of data but a NAS device delivers the data to the user. A NAS device does not need to be located within the server but can exist anywhere in a LAN and can be made up of multiple networked NAS devices. |
| <strong>Net Recovery Time</strong> | The net time achieved in recovering one or more VPGs after a disaster. |
| <strong>Operational Level Agreement (OLA)</strong> | The agreement between the service management and the Service Provision Partners. It defines the responsibilities for support and delivery of the services provided. |
| <strong>Pair</strong> | Zerto can be installed at one or more sites and each of these sites can connect to any of the other sites enabling enterprises to protect virtual machines across multiple vCenters or within the same vCenter. Two sites connected to each other are considered paired. Also see Replication to Self on page 444. |
| <strong>Preseed</strong> | A virtual disk (a. vmdk flat file and descriptor or a .vhdx file) in the recovery site that has been prepared with a copy of the protected data. Using this option is recommended particularly for large disks so that the initial synchronization is much faster. When not using a preseeded disk the initial synchronization phase has to copy the whole disk over the WAN. Zerto takes ownership of the preseeded disk, moving it from its source folder to the folder used by the VRA. |
| <strong>Quiesce</strong> | Pausing or altering the state of running processes on a computer, particularly those that might modify information stored on disk during a backup, in order to guarantee a consistent and usable backup. Critical applications, such as databases have quiescent mechanisms that Zerto can use to get application consistent checkpoints. |
| <strong>RBAC</strong> | Role-based Access control, available in the Zerto Cloud Manager via the Permissions tab. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RDM (vSphere)</td>
<td>RDM is a mapping file in a separate VMFS volume that acts as a proxy for a raw physical storage device. The RDM allows a virtual machine to directly access and use the storage device. The RDM contains metadata for managing and redirecting disk access to the physical device. The file gives you some of the advantages of direct access to a physical device while keeping some advantages of a virtual disk in VMFS. As a result, it merges VMFS manageability with raw device access. Zerto supports both physical and virtual mode RDMs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Point Objective (RPO)</td>
<td>The maximum amount of data that may be lost when the activity or service is restored after an interruption. Expressed as a length of time before the interruption.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Time Achieved (RTA)</td>
<td>The actual times achieved during a DR test.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recovery Time Objective (RTO)</td>
<td>Related to downtime. The metric refers to the amount of time it takes to recover from a data loss event and how long it takes to return to service. The metric is an indication of the amount of time the system's data is unavailable or inaccessible, thus preventing normal service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replication, Asynchronous</td>
<td>Technique for replicating data between databases or file systems where the system being replicated does not wait for the data to have been recorded on the duplicate system before proceeding. Asynchronous Replication has the advantage of speed, at the increased risk of data loss during due to communication or duplicate system failure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Replication to Self</td>
<td>When a single vCenter is used, for example with remote branch offices, when replicating from one datacenter to another datacenter, both managed by the same vCenter Server, you have to enable replication to the same vCenter Server and pairing is not required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource</td>
<td>The elements (such as staff, site, data, IT systems) that are required to deliver an activity or service.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource Recovery Plan</td>
<td>Contains the instructions, procedures and guidelines to recover one or more resources and return conditions to a level of operation that is acceptable to the organization. Recovery Plans include detailed recovery procedures for IT equipment and infrastructure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rolling Back</td>
<td>Rolling back to an initial status, for example, after canceling a cloning operation on the VPG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPO</td>
<td>See Recovery Point Objective (RPO) on page 444.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTO</td>
<td>See Recovery Time Objective (RTO) on page 444.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAN</td>
<td>A storage area network (SAN) is any high-performance network whose primary purpose is to enable storage devices to communicate with computer systems and with each other. A storage device is a machine that contains nothing but a disk or disks for storing data. A SAN's architecture works in a way that makes all storage devices available to all servers on a LAN or WAN. As more storage devices are added to a SAN, they too will be accessible from any server in the larger network. In this case, the server merely acts as a pathway between the end user and the stored data. Because stored data does not reside directly on any of a network's servers, server power is utilized for business applications, and network capacity is released to the end user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSI</td>
<td>Acronym for Small Computer System Interface. SCSI is a parallel interface standard used by many servers for attaching peripheral devices to computers. SCSI interfaces provide for faster data transmission rates (up to 80 megabytes per second) than standard serial and parallel ports. In addition, you can attach many devices to a single SCSI port, so that SCSI is really an I/O bus rather than simply an interface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCVMM</td>
<td>A Microsoft management solution for the virtualized datacenter, enabling you to configure and manage your virtualization host, networking, and storage resources in order to create and deploy virtual machines and services to private clouds that you have created.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secret Access Key (AWS)</td>
<td>A password. The Secret Access Key with the Access Key forms a secure information set that confirms the user's identity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Group</td>
<td>A virtual firewall that controls the traffic for one or more instances.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Continuity Plan</td>
<td>The continuity plan that acts as an umbrella document for a service, referencing other plans as required and providing service-specific emergency management and recovery plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Level Agreement (SLA)</td>
<td>The agreement between the customer and service provider which defines the service that is to be delivered to the customer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service Profile</td>
<td>A predefined set of default properties to use when VPGs are defined or edited. Zerto provides a default service profile and the option for the organization to specify their own requirements. The cloud service provider can define service profiles to manage specific service level agreements (SLAs) with its customers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Service Test Plan</strong></td>
<td>Detailed plan defining the activities required to test the recovery of an individual IT service to meet business requirements documented in the RTO and RPO.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shadow VRA</strong></td>
<td>During normal operation, a VRA might require more disks than a single virtual machine can support. If this situation arises, the VRA creates new shadow VRA virtual machines, used by the VRA to maintain additional disks. These virtual machines must not be removed. A VRA can manage a maximum of 1500 volumes, whether these are volumes being protected or recovered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Snapshots</strong></td>
<td>A snapshot is a block device which presents an exact copy of a logical volume, frozen at some point in time. Typically this would be used when some batch processing, a retention process for instance, needs to be performed on the logical volume, but you don't want to halt a live system that is changing the data. Zerto does NOT use a snapshot mechanism, but is constantly replicating data writes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Storage Account (Azure)</strong></td>
<td>Storage accounts re like a container for your files. You can name your storage account the way you like but it should be unique across the Azure system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subnet</strong></td>
<td>A logical, visible subdivision of an IP network.[1] The practice of dividing a network into two or more networks is called subnetting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Subscription (Azure)** | The description uses information derived from the following site: https://blogs.msdn.microsoft.com/arunrakwal/2012/04/09/create-windows-azure-subscription/  
An Azure subscription grants access to Azure services and Platform Management Portal. A subscription has two aspects:  
  • The Windows Azure account, through which resource usage is reported and services are billed.  
  • The subscription itself, which governs access to and use of the Azure services that are subscribed to. |
| **System Center Virtual Machine Manager** | See SCVMM on page 445. |
| **Virtual Machine (VM)** | A virtual machine (VM) is an environment, usually a program or operating system, which does not physically exist but is created within another environment. In this context, a VM is called a guest while the environment it runs within is called a host. |
| **Virtual Network (VNet) (Azure)** | A virtual network dedicated to an Azure subscription. |
| **Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) (AWS)** | An on demand configurable pool of shared computing resources allocated within a public cloud environment, providing a certain level of isolation between the different organizations (denoted as users hereafter) using the resources. The isolation between one VPC user and all other users of the same cloud (other VPC users as well as other public cloud users) is achieved normally through allocation of a Private IP Subnet and a virtual communication construct (such as a VLAN or a set of encrypted communication channels) per user. |
| **Virtual Protection Group** | See VPG on page 450. |
| **Virtual Replication Appliance** | See VRA on page 450. |
| **VMDK, Virtual Machine Disk** | Virtual Machines created with VMware products typically use virtual disks. The virtual disks, stored as files on the host computer or remote storage device, appear to the guest operating systems as standard disk drives. |
**Volume Delta Sync**

Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, dependent on when the promotion for the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or full sync, etc. on page 439.

Synchronization when only delta changes for a volume needs synchronizing, for example, when a virtual machine is added to a VPG using a preseeded disk.

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal. Also, recovery operations are not possible during a Volume Delta Sync.

For the synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the source data to replicate to the target recovery disks.
**Volume Full Sync**

Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, dependent on when the promotion for the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or full sync, etc. on page 439.

**Synchronization when a full synchronization is required on a single volume.**

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal. Also, recovery operations are not possible during a **Volume Full Sync**.

**Note:** For the synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the source data to replicate to the target recovery disks.
Volume Initial Sync
Synchronization after a recovery starts after the promotion of data from the journal to the virtual machine disks ends. Thus, synchronization of virtual machines can start at different times, dependent on when the promotion for the virtual machine ends. All synchronizations are done in parallel, whether a delta sync or full sync, etc.

Synchronization when a full synchronization is required on a single volume, for example, when changing the target datastore or adding a virtual machine to the VPG without using a preseeded (not available in the cloud) disk.

During the synchronization, new checkpoints are not added to the journal. Also, recovery operations are not possible during a Volume Initial Sync.

For the synchronization to work, the protected virtual machines must be powered on. The VRA requires an active IO stack to access the virtual machine data to be synchronized across the sites. If the virtual machine is not powered on, there is no IO stack to use to access the source data to replicate to the target recovery disks.

VPG
Virtual machines are protected in virtual protection groups. A virtual protection groups (VPG) is a group of virtual machines that you want to group together for replication purposes. For example, the virtual machines that comprise an application like Microsoft Exchange, where one virtual machine is used for the software, one for the database and a third for the Web Server, require that all three virtual machines are replicated to maintain data integrity.

VRA
A virtual machine installed on each hypervisor hosting virtual machines to be protected or recovered, that manages the replication of protected virtual machine writes across sites. A VRA must be installed on every hypervisor that hosts virtual machines that require protecting in the protected site and on every hypervisor that will host the replicated virtual machines in the recovery site.

vSphere
VMware’s server virtualization platform for building a cloud infrastructure.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Cloud Connector (ZCC)</td>
<td>A virtual machine installed on the cloud side, one for each customer organization replication network. The Zerto Cloud Connector requires both cloud-facing and customer-facing static IP addresses. The ZCC routes traffic between the customer network and the cloud replication network, in a secure manner ensuring complete separation between the customer network and the cloud service provider network. The ZCC has two Ethernet interfaces, one to the customer's network and one to the cloud service provider's network. Within the cloud connector a bidirectional connection is created between the customer and cloud service provider networks. Thus, all network traffic passes through the ZCC, where the incoming traffic on the customer network is automatically configured to IP addresses of the cloud service provider network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Cloud Manager (ZCM)</td>
<td>A Windows service, which enables managing all the cloud sites offering disaster recovery using a single interface. The ZCM manages the DR either as a service (DRaaS) or completely within the cloud environment, protecting on one cloud site and recovering to a second site (ICDR).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto User Interface</td>
<td>Recovery using Zerto is managed via a user interface: in a browser via the Zerto Virtual Manager Web Client, or in either the vSphere Web Client or vSphere Client console in the Zerto tab.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Self-service Portal (ZSSP)</td>
<td>An out-of-the-box DR portal solution with a fully functioning browser-based service portal to enable cloud service providers to quickly introduce disaster recovery as part of their portal offering.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Virtual Backup Appliance (VBA)</td>
<td>A Windows service that manages File Level Recovery operations within Zerto Virtual Replication. These repositories can be local or on a shared network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zerto Virtual Manager (ZVM)</td>
<td>A Windows service, which manages everything required for the replication between the protection and recovery sites, except for the actual replication of data. The ZVM interacts with the vCenter Server to get the inventory of VMs, disks, networks, hosts, etc. The ZVM also monitors changes in the VMware environment and responds accordingly. For example, a vMotion operation of a protected VM from one host to another is intercepted by the ZVM so the Zerto User Interface is updated accordingly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZORG, Zerto Organization</td>
<td>Cloud customers are defined to Zerto Cloud Manager as Zerto organizations, ZORGs. A ZORG is defined with the cloud resources it can use, the permissions that it has to perform operations, such as testing a failover or defining a VPG.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

A
affinity rules 242-243, 381
   anti-affinity rules 381
alerts 178, 392
   email settings 261
   in Dashboard 174
   in single VRA tab 189
application-consistent checkpoints 212
architecture 10
availability sets 381
AWS
   editing VPG settings 401-402
   limitations 204
   re-IP process 162, 170

B
backup
   creating a repository 334
   backups, see offsite backup 261
bandwidth 256-257, 429, 431
   calculating size 42
   freeing up 208
   in resources report 372
   site settings 256-257, 429, 431
bitmap sync 242-243, 437
   definition 224
boot order
   configuring 62, 93, 156, 393
   configuring for vCD 123
branding the Recovery report 371

C
change rate
   estimating 75, 106, 136, 406
checkpoint 211, 311, 386, 394
   add 46
   adding manually 212-213
   application-consistent 212
   choosing 300, 311
   purpose 53
   renaming after testing failover 278
clock synchronization with NTP 264, 418
cloning
   description 270, 309
   to Hyper-V 313
   to VMware vSphere 312
cluster 380
   for failover 380
commit policy
   changing 301
   configuring for failover and move 259
   for failover and move 431
   site setting 431
compression
   to minimize bandwidth 31
connecting sites, see pairing 249
connectivity, checking 244

D
Dashboard 36, 172
   alerts, events, and running tasks 174, 178
   performance graphs 173
   stopping a failover test 278
data compression 66, 98, 127
data promotion 293, 298, 306
   when VRA fails 356
default gateway, configuring 84, 116
delta sync 210, 307
   definition 226
   when restarting a host 379
diagnostics utility 244, 246
   checking connectivity 244
diagnostics utility, functions 357
disaster recovery
   description 296
   during a test 308
   initiating 298
   types 44
disk
   IDE 90
   pass-through and shared 59
   RDM 76-77, 107-108, 137-138, 313, 407-408
   SCSI 90
disk size
   estimating 75, 106, 136, 406
disk space, insufficient 357
disk types, IDE or SCSI 52
diskbox, see shadow VRA 232
dynamic disk 379
Dynamic Optimization 381
   preventing 287

452
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>EBS disks 46</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>HA, see high availability 380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EBS disks (AWS) 151-153</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>high availability 380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EC2 46</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>host maintenance mode 382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EC2 (AWS) 151-153</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>host not displayed in Manage VPG dialog 356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>email settings 261</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>HTTPS 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>configure 261</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>Hyper-V Replica 382</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>for alerts and backup reports 261</td>
<td>H</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>enable replication to self</td>
<td>I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>site setting 89, 431</td>
<td>J</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>environment variable 215</td>
<td>K</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZertoForce 215</td>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZertoOperation 215</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZertoVCenterIP 215</td>
<td></td>
<td>MAC address 293, 297, 306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZertoVCenterPort 215</td>
<td></td>
<td>geometry, non-default 77, 108, 138, 408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>events 178</td>
<td></td>
<td>ghost VRA 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in Dashboard 174</td>
<td></td>
<td>glossary 436, 451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in single VPG tab 174, 178</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
maintenance mode in SCVMM 382
migration, see move 286
monitor
  alerts, events, and running tasks 174, 178
  site 185
  virtual machines 182
VPG 174, 177
VRA 189
move
  commit policy 431
  configuring commit policy 259
  description 286
  failing back 290, 302
  initiating 288
  introduction 269
  recovery report 370
  reverse replication 290, 302
  using a scratch volume 292
multi-pathing 381

N
needs configuration 229, 294, 307
  troubleshooting 355
network
  for failing over or moving 81, 112
  for testing 81, 112
NIC
  defining network details 425
NTP clock synchronization 264, 418

O
offsite backup 47, 348, 353
  editing a repository 337
  flow 47
  retention period 203, 353
  running unscheduled 321, 342
  status in single VPG tab 178
  status in VPGs tab 176-177
offsite backup repository
  creating 335, 415
offsite clone, see cloning 309
Outbound Protection Over Time report 368

P
pairing 249, 397
pass-through disks 59, 380
pause protection 208
Performance and Resource Optimization 381
performance graphs
  for a single VPG 177
  for single VRA 189
  for site 173
permissions in Hyper-V 382
PowerShell cmdlet
  Set-Checkpoint 212
  preseed 77, 108, 138, 408
promotion of data 293, 298, 306
  hangs 357
  when VRA fails 356
protected site, pairing 249
Protection Over Time by Site report 369
provisioned storage 176, 191

Q
quick storage migration 382

R
raw disk (RDM) 76, 107, 137, 407
re-IP 84, 116, 145
  in AWS 162, 170
recovery
  during a test 308
  initiating 298
  report 370
  to AWS 52, 149
  to Azure 163
  to Hyper-V 59
  to same site 88
  to VMware vCenter Server 89
  to VMware vCloud Director 120
types 44
recovery flows 44
recovery host, changing 394
Recovery report 370
  branding 371
recovery site
  pairing 249
Replication Pause Time 210
replication to self 39, 88
  configuring 89
reports
  Outbound Protection Over Time 368
  Protection Over Time by Site 369
  Recovery 370
  Resources 371
  Usage 377
  VPG Performance 377
repository for offsite backup 334, 337
resize volumes 208
resource pool, choosing for recovery 400
Resources report 371
    configuring 433
    generating with REST API 372
    output 373
restore 348
retention 47
    manually running job 342
retention period
offsite backup 353
retention policy 13
reverse protection
    when failing over 307
    when moving 294
reverse protection, see failback 292
reverse replication
move 290, 302
rollback 280, 282
    failover 297
    setting for failover or move 259
running tasks, see tasks 174

S
S3 46
same site replication 88
sandbox, using 272
scratch volume 292, 304
    for testing failover 272, 277
scripts
    creating 215
    execution timeout 260, 431
    running 214
    ZertoForce environment variable 215
    ZertoOperation environment variable 215
    ZertoVCenterIP environment variable 215
    ZertoVCenterPort environment variable 215
    ZertoVPGName environment variable 215
SCSI disks 52, 90, 121
security certificate
    adding 34
    replacing 249
security group 204
service profile 52
Set-Checkpoint cmdlet 212
settings
    importing VPG 219
shadow VRA 232, 446
shared disks 59
signature matching, WAN optimization 31
site details 254
    monitoring 172
site settings
    bandwidth 256, 428
    commit policy 259, 431
    configuring 262
    defining 252
    email 261
    enabling replication to self 39, 89, 260
    performance and throttling 256
    script execution timeout 260, 431
    site details 254
site status 173
SITES tab 185
sizing
    volumes 75, 106, 136, 406
    WAN 40
SSL certificate, see security certificate 249
storage
    for replicated data 74, 105, 135, 405
    pass-through disks 380
    provisioned 176, 191
    sizing 74, 105, 135, 405
storage profile 375
    missing 229
subnet 204
synchronization
    delta 74, 105, 135, 210, 294, 405
    forcing 209
    initial 53, 56, 210
    triggers 220
    triggers for VPG 231
    volume delta 294
    VPGs 209
T
tasks 178, 181
    in single VRA tab 189
test failover
    stopping 278
testing failover 272, 285
    basic verification 280
    initiating a failover 308
    introduction 268
    process 272
    running traffic against recovered VMs 283
    using a scratch volume 272, 277
throttling 31
    site settings 256-257, 429
time-based bandwidth throttling
    site settings 256-257, 429
Index

VPG 45-46
adding a machine 204-205
creating to recover to AWS 154, 163-164, 171
creating to recover to Hyper-V 59, 88
creating to recover to VMware vCD 121, 149
creating to recover to VMware vCenter Server 90, 120
definition 44, 51
deleting 211
editing 202, 401-402
forcing delete 211
handling error 210
importing settings 219
monitoring 173, 177
pausing protection 208
saving details to file 177
statuses 220
substatuses 222
synchronization triggers 220, 231
synchronizing 209
waiting to be removed 211
VPG Performance report 377
VPGs tab 174
VRA 12-13, 45-46, 446
changing recovery host 394
crashing during data promotion 356
editing 238
editing network settings 238
ghost 242
monitoring 189
shadow VRA 232
uninstalling 242
upgrading 237
vSphere Installation Bundle, see VIB 412

W
WAN
compressing traffic 66, 98, 127
signature matching 31
sizing 40
WAN bandwidth, freeing up 208
WAN optimization 31
Windows service
Zerto Virtual Manager 355

Z
Zerto User Interface
configuration 37
customizing 38
Zerto Virtual Manager 11
  checking component connectivity 244
  reconfiguring 245-246
  Windows service 355
Zerto Virtual Manager Web Client 33
Zerto Virtual Replication
  architecture 10
  benefits 28
  description 9
  how it works 12
  logs 365
  monitoring 172
ZertoForce script 215
ZertoOperation script 215
ZertoVCenterIP script 215
ZertoVCenterPort script 215
ZertoVPGName script 215
ZORG
  preseeding 80, 111, 141, 411
ZVM, see Zerto Virtual Manager 11
Zerto enhances the Zerto IT Resilience Platform by converging disaster recovery and backup to deliver continuous availability within a simple, scalable platform. Zerto delivers enhanced analytics, platform improvements and cloud performance upgrades required in the future of IT resilience.

Learn more at Zerto.com.

For assistance using Zerto’s Solution, contact: @Zerto Support.

© 2019 Zerto Ltd. All rights reserved.